



# **nopCommerce User Guide**

*Open source ecommerce solution*

**Version 3.10**

## **Copyright Notice**

Information in this document, including URL and other Internet Web site references, is subject to change without notice. The entire risk of the use or the results of the use of this document remains with the user. The example companies, organizations, products, domain names, e-mail addresses, logos, people, places, and events depicted herein are fictitious. No association with any real company, organization, product, domain name, email address, logo, person, places, or events is intended or should be inferred. Complying with all applicable copyright laws is the responsibility of the user. Without limiting the rights under copyright, no part of this document may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), or for any purpose, without the express written permission of Andrei Mazoulnitsyn. Nop Solutions may have patents, patent applications, trademarks, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights covering subject matter in this document. Except as expressly provided in any written license agreement from Nop Solutions, the furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents, trademarks, copyrights, or other intellectual property.

Joint Copyright © 2010, Nop Solutions, Inc and Andrei Mazoulnitsyn. All Rights Reserved.

nopCommerce and the nopCommerce logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Nop Solutions, Inc. in the Russia and/or other countries. The names of actual companies and products mentioned herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

# Table of Contents

<b>1 Introducing nopCommerce .....</b>	<b>1</b>
What is nopCommerce? .....	1
nopCommerce License .....	1
Frontend - Public Store .....	2
Backend – Administration Area.....	2
<b>2 Getting Started.....</b>	<b>3</b>
Technology and System Requirements.....	3
Step 1: Downloading nopCommerce .....	4
Step 2: Launching/Uploading .....	5
Step 3: File Permissions .....	11
Step 4: Installation.....	12
<b>3 Introducing the Frontend.....</b>	<b>16</b>
Overview .....	17
Categories and Manufacturers .....	18
Filtering the Display .....	21
Searching .....	23
New Product Pages.....	25
Ratings and Reviews .....	26
Emailing a Friend .....	28
Comparing Products .....	30
Recently Viewed Products .....	32
Registration .....	33
Login.....	34
Customer Account Pages .....	35
Shopping Cart.....	43
Wishlist.....	45
Purchasing Process .....	48
Order Details Page .....	54
News.....	55
Blog .....	57
Private Messaging .....	59
Mobile Device Support .....	60

<b>4 Introducing the Backend – Setting up the Store .....</b>	<b>63</b>
Overview .....	63
Accessing the Backend .....	64
Managing Categories .....	65
Managing Manufacturers .....	75
Managing Attributes.....	84
Managing Products.....	91
<b>5 Preparing for Selling.....</b>	<b>126</b>
Configuration Settings .....	127
Configuring the Default Store Settings.....	160
Multi-store Support .....	161
Multi-vendor Support.....	165
Email Accounts .....	170
Taxes.....	171
Shipping.....	176
Payment Methods.....	195
Content Management .....	203
Location.....	224
Measures.....	236
SMS Providers.....	239
External Authentication Methods .....	241
Plugins .....	243
<b>6 Promotions .....</b>	<b>245</b>
Campaigns.....	245
Newsletter Subscribers.....	248
Discounts .....	249
Promotion Feeds.....	253
Affiliates .....	254
<b>7 Managing Orders and Customers .....</b>	<b>257</b>
Managing Customers .....	258
Customer Roles .....	266
Online Customers.....	267
Managing Orders.....	268
Managing Shipments.....	281

Recurring Payments .....	283
Gift Cards .....	285
Current Shopping Cart .....	288
Current Wishlists.....	289
Return Requests.....	290
<b>8 Managing Customer Generated Content .....</b>	<b>295</b>
Product Reviews.....	295
News Comments .....	298
Blog Comments.....	298
Forums.....	298
<b>9 Security.....</b>	<b>303</b>
Access Control List .....	303
Activity Log .....	305
Maintenance .....	307
<b>10 Improving your Store.....</b>	<b>313</b>
Dashboard Reports .....	313
Low Stock Reports .....	314
Customer Statistics.....	314
Logs .....	318
Schedule Tasks .....	320
Message Queue .....	322
Search Engine Friendly Page Names.....	323
<b>11 Getting Help .....</b>	<b>324</b>
<b>12 Index .....</b>	<b>325</b>



# 1 Introducing nopCommerce

This chapter introduces nopCommerce. It includes the following:

- **What is nopCommerce?**, below
- **nopCommerce License**, page 1
- **Frontend - Public Store**, page 2
- **Backend – Administration Area**, page 2

## What is nopCommerce?

The nopCommerce Frontend is accessed online through your web browser. It is an open source \*.net based e-commerce solution and contains a fully customizable shopping cart.

nopCommerce is an open source e-commerce solution that is **ASP.NET 4.5 (MVC 4)** based with a **MS SQL 2005** (or higher) backend database. Our easy-to-use shopping cart solution is uniquely suited for merchants that have outgrown existing systems, and may be hosted with your current web host or our hosting partners. It has everything you need to get started in selling physical and digital goods over the internet.

## nopCommerce License

nopCommerce open source edition is licensed under nopCommerce Public License V3. It is basically a GPLv3 License plus the *powered by nopCommerce* text requirement on every single page.

The original nopCommerce Public License V3 can be found at:  
<http://www.nopcommerce.com/LicenseV3.aspx>

## **Frontend - Public Store**

After opening your store site in a browser, the nopCommerce front-end home page is displayed, enabling your customers to access all the nopCommerce menus, functions, and pages. These include product categories, products, promotional packages and more. From the public store, your customers can view the categories, manufacturers, and products. They can provide ratings and reviews and add blog comments, and participate in the nopCommerce community forum. In addition, your customers can define and setup their customer account page settings as well as view additional content, such as news and enter polls use the private messaging feature, if required.

## **Backend – Administration Area**

The nopCommerce backend system enables you to set up your store for selling and manage your and customers and orders, as well define the categories and manufacturers, products. It also includes setting up your general settings, such as taxation and payment methods, shipping details and more.

The backend also enables you to improve your store sales such as define promotional packages, review your stock and order and log reports and more.

## 2 Getting Started

This chapter describes how to download nopCommerce software, upload it to your server, define the file permissions, and install it on your system. This chapter contains the following sections:

- **Technology and System Requirements**, below
- **Step 1: Downloading nopCommerce**, page 4
- **Step 2: Launching/Uploading**, page 5
- **Step 3: File permissions**, page 11
- **Step 4: Installation**, page 12

### Technology and System Requirements

This section describes the system requirements of nopCommerce.

To run nopCommerce, the following must be installed on your system.

- Supported Operation Systems:
  - Windows 8
  - Windows 7
  - Windows Server 2008
  - Windows Server 2012
- Supported Web Servers:
  - Internet Information Service (IIS) 7.0 or above.
- ASP.NET 4.5 (MVC 4)
- Supported Databases:
  - MS SQL Server 2005 or above.
  - MS SQL Server Compact 4.0 or above.
- Supported Browsers:
  - Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 and above
  - Mozilla Firefox 2.0 and above
  - Google Chrome 1.x and above
  - Apple Safari 2.x

- **nopCommerce runs in medium trust:** Medium trust is the recommended trust level for an ASP.NET application. In medium trust, there are restrictions on an application, including limiting an application's file access to within the virtual directory where the application resides. In nopCommerce the following options do not run in medium trust:
  - Configuring the Google checkout payment method
  - Managing SSL settings in admin area
- MS Visual Studio 2012 (with MVC 4 installed) or above. Required for editing source code.

## Step 1: Downloading nopCommerce

- 1 Download the required nopCommerce software version from <http://www.nopcommerce.com/> to a local directory.
- 2 Extract the downloaded package.

## Step 2: Launching/Uploading

This step describes how to launch a site in Visual Studio, and how to upload files to your web server (for users that do not have Visual Studio).

It includes the following:

- **Launching a site in Visual Studio**, below
- **Deploying a Package with Source Code to your Web Server**, page 6
- **Deploying a Package without Source Code to your Web Server**, page 9

### Launching a Site in Visual Studio

This section describes how to launch a site in Visual Studio, using the source code version.

► **To launch a site in Visual Studio:**

- 1 In Visual Studio 2012, open the *nopCommerce.sln* file. The entire solution will be loaded.

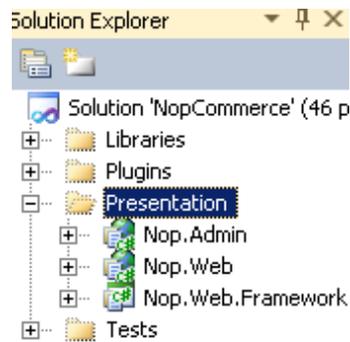
*Note: Ensure Visual Studio 2012 is installed*

*Note: Ensure MVC 4 installed*

*Note: Visual Studio Express users will see the following message when opening the Visual Studio solution (.sln) file for each of these samples: "Solution Folders are not supported in this version of Visual Studio. Solution Folder 'Solution Items' will be displayed as unavailable."*

*Although this folder is not available in Visual C# Express, you can still build and run the projects.*

- 2 In Visual Studio 2012, from the **Solution Explorer**, right-click **Nop.Web** project. A popup menu is displayed.



- 3 Select **Set as StartUp Project**.
- 4 Press **F5** to compile and run the site. The first step of the nopCommerce installation wizard is displayed, as shown on page 13.

## Deploying a Package with Source Code to your Web Server

This section describes how to upload the files from the nopCommerce installation to a web server. This is for users using Visual Studio and need to deploy the site to an internet server using the FTP client.

► **To deploy a package with source code:**

- 1 Extract the downloaded version *with* source code to your desktop.
- 2 Publish the **Nop.Web** and **Nop.Admin** web applications to the same directory, as follows:
  - Publish Nop.Web to the Published\Web\ directory.
  - Publish Nop.Admin to the Published\Web\Administration\ directory.
  - Publish plugins to the Published\Web\Plugins\ directory (you can compile the solution and copy \src\Presentation\Nop.Web\ into Published\Web\Plugins\ directory).
  - Select all the files in Published\Web\ directory and upload them to your web server.

*Note: Make sure the \*.dlls from Nop.Admin (Published\Web\Administration\bin\)* are moved and exist in Published\Web\bin\.

3 (Optional) You can skip **Step 2** and follow the following procedure to deploy your nopCommerce package with the source code containing two \*.bat files to a **\Deployable\** folder, as follows:

- Run the src\Prepare.bat file to build the project in release mode and move the plugins to the correct directory.
- Run the src\Deploy.bat file to perform the same procedure as the Prepare.bat file, but also move all the websites and files to the src\Deployable\Nop\_{Version} directory.

*Note for HP (Hewlett Packard) users*

- *HP machines have a registry key that will interfere when running the deploy batch file. If you have an HP laptop and get the following error message: "the OutputPath property is not set for project Nop.Web.csproj", perform the following:*
- *Click regedit.exe*
- *Navigate to HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Session Manager\Environment.*
- *Delete the complete key (Key and value) Platform (your value is MCD).*
- *Restart your computer*

4 Select all the files in **src\Deployable\Nop\_{Version}** directory and upload them to your web server.

*Note: Upload them to the root of your directory that is set up for your domain.*

5 After the database is created, enter the following to run the nopCommerce Installation Wizard, which is located at your domain:

*www.yourstore.com/install/*

6 The first step of the installation wizard is displayed, as follows:

**nopCommerce installation**

To complete this wizard you must know some information regarding your database server ("connection string"). Please contact your ISP if necessary. If you're installing on a local machine or server you might need information from your System Admin.

**Store information**

Admin user email:

Admin user password:

Confirm the password:

Create sample data:

**Database information**

Use built-in data storage (SQL Server Compact)

Use an existing SQL Server (or SQL Express) database

Enter SQL connection values  Enter raw connection string (advanced)

SQL Server name:

Database name:

Use SQL Server account  Use integrated Windows authentication

SQL Username:

SQL Password:

If you need information on how to use nopCommerce, visit [the documentation section on nopCommerce.com](#).

7 Follow the steps in the installation process, as described in **Step 4: Installation**, on page 12, to install the web application using the database you created in **Step 3** of this procedure.

## Deploying a Package without Source Code to your Web Server

This section describes how to upload the files from the nopCommerce installation to a web server. This is for users who need to deploy the package without source code to an internet server using the FTP client.

▶ **To deploy a package without source code:**

- 1 Extract the downloaded version *without* source code to your desktop.
- 2 Select all the files in the extracted directory and upload them to your web server.

*Note: Upload them to the root of your directory that is set up for your domain.*

- 3 After the database is created, enter the following to run the **nopCommerce Installation Wizard**, which is located at your domain:

*www.yourstore.com/install/*

- 4 The first step of the installation wizard is displayed, as follows:

**nopCommerce installation**

To complete this wizard you must know some information regarding your database server ("connection string"). Please contact your ISP if necessary. If you're installing on a local machine or server you might need information from your System Admin.

**Store information**

Admin user email:

Admin user password:

Confirm the password:

Create sample data:

**Database information**

Use built-in data storage (SQL Server Compact)

Use an existing SQL Server (or SQL Express) database

Enter SQL connection values  Enter raw connection string (advanced)

SQL Server name:

Database name:

Use SQL Server account  Use integrated Windows authentication

SQL Username:

SQL Password:

If you need information on how to use nopCommerce, visit [the documentation section on nopCommerce.com](#).

- 5 Follow the steps in the installation process, as described in **Step 4: Installation**, on page 12, to install the web application using the database you created in **Step 3** of this procedure.

## Step 3: File Permissions

nopCommerce requires write permissions for the directories and files described below:

- Directories
  - \App\_Data\
  - \bin\
  - \Content\
  - \Content\Images\
  - \Content\Images\Thumbs\
  - \Content\Images\Uploaded\
  - \Content\files\ExportImport\
  - \Plugins\
  - \Plugins\bin\
- Files
  - \Global.asax
  - \web.config

These permissions are validated during the installation process. If you do not have write permissions, a warning message is displayed, requesting you to configure permissions.

## Step 4: Installation

Before installing nopCommerce, ensure you have one of the following databases installed on your system:

- SQL Server 2005 or higher
- SQL Compact 4.0 or higher

You to use the SQL Server 2005 or higher, you can use any of the following authentication methods to connect to the server:

- **SQL Server Account:** When connecting using this method, logins are created in the SQL Server that is not based on the Windows user accounts. Both the user name and the password are created using the SQL Server and are stored in SQL Server. When using this method you must enter your login and password.
- **Integrated Windows Authentication:** When connecting using this method, the SQL Server validates the account name and password using the Windows principal token in the operating system. This means the user identity is confirmed by Windows. The SQL Server does not request a password, and does not perform the identity validation. Windows Authentication is the default authentication mode, and is much more secure than SQL Server Authentication. Windows Authentication uses Kerberos security protocol, provides password policy enforcement with regard to complexity validation for strong passwords, provides support for account lockout, and supports password expiration. A connection made using Windows Authentication is sometimes called a trusted connection, because SQL Server trusts the credentials provided by Windows.

► **To install the software:**

- 1 Activate the installation using one of the following options ,as described below:
  - For users using the *no source* version and an FTP client:
    - From your web server domain, enter the following:  
`www.yourstore.com/install/`
  - For users using Visual Studio 2012 and the full source version:
    - Open the *nopCommerce.sln* file in Visual Studio 2012.
    - Run a site.
- 2 The nopCommerce Installation wizard is displayed, as follows:

**nopCommerce installation**

To complete this wizard you must know some information regarding your database server ("connection string"). Please contact your ISP if necessary. If you're installing on a local machine or server you might need information from your System Admin.

**Store information**

Admin user email:

Admin user password:

Confirm the password:

Create sample data:

**Database information**

Use built-in data storage (SQL Server Compact)

Use SQL Server (or SQL Express) database **[Recommended]**

Create database if it doesn't exist:

Enter SQL connection values  Enter raw connection string (advanced)

SQL Server name:

Database name:

Use SQL Server account  Use integrated Windows authentication

SQL Username:

SQL Password:

Specify custom SQL Server collation:

If you need information on how to use nopCommerce, visit [the documentation section on nopCommerce.com](#).

***Note:** nopCommerce requires write permissions for certain directories and files, as described in **Step 3: File permissions, page 59**. If the user does not have these write permissions, a warning message is displayed requesting you to configure the permissions.*

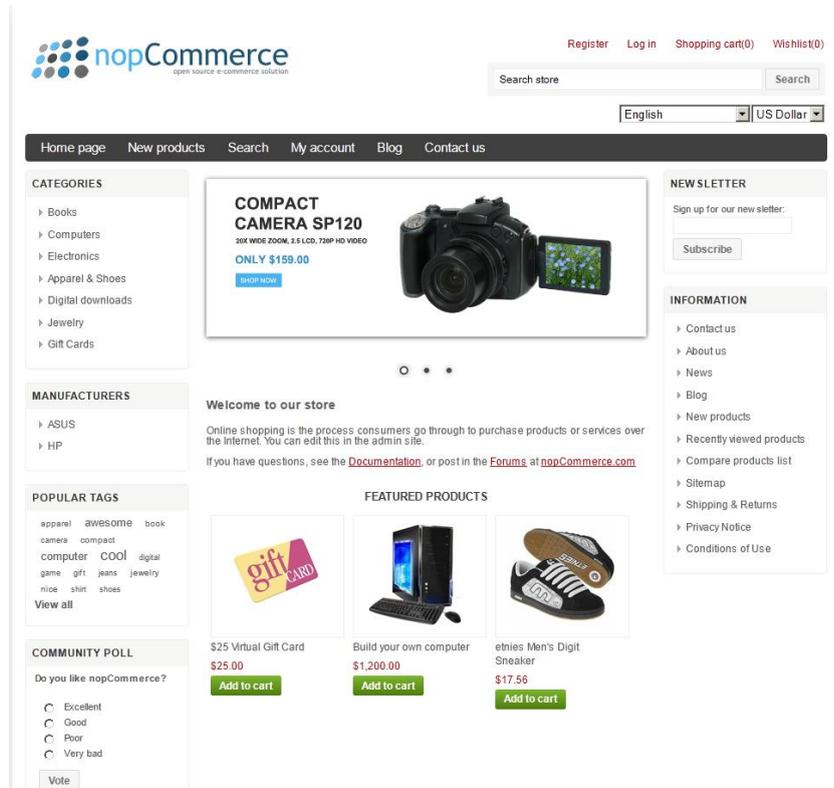
- 3 In the **Store information** area, define the following:
  - In the **Admin user email** field, enter a new email that will be used to enter the admin area of your site.
  - In the **Admin user password** field, enter your new password and confirm it.
  - Check the **Create sample data** checkbox to include sample data in the database.
- 4 In the **Database information** area, define the following:
  - **SQL Compact 4.0 or above:** Select the **Use built-in data storage (SQL Server Compact)** checkbox.
  - **SQL Standard 2005 or above:** Select the **Use an existing SQL Server (or SQL Express) database** checkbox and define your SQL server information as follows:
    - Select the **Create database if it does not exist** option, if you want to automatically create a database if it doesn't exist.
    - In the **SQL Server name or IP address** field, enter the required server name or IP address.
    - Select the required option, as follows:
      - **Use SQL Server account:** Select this option when your SQL Server uses SQL Server Authentication. When using this option, you must enter your login and password in the relevant fields.
      - **Use Integrated Windows authentication:** Select this option when your SQL Server uses Integrated Windows Authentication.
      - **Specify Custom SQL Server collation:** This option is intended for advanced users only and enables entering the custom SQL Server collation. When this option is not selected the default option will be used which is recommended for most users.

***Note:** A collation encodes the rules governing the proper use of characters for either a language , such as Greek or Polish, or an alphabet, such as Latin1\_General (the Latin alphabet used by western European languages).*

5 Click **Install** in order to start the installation process.

*Note: The **Restart installation** button at the bottom of the installation page enables you to restart the installation process in case anything goes wrong.*

6 The site is loaded in your browser, as follows:



# 3 Introducing the Frontend

This chapter describes how to use the nopCommerce front end. This includes familiarizing yourself with the categories, manufacturers, and products, filtering the product display, searching for products, comparing products and more.

- **Overview**, page 17
- **Categories and Manufacturers**, page 18
- **Filtering the Display**, page 21
- **Searching**, page 23
- **New Product Pages**, page 25
- **Ratings and reviews**, page 26
- **Emailing a Friend**, page 28
- **Comparing Products**, page 30
- **Recently Viewed Products**, page 32
- **Registration**, page 32
- **Login**, page 34
- **Customer Account Pages**, page 35
- **Shopping Cart**, page 43
- **Wishlist**, page 45
- **Purchasing Process**, page 48
- **Order Details Page**, page 54
- **News**, page 55
- **Blog**, page 57
- **Polls**, page 58
- **Forums**, page 58
- **Private Messaging**, page 59
- **Mobile Device Support**, page 60

# Overview

The nopCommerce Frontend is accessed online through your web browser. It is an open source \*.net based e-commerce solution and contains a fully customizable shopping cart.

nopCommerce is an open source e-commerce solution that is **ASP.NET** based with a **MS SQL 2005** (or higher) backend database. Our easy-to-use shopping cart solution is uniquely suited for merchants that have outgrown existing systems, and may be hosted with your current web host or our hosting partners. It has everything you need to get started in selling physical and digital goods over the internet.

After logging in to the application, the nopCommerce home page is displayed, enabling you to access all the nopCommerce menus, functions, and pages.

These include product categories, products, promotional packages and more.

The screenshot shows the nopCommerce website home page. The layout is divided into several sections:

- Toolbar:** Located at the top right, containing links for Register, Log in, Shopping cart(0), and Wishlist(0).
- Search:** A search bar with a search button and a dropdown menu for currency (US Dollar).
- Menu Bar:** A dark navigation bar with links for Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, and Contact us.
- Left Column:** Contains a CATEGORIES sidebar with links to Books, Computers, Electronics, Apparel & Shoes, Digital downloads, Jewelry, and Gift Cards. Below it is a MANUFACTURERS sidebar with links to ASUS and HP. Further down are POPULAR TAGS and a COMMUNITY POLL.
- Display Area:** The main content area featuring a featured product (COMPACT CAMERA SP120), a welcome message, and a section for FEATURED PRODUCTS with three items: a \$25 Virtual Gift Card, a Build your own computer, and an HP Pavilion Artist Edition laptop.
- Right Column:** Contains a NEWSLETTER sign-up form, a RECENTLY VIEWED PRODUCTS section, and an INFORMATION section with links to Contact us, About us, News, Blog, New products, Recently viewed products, Compare products list, Sitemap, Shipping & Returns, Privacy Notice, and Conditions of Use.

The main window includes the following components:

- Toolbar
- Menu Bar
- Left Column
- Right Column
- Display Area

# Categories and Manufacturers

The **Categories** page is displayed by selecting **Categories** from the Left Column. This option enables you to add an unlimited number of categories and sub-categories in the backend. Initially, on opening this page, all the top level categories will be displayed and you can then choose to drill down into the sub-categories or view the products and descriptions belonging to each top level category, as shown in the windows below.

Register Log in Shopping cart(0) Wishlist(0)

Search store Search

English US Dollar

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

**CATEGORIES**

- › Books
- › Computers
  - › Desktops
  - › Notebooks
  - › Accessories
  - › Games
  - › Software
- › Electronics
- › Apparel & Shoes
- › Digital downloads
- › Jewelry
- › Gift Cards

**MANUFACTURERS**

- › ASUS
- › HP

**NEWSLETTER**

Sign up for our new letter:

TOP / COMPUTERS

**Desktops**



**Notebooks**



**Accessories**



**Games**



**Software**



**CATEGORIES**

- Books
- Computers
  - Desktops
  - Notebooks
  - Accessories
  - Games
  - Software
- Electronics
- Apparel & Shoes
- Digital downloads
- Jewelry
- Gift Cards

**MANUFACTURERS**

- ASUS
- HP

**NEWSLETTER**

Sign up for our newsletter:

HOME / COMPUTERS / DESKTOPS

## Desktops

Sort by  ▾

Display  ▾ per page

View as  ▾

**Filter by price**

- Under \$1,000.00
- \$1,000.00 - \$1,200.00
- Over \$1,200.00



Build your own computer

★★★★★  
\$1,200.00



Compaq Presario  
SR1519X Pentium 4  
Desktop PC with CDRW

★★★★★  
\$500.00



HP IQ506 TouchSmart  
Desktop PC

★★★★★  
\$1,199.00



HP Pavilion Elite M9150F  
Desktop PC

★★★★★  
\$1,350.00

The Manufacturers page is displayed by selecting **Manufacturers** from the **Left Column**. This option enables you to add an unlimited number of manufacturers in the backend. Initially, on opening this page, all the manufacturers will be displayed and you can then choose to drill down into the manufacturers or view the products and descriptions belonging to each manufacturer, as shown in the windows below.

The screenshot displays the nopCommerce website interface. At the top left is the nopCommerce logo with the tagline "open source e-commerce solution". To the right are links for Register, Log in, Shopping cart(0), and Wishlist(0). Below these is a search bar labeled "Search store" and a currency selector set to "US Dollar". A dark navigation bar contains links for Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, and Contact us.

The main content area is titled "HP". On the left, there are three sidebar sections: "CATEGORIES" with links to Books, Computers, Electronics, Apparel & Shoes, Digital downloads, Jewelry, and Gift Cards; "MANUFACTURERS" with links to ASUS and HP; and "NEWSLETTER" with a sign-up form and a Subscribe button.

The main product grid shows four items:

- HP IQ508 TouchSmart Desktop PC**: Price \$1,199.00, 5-star rating, Add to cart button.
- HP Pavilion Artist Edition DV2890NR 14.1-inch Laptop**: Price \$1,590.00, 5-star rating, Add to cart button.
- HP Pavilion Elite M9150F Desktop PC**: Price \$1,350.00, 4.5-star rating, Add to cart button.
- HP Pavilion G60-230US 16.0-Inch Laptop**: Price \$1,480.00, 4-star rating, Add to cart button.

# Filtering the Display

nopCommerce enables you to filter the display by price or by specification. This is performed when you create categories and add products and attributes in the backend. Refer to **Managing Categories** in **Introducing the Backend** chapter for further details.

*Note: When adding an attribute in the backend, ensure that the **Allow Filtering** check box is selected. Otherwise, the user will not be able to filter by specification or price in the front end.*

An example of filtering the display by attributes is displayed below:

The screenshot displays the nopCommerce front-end interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links for Register, Log in, Shopping cart(0), and Wishlist(0). A search bar is located on the right side of the header. Below the header, a dark navigation bar contains links for Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, and Contact us. The main content area is divided into several sections:

- CATEGORIES:** A sidebar menu with expandable options: Books, Computers (sub-categories: Desktops, Notebooks, Accessories, Games, Software), Electronics, Apparel & Shoes, Digital downloads, Jewelry, and Gift Cards.
- MANUFACTURERS:** A sidebar menu with expandable options: ASUS and HP.
- NEWSLETTER:** A sign-up form with a text input field and a Subscribe button.
- Product Listing:** The main content area shows the breadcrumb path HOME / COMPUTERS / NOTEBOOKS and the category title Notebooks. It includes sorting options (Sort by Position, Display 4 per page, View as Grid) and a Filter by attributes section with expandable options for CPU Type (AMD, Intel) and Memory (1 GB, 3 GB). Below the filters, four product cards are displayed in a grid, each featuring an image of a laptop, the product name, a star rating, the price, and an Add to cart button.

Product Name	Price	Rating
ASUS Eee PC 1000HA 10-Inch Netbook	\$2,600.00	4 stars
ASUS Eee PC 900HA 8.9-Inch Netbook Black	\$1,500.00	4 stars
HP Pavilion Artist Edition DV2890NR 14.1-inch Laptop	\$1,590.00	5 stars
HP Pavilion G60-230US 16.0-Inch Laptop	\$1,460.00	4 stars

At the bottom right of the product listing, there are pagination controls showing 1, 2, and Next.

An example of filtering the display by prices is displayed below:



[Register](#) [Log in](#) [Shopping cart\(0\)](#) [Wishlist\(0\)](#)

Search store

US Dollar

[Home page](#) [New products](#) [Search](#) [My account](#) [Blog](#) [Contact us](#)

#### CATEGORIES

- ▶ Books
- ▶ Computers
  - ▶ Desktops
  - ▶ Notebooks
  - ▶ Accessories
  - ▶ Games
  - ▶ Software
- ▶ Electronics
- ▶ Apparel & Shoes
- ▶ Digital downloads
- ▶ Jewelry
- ▶ Gift Cards

#### MANUFACTURERS

- ▶ ASUS
- ▶ HP

#### NEWSLETTER

Sign up for our newsletter:

HOME / COMPUTERS / DESKTOPS

## Desktops

Sort by

Display   per page

View as

#### Filter by price

- Under \$1,000.00
- \$1,000.00 - \$1,200.00
- Over \$1,200.00



Build your own computer

★★★★★  
\$1,200.00



Compaq Presario  
SR1519X Pentium 4  
Desktop PC with CDRW

★★★★★  
\$500.00



HP IQ506 TouchSmart  
Desktop PC

★★★★★  
\$1,199.00



HP Pavilion Elite M9150F  
Desktop PC

★★★★★  
\$1,330.00

# Searching

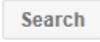
The **Search** page is displayed by clicking **SEARCH** on the toolbar. If required, you can expand your search by searching in the product descriptions and use the advanced search option, as described below.

The screenshot displays the nopCommerce search interface. At the top left is the nopCommerce logo with the tagline "open source e-commerce solution". To the right are links for "Register", "Log in", "Shopping cart(0)", and "Wishlist(0)". Below these is a search bar containing "Search store" and a "Search" button. A currency selector shows "US Dollar" with a dropdown arrow. A navigation bar includes "Home page", "New products", "Search", "My account", "Blog", and "Contact us".

The main content area is divided into three columns. The left column contains three sections: "CATEGORIES" with links to Books, Computers, Electronics, Apparel & Shoes, Digital downloads, Jewelry, and Gift Cards; "MANUFACTURERS" with links to ASUS and HP; and "NEWSLETTER" with a sign-up form and a "Subscribe" button. The right column is titled "Search" and contains a search form with the keyword "com". Below the search form are two product listings:

- Build your own computer**: Includes a star rating of 4.5, the text "Build it", a price of \$1,200.00, and an "Add to cart" button. The product image shows a desktop PC tower, keyboard, and mouse.
- Compaq Presario SR1519X Pentium 4 Desktop PC with CDRW**: Includes a star rating of 5, the text "Compaq Presario Desktop PC", a price of \$500.00, and an "Add to cart" button. The product image shows a desktop PC tower, keyboard, and mouse.

► **To search for a product:**

- 1 Clicking **SEARCH** on the toolbar. In the **Search** field, enter the product to search for.
- 2 Click  .

*Note: Alternatively, you can use the search box to search for a product*



► **To search using advance search:**

- 1 From the **Search** window, select the **Advanced search** checkbox. The window is expanded, as follows:

Search



Search keyword:

Advanced search

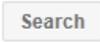
Category:

Automatically search sub categories

Manufacturer:

Price range: From  to

Search In product descriptions

- 2 From the **Categories** dropdown list, select the category of the product to search for.
- 3 Select the **Automatically Search Sub Categories** checkbox to expand the search to the sub categories.
- 4 From the **Manufacturer** dropdown list, select the manufacturer of the product to search for.
- 5 In the **Price range** fields, enter the price range of the product to search for.
- 6 Select the **Search in Product Descriptions** checkbox to expand the search to the product description.
- 7 Click  .

# New Product Pages

The **New Products** page is displayed by clicking **New Products** on the menu bar. The new available products are displayed.



[Register](#) [Log in](#) [Shopping cart\(0\)](#) [Wishlist\(0\)](#)

Search store

US Dollar

[Home page](#) [New products](#) [Search](#) [My account](#) [Blog](#) [Contact us](#)

## CATEGORIES

- ▶ Books
- ▶ Computers
- ▶ Electronics
- ▶ Apparel & Shoes
- ▶ Digital downloads
- ▶ Jewelry
- ▶ Gift Cards

## MANUFACTURERS

- ▶ ASUS
- ▶ HP

## NEWSLETTER

Sign up for our newsletter:

## New products



The Battle Of Los Angeles

★★★★☆

\$3.00



Single Ladies (Put A Ring On It)

★★★★★

\$3.00



Poker Face

★★★★☆

\$2.80



World Wide Soccer Manager 2009

★★★★★

\$26.99



World of Warcraft: Wrath of the Lich King Expansion Pack

★★★★☆

\$29.60



Vintage Style Three Stone Diamond Engagement Ring

★★★★★

\$2,100.00



V-Blue Juniors' Cuffed Denim Short with Rhinestones

★★★★☆

\$10.00



Toshiba Satellite A305-S0908 15.4-Inch Laptop

★★★★★

\$1,360.00

# Ratings and Reviews

Rating and reviews are accessed from the product details page. Customers can also write reviews, as described in the procedure below. A rating can also be set for each review. Ratings can be set from **1** to **5** stars.

*Note: After a review has been written and approved by store owner, other customers can define whether they were helpful or not but clicking **Yes** or **No**.*

## ► To add a review:

- 1 Go to product details page.
- 2 Click **Details**. The product details page is displayed.



The screenshot displays the nopCommerce storefront for the product 'Corel Paint Shop Pro Photo X2'. The top navigation bar includes links for 'Home page', 'New products', 'Search', 'My account', 'Blog', and 'Contact us'. The left sidebar contains a 'CATEGORIES' menu with options like 'Books', 'Computers', 'Electronics', and 'Software', as well as a 'MANUFACTURERS' section with 'ASUS' and 'HP'. The main content area shows the product image, a price tag of '\$65.00', and a green 'Add to cart' button. A prominent orange-bordered box highlights the text 'Be the first to review this product'. Below the product image, there is a detailed description of the software's features and a 'Product tags' section listing 'awesome (20)' and 'computer (17)'. The top right corner of the page features a search bar, language and currency selectors (English, US Dollar), and links for 'Register', 'Log in', 'Shopping cart(1)', and 'Wishlist(0)'.

- 3 In the **Product Reviews** area, click **Add your review**. The review page is displayed, as shown below.

*Note: If no reviews exist, **Be the first to review this product** text is displayed. If a least one review exists, then **{0} review(s)** is displayed where **{0}** is the number of existing reviews.*

The screenshot shows the nopCommerce storefront. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links for Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, and Contact us. Below this, there are three main sections: CATEGORIES (Books, Computers, Electronics, Apparel & Shoes, Digital downloads, Jewelry, Gift Cards), MANUFACTURERS (ASUS, HP), and NEW SLETTER (Sign up for our new sletter: [input], Subscribe). The main content area is titled 'Product reviews for Corel Paint Shop Pro Photo X2' and contains a 'Write your own review' form. The form has a 'Review title' text box, a 'Review text' text area, and a 'Rating' section with five radio buttons labeled 'Bad', 'C', 'C', 'C', and 'Excellent'. The 'Excellent' radio button is selected. A 'Submit review' button is located at the bottom of the form. The top right of the page shows user information: admin@yourStore.com, Log out, Shopping cart(2), and Wishlist(2). There is also a search bar and language/currency dropdowns (English, US Dollar).

- 4 Enter the following review information:
- In the **Review title** field, enter the title for the review.
  - In the **Review text** field, enter the title for the review.
  - In the **Rating** area, select the required rating from **Bad** to **Excellent** and click **Review**. This review must be approved by the store owner. Then other customers can define whether they were helpful or not buy clicking **Yes** or **No**.

*Note: A review must be approved by the store owner. The option is configurable in the **Administration Area** by selecting **Configuration > Global Settings**.*

# Emailing a Friend

You can email a friend to recommend a specific product. Only registered customers can use this feature.

TOP / COMPUTERS / ACCESSORIES / ACER ASPIRE ONE 8.9" MINI-NOTEBOOK CASE - (BLACK)



## Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black)

Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook and 6 Cell Battery model (AOA150-1447)  
Availability: In stock

[Be the first to review this product](#)

**\$21.60**

Qty:

[Add to cart](#)

[Add to wishlist](#)

[Email a friend](#)

[Add to compare list](#)



Acer Aspire One 8.9" Memory Foam Pouch is the perfect fit for Acer Aspire One 8.9". This pouch is made out of premium quality shock absorbing memory form and it provides extra protection even though case is very light and slim. This pouch is water resistant and has internal supporting bands for Acer Aspire One 8.9". Made In Korea.

### PRICE BREAKS - The more you buy, the more you save

Quantity	2+	5+	10+
Price	<b>\$19.00</b>	<b>\$17.00</b>	<b>\$15.00</b>

### Product tags

[cool](#) (21) , [computer](#) (17)

### Customers who bought this item also bought



Compaq Presario  
SR1519X Pentium 4  
Desktop PC with CDRW

**\$500.00**

[Add to cart](#)

► **To email a friend:**

- 1 From the product page, click **Email a Friend**. The **Email a Friend** window is displayed containing the selected product information.

The screenshot shows the 'Email a friend' form on the nopCommerce website. The form is titled 'Email a friend' and is for the product 'Acer Aspire One 8.9\"

- 2 Enter your friend's email in the **Friend's Email** field.
- 3 Enter your email address in **Your email address** field.
- 4 Enter a message in the **Personal Message** box.
- 5 Click Send Email.

# Comparing Products

The **Compare Products** page is displayed by clicking **Compare Product List** from the **Information Area** in the Left Column. This enables you to compare data between products, such as price, specifications and more.

However, you must first select the **Add to compare list** button on the product pages that you want to compare, as described below:

TOP / COMPUTERS / NOTEBOOKS / ASUS EEE PC 900HA 8.9-INCH NETBOOK BLACK



**ASUS Eee PC 900HA 8.9-Inch Netbook Black**  
High Speed Connectivity Anywhere with Wi-Fi 802.11b/g.  
Availability: In stock  
Manufacturer: ASUS

[Be the first to review this product](#)

**\$1,500.00**

Qty:  [Add to cart](#)

[Add to wishlist](#)

[Email a friend](#) [Add to compare list](#)

[f](#) [t](#) [e](#) [p](#) [+](#)

Much more compact than a standard-sized notebook and weighing just 2.5 pounds, the Eee PC 900HA is perfect for students toting to school or road warriors packing away to Wi-Fi hotspots. In addition to the 160 GB hard disk drive (HDD), the Eee PC 900HA also features 1 GB of RAM, VGA-resolution webcam integrated into the bezel above the LCD, 54g Wi-Fi networking (802.11b/g), multiple USB ports, SD memory card slot, a VGA output for connecting to a monitor, and up to 10 GB of online storage (complimentary for 18 months).

It comes preinstalled with the Microsoft Windows XP Home operating system, which offers more experienced users an enhanced and innovative experience that incorporates Windows Live features like Windows Live Messenger for instant messaging and Windows Live Mail for consolidated email accounts on your desktop. Complementing this is Microsoft Works, which equips the user with numerous office applications to work efficiently.

► **To compare products:**

- 1 From the required product page, click **Add to Compare** list. The selected product is displayed in the **Compare Products** page.
- 2 Repeat step **1** to add additional product to the **Compare Products** page.

Compare products

Clear list



	ASUS Eee PC 1000HA 10-Inch Netbook	ASUS Eee PC 900HA 8.9-Inch Netbook Black
Price	\$2,600.00	\$1,500.00
Screensize	10.0"	
CPU Type	AMD	AMD
Memory	1 GB	1 GB
Harddrive	160 GB	160 GB

*Note: You can click **Remove** to remove a product from the **Compare Products** page.*

# Recently Viewed Products

A list of the last products whose details were reviewed by the current user is displayed by selecting the **Recently Viewed Products** option on the Right Column, as shown below. The number of recently viewed products to display can be configured by the administrator.

*Note: This feature is disabled by default. You can enable it in the Administration Area by selecting Configuration>Global Settings.*

Click on the required product to view the product details.

The screenshot displays a nopCommerce storefront. At the top left is the nopCommerce logo with the tagline 'open source e-commerce solution'. To the right are links for 'Register', 'Log in', 'Shopping cart(0)', and 'Wishlist(0)'. Below these is a search bar labeled 'Search store' and a 'Search' button. A currency selector shows 'US Dollar'. A navigation bar contains 'Home page', 'New products', 'Search', 'My account', 'Blog', and 'Contact us'. The main content area features a large product card for a 'COMPACT CAMERA SP120' with a price of '\$159.00' and a 'SHOP NOW' button. Below this is a 'Welcome to our store' message and a 'FEATURED PRODUCTS' section with three items: a '\$25 Virtual Gift Card', 'Build your own computer', and an 'HP Pavilion Artist Edition' laptop. On the right sidebar, the 'RECENTLY VIEWED PRODUCTS' section is highlighted with a red box, listing items like 'Black & White Diamond Heart', 'BlackBerry Bold 9000 Phone', 'Medal of Honor - Limited Edition (Xbox 360)', and 'Compaq Presario SR1519X'. Other sidebar sections include 'CATEGORIES', 'MANUFACTURERS', 'POPULAR TAGS', 'COMMUNITY POLL', and 'NEWSLETTER'.

# Registration

In order to login into nopCommerce you must first become a registered user. This includes entering your personal and company details as well as your contact information and email and password.

**Register**

Your Personal Details

Gender:  Male  Female

First name:

Last name:

Date of birth:  Day  Month  Year

Email:

Company Details

Company name:

Options

Newsletter:

Your Password

Password:

Confirm password:

**CATEGORIES**

- › Books
- › Computers
- › Electronics
- › Apparel & Shoes
- › Digital downloads
- › Jewelry
- › Gift Cards

**MANUFACTURERS**

- › ASUS
- › HP

**NEW SLETTER**

Sign up for our new sletter:

*Note: The fields in this window can be configured by the store owner in the backend in the **Administration area**. From the **Configuration menu** select **Settings** and then select the **Customer Settings** and configure the required form fields.*

► **To register as a user:**

- 1 In **Your Personal Details** area, enter your details in the relevant fields.
- 2 In the **Company Details** area, enter the name of your company in the **Company Name** field.
- 3 In the **Options** area, check the **Newsletter**  checkbox to receive the newsletters by email.
- 4 In **Your Password** area, define a password and confirm it.
- 5 Click Register.

## Login

By default, customers are logged-in using their email and password that they provided when registering. The login page is displayed by selecting **Log in** from the toolbar. nopCommerce also supports logging-in by username and password.

*Note: This option is enabled by the store owner in the backend in the Administration area. From the Configuration menu, select Settings. Then select the Customer Settings menu and check the 'Usernames' enabled checkbox. Refer to **Introducing the Backend**, on page 63, for further details.*

Register Log in Shopping cart(0) Wishlist(0)

Search store Search

English US Dollar

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

**CATEGORIES**

- Books
- Computers
- Electronics
- Apparel & Shoes
- Digital downloads
- Jewelry
- Gift Cards

**MANUFACTURERS**

- ASUS
- HP

**NEW SLETTER**

Sign up for our new sletter:

Subscribe

Welcome, Please Sign In!

**New Customer**

By creating an account on our website you will be able to shop faster, be up to date on an orders' status, and keep track of the orders you have previously made.

Register

**Returning Customer**

Email:

Password:

Remember me?

Forgot password?

Log in

About login / registration

Put your login / registration information here. You can edit this in the admin site.

▶ **To login to nopCommerce:**

- 1 In the **E-Mail Addresses field**, enter your email address.
- 2 In the **Password field**, enter your registration password.
- 3 Click **Log in**. The Customer Account pages are displayed, as described on the following page.

*Note: You can select the **Remember me** checkbox to save your password in the system.*

## **Customer Account Pages**

The customer account pages are displayed after logging in to the system.

They include the following tabs:

- **Customer Info**
- **Customer Addresses**
- **Customer Orders**
- **Downloadable Products**
- **Reward Points**
- **Change Password**
- **Avatar**

# Customer Info

This page enables you to define customer information, such as company details and more. The fields in this window are configured in the **Administration** area. From the **Configuration** menu select **Settings>Customer Settings**.

email@nopCommerce.com Log out Shopping cart(0) Wishlist(0)

Search store Search

English US Dollar

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

**MY ACCOUNT**

- Customer info
- Addresses
- Orders
- Downloadable products
- Back in stock subscriptions
- Change password

### My account - Customer info

**Your Personal Details**

Gender:  Male  Female

First name:  \*

Last name:  \*

Date of birth:

Email:  \*

**Company Details**

Company name:

**Options**

Newsletter:

Save

## ► To define the customer info details:

- 1 From the **Customer Info** tab, in the **Your Personal Details** area, enter your details in the relevant fields.
- 2 In the **Company Details** field, enter the name of your company.
- 3 In the **Options** area, check **I would like to receive newsletters**  to receive the newsletters by email.
- 4 Click **Save**.

*Note: The fields in this window can be configured by the store owner in the backend in the **Administration** area. From the **Configuration** menu select **Settings** and then select the **Customer Settings** tab and configure the required form fields.*

# Customer Addresses

This section describes the addresses used to process the order.

The screenshot shows the 'My account - Addresses' page in nopCommerce. The user is logged in as 'Becky Smith' with email 'email@nopCommerce.com'. The page displays a list of addresses for the user, with one address shown: 'Becky Smith, Email: email@NopCommerce.com, Phone number: 12345678, Fax number: Nopsolutions, 21 West 52nd Street, New York, New York 10021, United States'. There are 'Edit' and 'Delete' buttons for this address. An 'Add new' button is located below the address list. The sidebar on the left contains 'MY ACCOUNT' with links to Customer info, Addresses, Orders, Downloadable products, Back in stock subscriptions, and Change password. The top navigation bar includes Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, and Contact us. The top right corner shows the user's email, Log out, Shopping cart(0), and Wishlist(0). A search bar and language/currency dropdowns are also visible.

## ► To add a customer address information:

- 1 Select the Customer Addresses page.
- 2 Click the **Add new** button. The **Add new address** window is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'My account - Add new address' form in nopCommerce. The form contains the following fields: First name, Last name, Email, Company, Country (dropdown menu with 'Select country' and a red asterisk), State/province (dropdown menu with 'Other (Non US)'), City, Address 1, Address 2, Zip/postal code, Phone number, and Fax number. Each field has a red asterisk indicating it is required. A 'Save' button is located at the bottom of the form. The sidebar on the left contains 'MY ACCOUNT' with links to Customer info, Addresses, Orders, Downloadable products, Back in stock subscriptions, and Change password. The top navigation bar includes Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, Forums, and Contact us. The top right corner shows the user's email, Log out, Inbox, Shopping cart(0), and Wishlist(2). A search bar and language/currency dropdowns are also visible.

- 3 Enter the required address information in the relevant fields.
- 4 Click the **Save** button. The new address is displayed on the **Addresses** page of the **Customers Addresses** page, shown on page 37.

*Note: You can edit an existing address by clicking **Edit**. You can remove an address by clicking **Delete**.*

# Customer Orders

This section describes the order details. Once an order has been processed, the details of the order appear in this tab.

► **To view customer order information:**

- 1 Select the **Customer Orders** tab. The customer's orders are listed.

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

MY ACCOUNT

- Customer info
- Addresses
- Orders
- Return requests
- Downloadable products
- Back in stock subscriptions
- Change password

My account - Orders

Order Number: 3

Order status: Pending  
Order Date: 12/30/2012 8:02:45 AM  
Order Total: \$6.00

Details

Order Number: 2

Order status: Complete  
Order Date: 12/30/2012 8:02:08 AM  
Order Total: \$1,512.24

Return Item(s) Details

Click **Details** beside the order to view. The **Order Information** page is displayed, including the order details, shipping and billing address, products orders and more, as shown below.

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

Order information

Print PDF Invoice

Order #3  
Order Date: Sunday, December 30, 2012  
Order Status: Pending  
Order Total: \$6.00

**Billing Address**  
John Smith  
Email: admin@yourStore.com  
Phone: 12345678  
Fax  
Nop Solutions  
21 West 52nd Street  
New York, New York 10021  
United States

**Payment Method**  
Purchase Order  
Purchase Order Number

Product(s)

Name	Price	Quantity	Total
The Battle Of Los Angeles	\$3.00	1	\$3.00
Single Ladies (Put A Ring On It)	\$3.00	1	\$3.00

Re-order

**Sub-Total:** \$6.00  
**Tax:** \$0.00  
**Order Total:** \$6.00

***Note:** You can print the order by clicking the **Print** button beside the required order. Alternatively, you can click **PDF Invoice** to save the invoice in PDF format.*

## My Downloadable Products

This tab displays the downloadable products. This option is enabled by the store owner in the backend in the **Administration area**. From the **Catalog** menu select **Products>Manage Products**. Then click **Edit** beside the product, which you want to add this option check the **Downloadable product** checkbox to enable this product to be downloaded.

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

**MY ACCOUNT**

- › Customer info
- › Addresses
- › Orders
- › Return requests
- › Downloadable products
- › Back in stock subscriptions
- › Change password

My account - Downloadable products

Order #	Date	Product	Download
3	12/30/2012	The Battle Of Los Angeles	n/a
3	12/30/2012	Single Ladies (Put A Ring On It)	n/a

### ► To download a product:

- 1 In the **Download** column, click **Download**. The file download window is displayed.
- 2 Click **Save** to download the file to a local directory.

*Note:* In the **Name** column, you can click on the name of the product. The product details page is displayed.

## Reward Points

The **Reward Points** functionality enables an online merchant to implement unique programs designed to enhance user experience and increase customer loyalty. Points are awarded based on wide range of transactions and customer actions and easily managed through the back end. The **Reward Points** Program enables customers to earn points for certain actions they take on the site. Points are awarded, based on making purchases and customer actions (such as registration).

You can cash in your reward points during checkout. If you have accumulated enough points, you can use these points as one of the payment methods. The option to use reward points, as well as your balance and the financial equivalent of this balance, is displayed in the **Payment Method** area of the checkout. Exchangeable reward points can be used together with other payment methods such as credit cards, gift cards and more.

*Notes:*

- The option to use *reward points* can be disabled by the store owner in the backend in the **Administration area**. From the **Configuration menu** select **Global Settings** and then select the **Reward Points** and uncheck the **Enabled** checkbox.
- *Reward points* are applied only to registered users

## Back in Stock Subscriptions

This section describes how the user can set the account to be notified by email when a product is back in stock.

The screenshot shows the nopCommerce storefront. At the top right, there are links for 'admin@yourStore.com', 'Log out', 'Inbox', 'Shopping cart(4)', and 'Wishlist(2)'. Below these is a search bar and a language/currency selector set to 'English' and 'US Dollar'. A navigation bar contains links for 'Home page', 'New products', 'Search', 'My account', 'Blog', 'Forums', and 'Contact us'. The 'MY ACCOUNT' section is active, showing a sidebar with links to 'Customer info', 'Addresses', 'Orders', 'Return requests', 'Downloadable products', 'Back in stock subscriptions', and 'Change password'. The main content area is titled 'My account - Back in stock subscriptions' and contains the text 'You will receive an e-mail when a particular product is back in stock.' Below this is a table with a checkbox and a 'Product' column. The 'Diamond Tennis Bracelet' is listed with its checkbox checked. A 'Delete selected' button is located below the table.

► **To receive notification about a product being back in stock:**

- 1 Select the product for which you want to receive an e-mail notification when the product is back in stock.
- 2 You can click **Delete selected** to remove a selected product from the list.

# Change Password

This section describes how to change your password information.

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

MY ACCOUNT

- ▶ Customer info
- ▶ Addresses
- ▶ Orders
- ▶ Downloadable products
- ▶ Back in stock subscriptions
- ▶ Change password

My account - Change password

Old password:  \*

New password:  \*

Confirm password:  \*

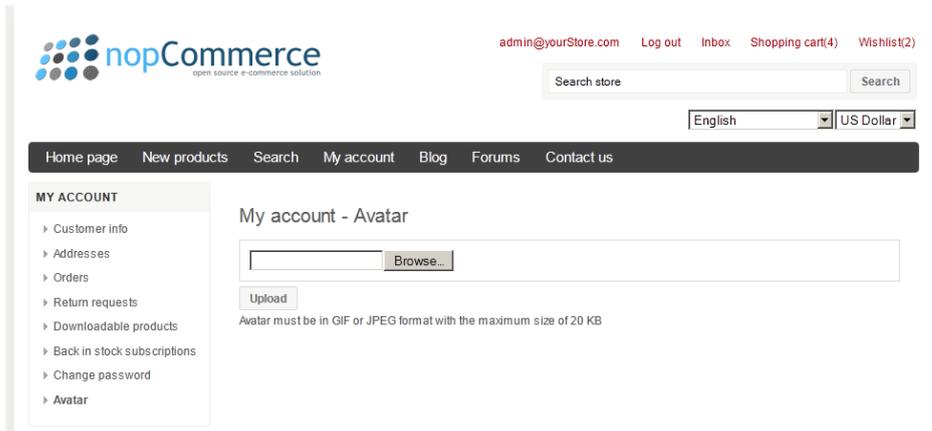
Change password

## ▶ To change your password:

- 1 In the **Old Password** field, enter your previous password.
- 2 In the **Password** field, enter your new password.
- 3 In the **New Password Confirmation** field, enter the new password to confirm.
- 4 Click **Change** password.

# Avatar

The **Avatar** tab is enabled from the **Administration** by selecting **Settings** from the **Configuration** menu, then **Customer Settings**. Then in the **Customer Settings** tab, check the **Allow customers to upload avatar** checkbox. This tab enables customers to upload their avatar, which will be shown in forums, news comments and blog comments.



## ▶ To upload your avatar

- 1 Click **Browse** and navigate to search for the required avatar file. The Avatar must be a GIF or JPEG format with a maximum size of 20 kb.

*Note: The administrator can configure this size value of 20 kb.*

- 2 Click **Upload avatar**. The avatar is uploaded and can be seen in forums, news comments, and blog comments.

# Shopping Cart

This section describes how to add an item to the shopping cart. Once items are added to the shopping cart, the **Shopping Cart** icon is updated on the toolbar. You can view the items in your shopping cart by clicking this icon.

► **To add products to your shopping cart:**

- 1 Access the details page, as follows:

TOP / COMPUTERS / DESKTOPS / HP IQ506 TOUCHSMART DESKTOP PC



**HP IQ506 TouchSmart Desktop PC**  
Availability: In stock  
Manufacturer: HP

[Be the first to review this product](#)

**\$1,199.00**

Qty:  [Add to cart](#)

[Add to wishlist](#)

[Email a friend](#) [Add to compare list](#)

[f](#) [t](#) [e](#) [+](#)

Redesigned with a next-generation, touch-enabled 22-inch high-definition LCD screen, the HP TouchSmart IQ506 all-in-one desktop PC is designed to fit wherever life happens: in the kitchen, family room, or living room. With one touch you can check the weather, download your e-mail, or watch your favorite TV show. It's also designed to maximize energy, with a power-saving Intel Core 2 Duo processor and advanced power management technology, as well as material efficiency—right down to the packaging. It has a sleek piano black design with elegant espresso side-panel highlights, and the HP Ambient Light lets you set a mood—or see your keyboard in the dark.

**Product tags**  
[awesome](#) (20) , [computer](#) (17)

- 2 Enter the number of items to add and click **Add to cart**. The shopping cart is displayed with the items displayed.

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

Cart Address Shipping Payment Confirm Complete

### Shopping cart

Remove	Product(s)	Price	Qty.	Total
<input type="checkbox"/>	 EatingWell in Season	\$51.00	1	\$51.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve	\$24.00	2	\$48.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	 HP IQ506 TouchSmart Desktop PC	\$1,199.00	1	\$1,199.00

Update shopping cart Continue shopping

**Discount Code**  
Enter your coupon here

**Estimate shipping**  
Enter your destination to get a shipping estimate  
Country:   
State / province:   
Zip / postal code:

**Gift Cards**  
Enter gift card code

Sub-Total: \$1,298.00  
Shipping: \$0.00  
Tax: \$0.00  
Total: \$1,298.00

- 3 Enter the required optional information, as follows:

- In the **Discount Code** field, enter the required coupon and click **Apply** coupon.
- In the **Gift Card** field, enter the required gift card code and click **Apply** gift card.
- In the **Estimate shipping** fields, enter the required shipping information (such as, country, state/province and zip code) and click **Estimate Shipping**.

***Note:** You can remove an item from the cart by checking the **Remove** column and clicking **Update shopping cart**. Click **Continue shopping** to go back to the category/manufacturer details page. Click **Checkout** to continue with the ordering process.*

# Wishlist

This section describes how to add an item to your wishlist. After adding products to your wishlist, a URL is displayed for sharing purposes. Meaning a friend can purchase the product for you. You can also use the wishlist to remember the product that you would like to purchase later (by you or a friend).

Once items are added to the wishlist, the **Wishlist** icon is updated on the toolbar. You can view the items in your wishlist by clicking this icon.

*Note: The price of an item is determined at the time of purchase. Adding an item to your wishlist does not guarantee that it will be in stock at a later date.*

## ► To add products to your wishlist:

- 1 Access the required details page, as follows:

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

CATEGORIES

- Books
- Computers
- Electronics
- Apparel & Shoes
- Digital downloads
- Jewelry
- Gift Cards

MANUFACTURERS

- ASUS
- HP

NEW SLETTER

Sign up for our new sletter:

TOP / JEWELRY / VINTAGE STYLE THREE STONE DIAMOND ENGAGEMENT RING

**Vintage Style Three Stone Diamond Engagement Ring**  
1.24 Carat (ctw) in 14K White Gold (Certified)  
Availability: In stock

Be the first to review this product

**\$2,100.00**

Qty:

Dazzle her with this gleaming 14 karat white gold vintage proposal. A ravishing collection of 11 decadent diamonds come together to invigorate a superbly ornate gold shank. Total diamond weight on this antique style engagement ring equals 1 1/4 carat (ctw). Item includes diamond certificate.

Product tags  
[awesome](#) (20) , [jewelry](#) (4)

Related products

Black & White Diamond Heart  
**\$130.00**

Diamond Tennis Bracelet  
**\$360.00**

Diamond Pave Earrings  
**\$569.00**

- 2 Enter the number of items to add click **Add to wishlist**. The Wishlist is displayed with the items displayed.

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

Wishlist

Remove	Add to cart	Product(s)	Price	Qty.	Total
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 Vintage Style Three Stone Diamond Engagement Ring	\$2,100.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$2,100.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 Compaq Presario SR1519X Pentium 4 Desktop PC with CDRW	\$500.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$500.00

Your wishlist URL for sharing:  
<http://janetuserguide.nopcommerce.com/Wishlist/8810cb6f-c1a0-4714-988f-3e33d8fe9b3d>

*Note: You can remove an item from the wishlist by checking the **Remove** column and clicking **Update wishlist**. A wishlist URL is displayed for sharing.*

- 3 In the **Add to cart** column check the required items to copy from the wishlist to the shopping cart and click **Add to Cart**. The shopping cart is displayed with the new items copied from the wishlist to the shopping cart, as follows:

### Wishlist

Remove	Add to cart	Product(s)	Price	Qty.	Total
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 HP IQ506 TouchSmart Desktop PC	\$1,199.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$1,199.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 Canon Digital Rebel XSi 12.2 MP Digital SLR Camera (Black)	\$670.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$670.00

[Update wishlist](#) [Add to cart](#) [Email a friend](#)

Your wishlist URL for sharing:  
<http://demouserguide.nopcommerce.com/wishlist/0e9abc1e-9ffc-406f-978a-bb2e5c0a1a25>

# Purchasing Process

The following procedure describes the ordering process. This includes adding items to your cart, defining the address, shipping and payment information, confirming the order.

► **To place an order:**

- 1 Add several products to your shopping cart, as described in **Shopping Cart**.

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

Cart Address Shipping Payment Confirm Complete

### Shopping cart

Remove	Product(s)	Price	Qty.	Total
<input type="checkbox"/>	 EatingWell in Season	\$51.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$51.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve	\$24.00	<input type="text" value="2"/>	\$48.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	 HP IQ506 TouchSmart Desktop PC	\$1,199.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$1,199.00

**Discount Code**  
Enter your coupon here

**Gift Cards**  
Enter gift card code

**Estimate shipping**  
Enter your destination to get a shipping estimate  
Country:   
State / province:   
Zip / postal code:

**Sub-Total:** \$1,298.00  
**Shipping:** \$0.00  
**Tax:** \$0.00  
**Total:** \$1,298.00

- From the **Shopping Cart** window, shown on the previous page, click **Checkout**. The **Billing Address** window is displayed. This page is displayed by default, which includes the billing information of the order as well as the order summary, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Billing Address' step of a checkout process. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links: Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, and Contact us. Below the navigation bar, the page title is 'Checkout'. The main content area is titled '1 Billing Address' and contains a dropdown menu with the text 'Select a billing address from your address book or enter a new address.' The selected address is 'Becky Smith, 21 West 52nd Street, New York, New York 10021, United States'. Below the dropdown is a 'Continue' button. On the left side, there is a vertical list of steps: 1 Billing Address (highlighted), 2 Shipping Address, 3 Shipping Method, 4 Payment Method, 5 Payment Information, and 6 Confirm Order.

- Enter your billing options, as follows:
  - From the **Select billing address** dropdown list, select the required billing address details or select **New Address** and enter the new address details in the relevant fields.
  - Click **Continue**.
  - The **Shipping Address** window is displayed, as follows:

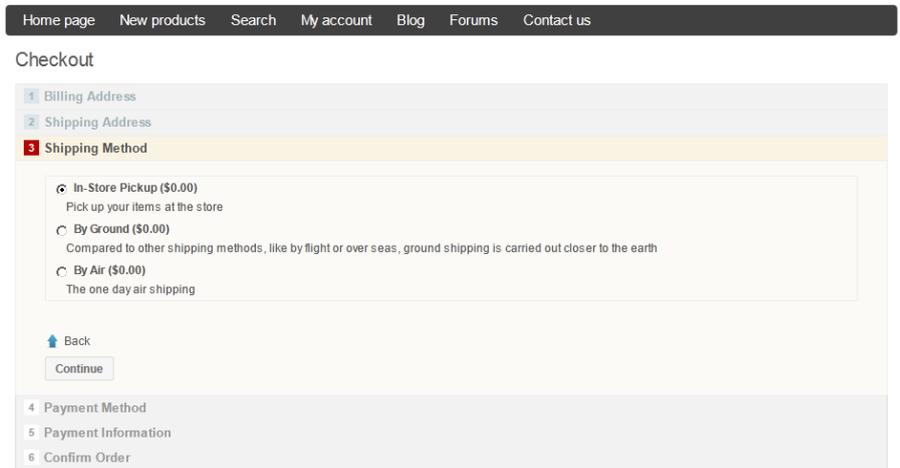
The screenshot shows the 'Shipping Address' step of a checkout process. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links: Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, Forums, and Contact us. Below the navigation bar, the page title is 'Checkout'. The main content area is titled '2 Shipping Address' and contains a dropdown menu with the text 'Select a shipping address from your address book or enter a new address.' The selected address is 'John Smith, 21 West 52nd Street, New York, New York 10021, United States'. Below the dropdown is a 'Back' button and a 'Continue' button. On the left side, there is a vertical list of steps: 1 Billing Address, 2 Shipping Address (highlighted), 3 Shipping Method, 4 Payment Method, 5 Payment Information, and 6 Confirm Order. At the top right of the page, there is a search bar with the text 'Search store' and a search button. Below the search bar, there are language and currency dropdown menus: 'English' and 'US Dollar'. At the top left, there is a logo for 'nopCommerce' with the tagline 'open source e-commerce solution'. At the top right, there are links: admin@yourStore.com, Log out, Inbox, Shopping cart(4), and Wishlist(2).

*Note: This page is displayed only when a customer has shippable products.*

- Enter your shipping options, as follows:

- From the **Select shipping address** dropdown list, select the required shipping address details or select **New Address** and enter the new address details in the relevant fields,
- Click **Continue**.

**5** The **Shipping Method** window is displayed.

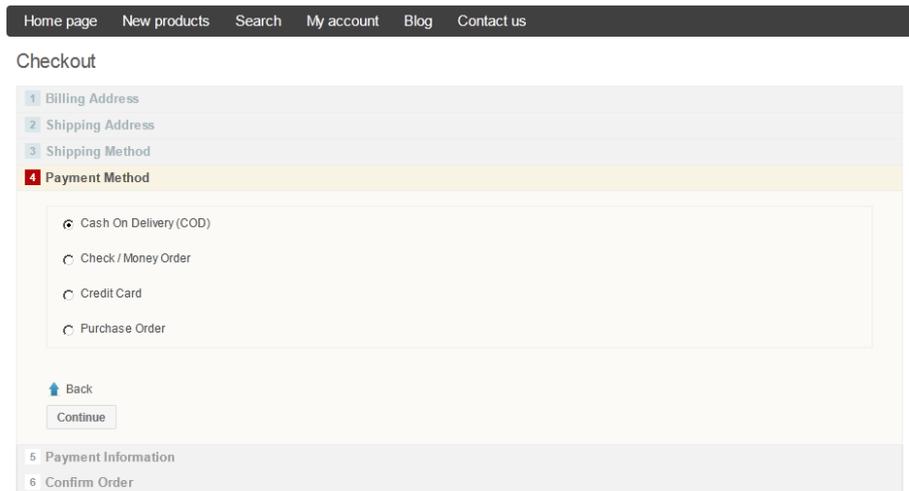


**6** Select the required shipping method, as follows:

- **In-Store Pickup:** Select this option to pick your items up in the store.
- **By Ground:** Select this option to ship the products by ground.
- **By Air:** Select this option to ship the products by air.

*Note: These options are not hardcoded and can be configured by store owner in the Administration area, by selecting **Shipping > Shipping Methods** from the **Configuration** menu.*

7 Click **Continue**. The **Payment Method** window is displayed.



The screenshot shows a checkout page with a dark navigation bar at the top containing links for Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, and Contact us. Below the navigation bar, the word "Checkout" is displayed. A progress indicator shows six steps: 1 Billing Address, 2 Shipping Address, 3 Shipping Method, 4 Payment Method (highlighted in yellow), 5 Payment Information, and 6 Confirm Order. The Payment Method section contains a list of radio button options: Cash On Delivery (COD) (selected), Check / Money Order, Credit Card, and Purchase Order. Below the options are "Back" and "Continue" buttons.

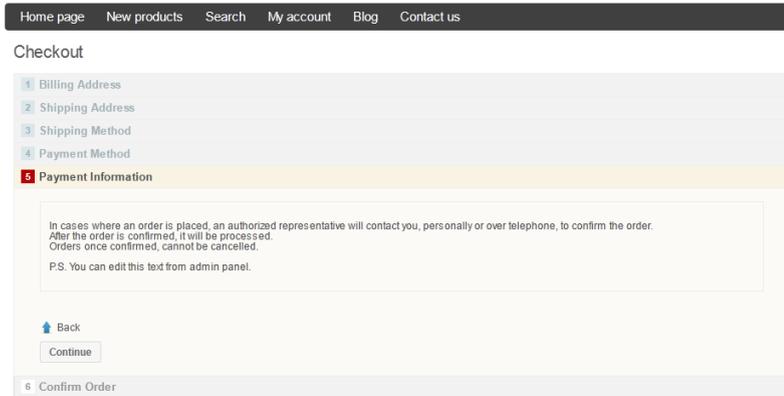
8 Select the **Use my reward points** checkbox to enable the customer to cash in the reward points that are available. This checkbox is displayed only when the reward points program is active and a customer has reward points to be redeemed.

9 Select the required payment method, as follows:

- Cash on Delivery
- Check/Money Order
- Credit Card
- Purchase Order
- Pay in Store

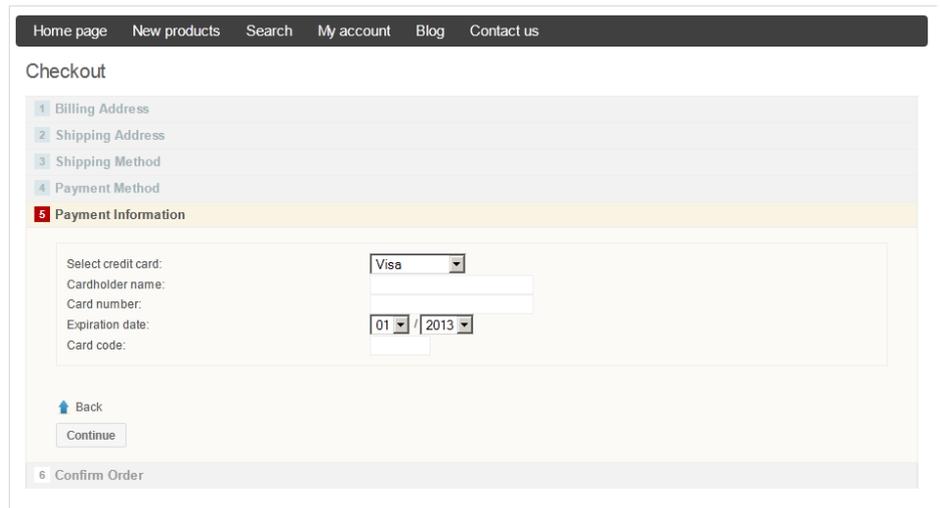
***Note:** These options are not hardcoded and can be configured by store owner in the Administration area, by selecting **Payment Methods** from the **Configuration** menu.*

10 Click **Continue**. The **Checkout** window is displayed.



The screenshot shows a navigation bar with links: Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, Contact us. Below the navigation bar is the title "Checkout" and a progress indicator with six steps: 1 Billing Address, 2 Shipping Address, 3 Shipping Method, 4 Payment Method, 5 Payment Information (highlighted in yellow), and 6 Confirm Order. The Payment Information step contains a text box with the following text: "In cases where an order is placed, an authorized representative will contact you, personally or over telephone, to confirm the order. After the order is confirmed, it will be processed. Orders once confirmed, cannot be cancelled. P.S. You can edit this text from admin panel." Below the text box are two buttons: "Back" (with a left arrow) and "Continue".

11 Click **Continue**. The **Payment Information** window is displayed, which varies according to your selection. In this case, the **Credit Card** option was selected.



The screenshot shows the same navigation bar and checkout progress indicator as in the previous screenshot. The Payment Information step is now active and contains a form for credit card details. The form fields are: "Select credit card:" with a dropdown menu showing "Visa"; "Cardholder name:" with a text input field; "Card number:" with a text input field; "Expiration date:" with two dropdown menus showing "01" and "2013"; and "Card code:" with a text input field. Below the form are two buttons: "Back" (with a left arrow) and "Continue".

12 Enter the required payment information in the relevant fields.

13 Click **Continue**. A confirmation window is displayed.

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

### Checkout

- 1 Billing Address
- 2 Shipping Address
- 3 Shipping Method
- 4 Payment Method
- 5 Payment Information
- 6 **Confirm Order**

<b>Billing Address</b> Becky Smith Email: email@NopCommerce.com Phone: 12345678 Fax: Nopsolutions 21 West 52nd Street New York, New York 10021 United States	<b>Shipping Address</b> Becky Smith Email: email@NopCommerce.com Phone: 12345678 Fax: Nopsolutions 21 West 52nd Street New York, New York 10021 United States
<b>Payment Method</b> Cash On Delivery (COD)	<b>Shipping Method</b> In-Store Pickup

Product(s)	Price	Qty.	Total
 EatingWell in Season	\$51.00	1	\$51.00
 Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve	\$24.00	2	\$48.00
 HP IQ506 TouchSmart Desktop PC	\$1,199.00	1	\$1,199.00

Sub-Total: \$1,298.00  
Shipping (In-Store Pickup): \$0.00  
Tax: \$0.00  
Total: \$1,298.00

[Back](#)

14 Click **Confirm** to complete the order. A window informing you the order has been completed successfully is displayed.

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

Cart Address Shipping Payment Confirm **Complete**

### Thank you

Your order has been successfully processed!

Order number: 4

[Click here for order details.](#)

15 Click **Continue** to return to the homepage of the store.

*Note: Alternatively, the store owner can configure the store to use a multi-step checkout. This is defined in **Administration** area, by selecting **Settings** > **Order Settings** from the **Configuration** menu and then selecting the **Use one page checkout** checkbox.*

# Order Details Page

The order details page contains shipping and billing information, the status of the order as well the list of products purchased in addition to the payment method and more.

## ► To view the order details

- 1 Click **My Account** from the menu bar to view your new order, which is displayed in the **Customers Orders** page, as follows:

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

**MY ACCOUNT**

- Customer info
- Addresses
- Orders
- Downloadable products
- Back in stock subscriptions
- Change password

My account - Orders

Order Number: 4

Order status: Pending  
Order Date: 1/4/2013 7:38:41 AM  
Order Total: \$1,298.00

Details

- 2 Click **Details** to view the order details.

### Order information

Print PDF Invoice

Order #4  
Order Date: Friday, January 04, 2013  
Order Status: Pending  
Order Total: \$1,298.00

**Billing Address**  
Becky Smith  
Email: email@NopCommerce.com  
Phone: 12345678  
Fax:  
Nopsolutions  
21 West 52nd Street  
New York, New York 10021  
United States  
**Payment Method**  
Cash On Delivery (COD)

**Shipping Address**  
Becky Smith  
Email: email@NopCommerce.com  
Phone: 12345678  
Fax:  
Nopsolutions  
21 West 52nd Street  
New York, New York 10021  
United States  
**Shipping Method**  
In-Store Pickup

Product(s)

Name	Price	Quantity	Total
EatingWell in Season	\$51.00	1	\$51.00
Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve	\$24.00	2	\$48.00
HP IQ306 TouchSmart Desktop PC	\$1,199.00	1	\$1,199.00

Re-order

**Sub-Total:** \$1,298.00  
**Shipping:** \$0.00  
**Tax:** \$0.00  
**Order Total:** \$1,298.00

# News

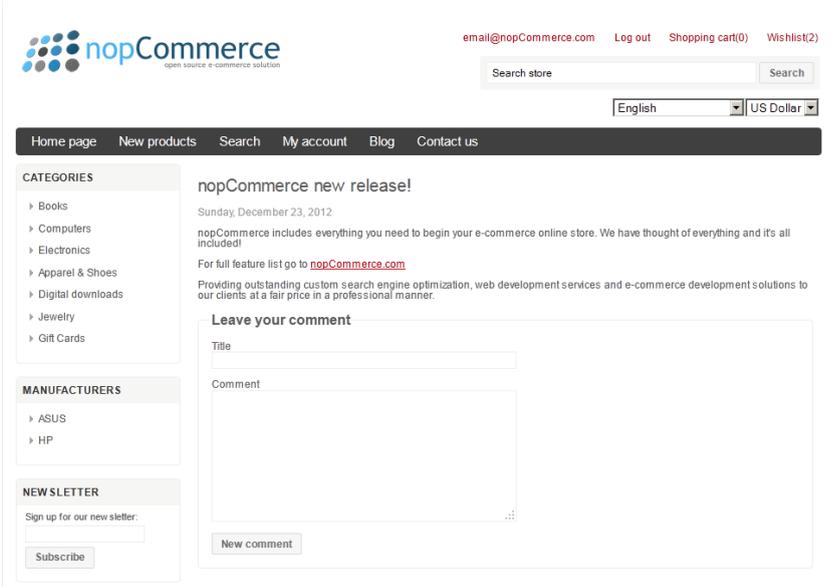
This window describes any news managed by the store owner. For example, the nopCommerce latest release information.

The screenshot shows the front-end of a nopCommerce store. At the top left is the nopCommerce logo with the tagline "open source e-commerce solution". To the right, there are links for "email@nopCommerce.com", "Log out", "Shopping cart(0)", and "Wishlist(2)". Below these is a search bar labeled "Search store" and a "Search" button. Further right are dropdown menus for "English" and "US Dollar". A dark navigation bar contains links for "Home page", "New products", "Search", "My account", "Blog", and "Contact us".

The main content area is divided into two columns. The left column has three sections: "CATEGORIES" with links to Books, Computers, Electronics, Apparel & Shoes, Digital downloads, Jewelry, and Gift Cards; "MANUFACTURERS" with links to ASUS and HP; and "NEWSLETTER" with a sign-up form and a "Subscribe" button. The right column is titled "News" and features two news items. The first item is "New online store is open!" dated Sunday, December 23, 2012, with a "details" link. The second item is "nopCommerce new release!" dated Sunday, December 23, 2012, also with a "details" link.

► **To add a news comment:**

- 1 Click the **Details** button below the **News**. The **News details** window is displayed:



The screenshot displays the nopCommerce website interface. At the top left is the nopCommerce logo with the tagline "open source e-commerce solution". To the right, there are links for "email@nopCommerce.com", "Log out", "Shopping cart(0)", and "Wishlist(2)". Below these is a search bar labeled "Search store" and a language/currency selector set to "English" and "US Dollar". A navigation menu includes "Home page", "New products", "Search", "My account", "Blog", and "Contact us".

The main content area features a news article titled "nopCommerce new release!". The article text includes the date "Sunday, December 23, 2012" and a description: "nopCommerce includes everything you need to begin your e-commerce online store. We have thought of everything and its all included!". A link to "nopCommerce.com" is provided for more details. Below the article is a "Leave your comment" section with a "Title" input field, a "Comment" text area, and a "New comment" button.

On the left sidebar, there are sections for "CATEGORIES" (Books, Computers, Electronics, Apparel & Shoes, Digital downloads, Jewelry, Gift Cards), "MANUFACTURERS" (ASUS, HP), and "NEW SLETTER" (Sign up for our new sletter: [input field] Subscribe).

- 2 In the **Comments** area, you can enter a comment title and text.
- 3 Click **New comment** to add a new comment to the new section.

# Blog

A **Blog** is a type of website, usually maintained by an individual with regular entries of commentary, descriptions of events, or other material such as graphics or video. Entries are commonly displayed in reverse-chronological order.



[email@nopCommerce.com](mailto:email@nopCommerce.com) [Log out](#) [Shopping cart\(0\)](#) [Wishlist\(2\)](#)

Search store

Search

English

US Dollar

[Home page](#) [New products](#) [Search](#) [My account](#) [Blog](#) [Contact us](#)

## BLOG ARCHIVE

2012

[December \(2\)](#)

## POPULAR BLOG TAGS

[asp.net](#) [e-commerce](#) [money](#)  
[nopCommerce](#) [sample tag](#)

## Blog



[Customer Service - Client Service](#) - Sunday, December 23, 2012

Managing online business requires different skills and abilities than managing a business in the 'real world.' Customers can easily detect the size and determine the prestige of a business when they have the ability to walk in and take a look around. Not only do 'real-world' furnishings and location tell the customer what level of professionalism to expect, but 'real world' personal encounters allow first impressions to be determined by how the business approaches its customer service. When a customer walks into a retail business just about anywhere in the world, that customer expects prompt and personal service, especially with regards to questions that they may have about products they wish to purchase.

Customer service or the client service is the service provided to the customer for his satisfaction during and after the purchase. It is necessary to every business organization to understand the customer needs for value added service. So customer data collection is essential. For this, a good customer service is important. The easiest way to lose a client is because of the poor customer service. The importance of customer service changes by product, industry and customer. Client service is an important part of every business organization. Each organization is different in its attitude towards customer service. Customer service requires a superior quality service through a careful design and execution of a series of activities which include people, technology and processes. Good customer service starts with the design and communication between the company and the staff.

In some ways, the lack of a physical business location allows the online business some leeway that their 'real world' counterparts do not enjoy. Location is not important, furnishings are not an issue, and most of the visual first impression is made through the professional design of the business website.

However, one thing still remains true. Customers will make their first impressions on the customer service they encounter. Unfortunately, in online business there is no opportunity for front-line staff to make a good impression. Every interaction the customer has with the website will be their primary means of making their first impression towards the business and its client service. Good customer service in any online business is a direct result of good website design and planning.

By Jayashree Pakhare (buzzle.com)

Tags : [e-commerce](#) , [nopCommerce](#) , [asp.net](#) , [sample tag](#) , [money](#)

Comments (0)

[Online Discount Coupons](#) - Sunday, December 23, 2012

Online discount coupons enable access to great offers from some of the world's best sites for Internet shopping. The online coupons are designed to allow compulsive online shoppers to access massive discounts on a variety of products. The regular shopper accesses the coupons in bulk and avails of great festive offers and freebies thrown in from time to time. The coupon code option is most commonly used when using a shopping cart. The coupon code is entered on the order page just before checking out. Every online shopping resource has a discount coupon submission option to confirm the coupon code. The dedicated web sites allow the shopper to check whether or not a discount is still applicable. If it is, the sites also enable the shopper to calculate the total cost after deducting the coupon amount like in the case of grocery coupons. Online discount coupons are very convenient to use. They offer great deals and professionally negotiated rates if bought from special online coupon outlets. With a little research and at times, insider knowledge the online discount coupons are a real steal. They are designed to promote products by offering 'real value for money' packages. The coupons are legitimate and help with budgeting, in the case of a compulsive shopper. They are available for special trade show promotions, nightlife, sporting events and dinner shows and just about anything that could be associated with the promotion of a product. The coupons enable the online shopper to optimize net access more effectively. Getting a 'big deal' is not more utopian amidst rising prices. The online coupons offer internet access to the best and cheapest products displayed online. Big discounts are only a code away! By Gaynor Borade (buzzle.com)

Tags : [e-commerce](#) , [money](#)

Comments (0)

# Polls

Polls can be managed by store owner. From the **Administration** area, select **Polls** from the Content Management menu and ensure that the Show on home page is checked.

COMMUNITY POLL

Do you like nopCommerce?

Excellent

Good

Poor

Very bad

# Forums

Forums are disabled by default. You need to enable forums in the Administration section, as described below.

## ► To define forums:

- 1 Select **Admin Area > Configuration > Settings > Forum Settings**. Ensure that **Forums enabled** is checked. The **Forums** link should be displayed in the menu in the public store.
- 2 Select **Admin area > Content management > Forums**. Create several forums groups and then create several forums. To view an example of how forums should work go to <http://www.nopcommerce.com/boards/>

The screenshot displays the nopCommerce forums interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for Home, Product, Downloads, Support, Partners, My Account, and Contacts. Below this is a search bar and a 'Search forums' button. The main content area is titled 'nopCommerce forums' and includes a brief introduction and a search bar. The forums are organized into two main sections: 'News and Announcements' and 'General'. Each section contains a table of forum categories with columns for 'Forum', 'Topics', 'Posts', and 'Latest Post'. The 'News and Announcements' section has one forum with 58 topics and 2467 posts. The 'General' section has ten forums, including 'Installation and Configuration' (4423 topics, 18246 posts), 'nopCommerce Upgrades' (541 topics, 2725 posts), 'General Support' (8032 topics, 29705 posts), 'Next Steps / Optimizations / Marketing' (293 topics, 1420 posts), 'HTML, XHTML, CSS, Design Questions' (1045 topics, 4609 posts), 'Development' (3082 topics, 12795 posts), 'Bug Reports' (990 topics, 3860 posts), 'Security' (122 topics, 422 posts), and 'Community Contributed Add-Ons' (259 topics, 1903 posts).

# Private Messaging

Private messages are disabled by default. They are useful when forums are also enabled. It is recommended to enable forums when you plan to use this feature.

After they are enabled, other customers will see the  button in forums.

The  button will be shown near each customer's name who posted some messages in forums.

To view an example, go to

<http://www.nopcommerce.com/Boards/Topic.aspx?TopicID=2000>

## ▶ To use private messaging

- 1 From the Administration Area, select Configuration > Settings > Forum Settings. Ensure Allow private messages are checked.
- 2 An **Inbox** link will be displayed in the header of public store, as follows:



email@nopCommerce.com Log out **Inbox** Shopping cart(0) Wishlist(2)

- 3 Click the **Inbox** link. The **Private Messages** window is displayed.



email@nopCommerce.com Log out **Inbox** Shopping cart(0) Wishlist(2)

Search store Search

English US Dollar

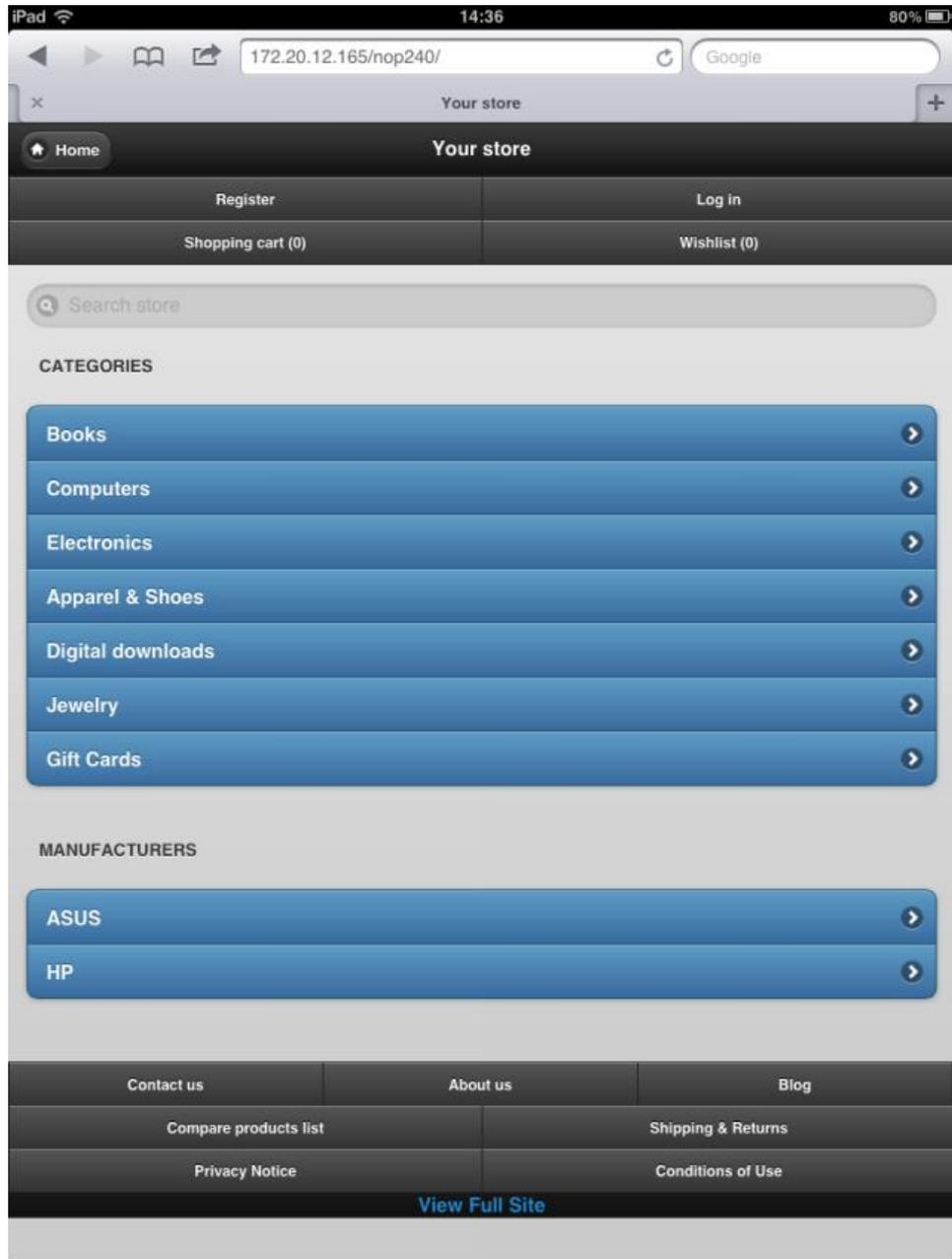
Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

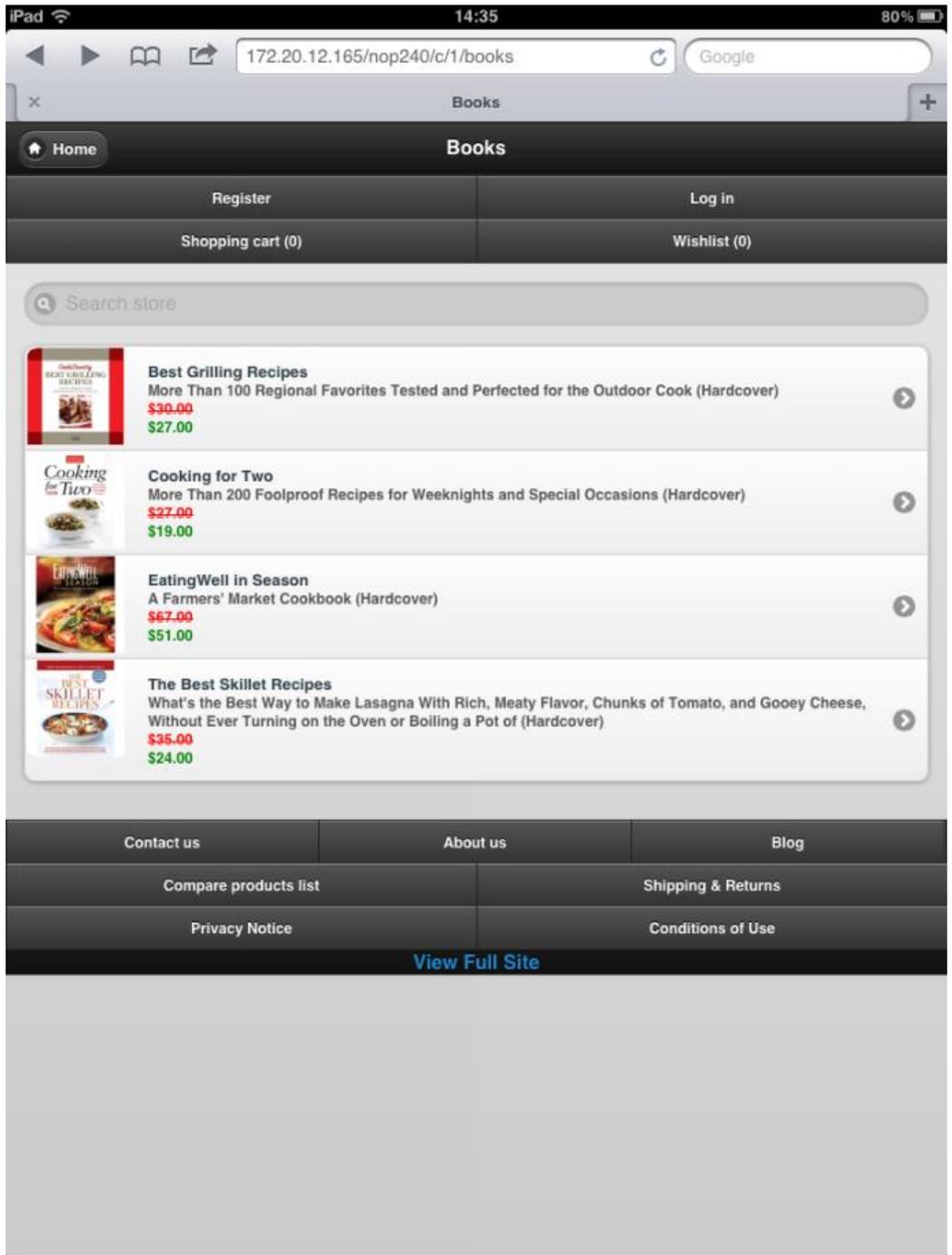
Private Messages

Inbox Sent Items

# Mobile Device Support

When mobile device support is enabled, as described in General and Miscellaneous settings on page 130, customers will be able to view a version of the site optimized for mobile devices, as shown in the examples below which displays the mobile version of nopCommerce on iPad.





iPad 14:35 80%

172.20.12.165/nop240/p/13/best-grilling- Lasare Google

Best Grilling Recipes

Home

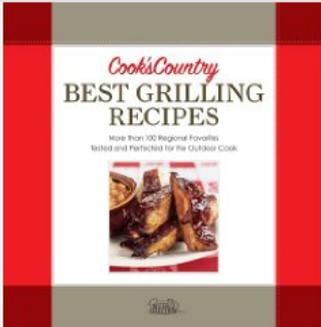
Best Grilling Recipes

Register Log in

Shopping cart (0) Wishlist (0)

### Best Grilling Recipes

More Than 100 Regional Favorites Tested and Perfected for the Outdoor Cook (Hardcover)



Be the first to review this product

Email a friend

Add to compare list

Take a winding cross-country trip and you'll discover barbecue shacks with offerings like tender-smoky Baltimore pit beef and saucy St. Louis pork steaks. To bring you the best of these hidden gems, along with all the classics, the editors of Cook's Country magazine scoured the country, then tested and perfected their favorites. Here traditions large and small are brought into the backyard, from Hawaii's rotisserie favorite, the golden-hued Huli Huli Chicken, to fall-off-the-bone Chicago Barbecued Ribs. In Kansas City, they're all about the sauce, and for our saucy Kansas City Sticky Ribs, we found a surprise ingredient-root beer. We also tackle all the best sides.

Not sure where or how to start? This cookbook kicks off with an easy-to-follow primer that will get newcomers all fired up. Whether you want to entertain a crowd or just want to learn to make perfect burgers, Best Grilling Recipes shows you the way.

*Note: Mobile customers can click on the **View Full Site** link at the bottom of the pages to go to the full desktop version of the site.*

# 4 Introducing the Backend – Setting up the Store

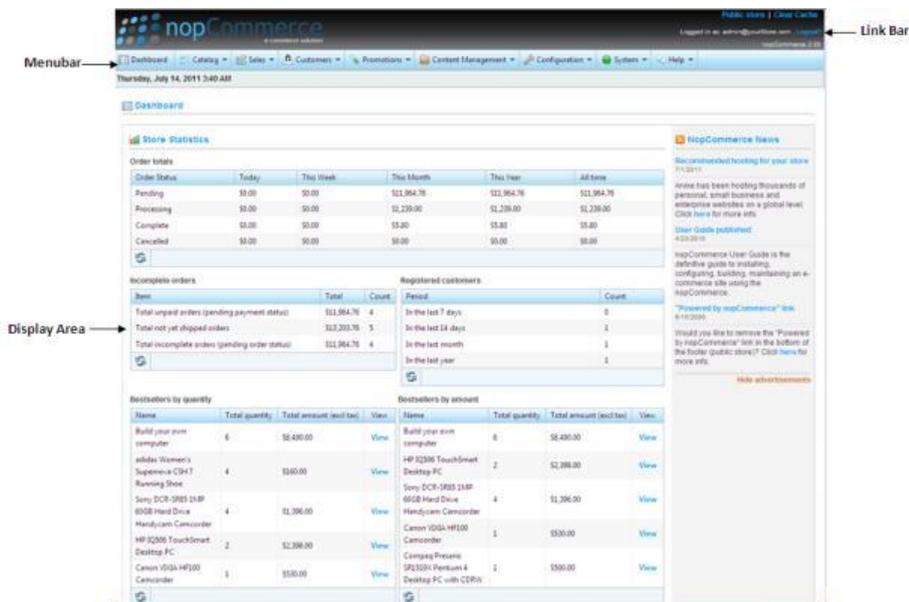
This chapter describes how to set up your store using the backend.

- **Overview**, below
- **Accessing the Backend**, page 64
- **Managing Categories**, page 65
- **Managing Manufacturers**, page 75
- **Managing Attributes**, page 84
- **Managing Products**, page 91

## Overview

This chapter introduces the backend. It describes how to access the backend, add categories, manufacturers, products, and more.

The Backend Main window is displayed as follows:



The nopCommerce Backend Main window includes the following components

- **Menu Bar**
- **Display Area**
- **Link Bar**

# Accessing the Backend

This section describes how administrators can access the backend using the provided email (username) and password.

## To access the backend:

- 1 Login to your store as an administrator.
- 2 From the **front-end** toolbar, click **Administration**. This link is visible for users that have administrator access right only. The nopCommerce Backend Main window is displayed, as shown below.

The screenshot displays the nopCommerce Backend Dashboard. At the top, there is a navigation menu with options: Dashboard, Catalog, Sales, Customers, Promotions, Content Management, Configuration, System, and Help. The date and time are shown as Thursday, July 14, 2011 3:52 AM.

The main content area is divided into several sections:

- Store Statistics:** A table showing Order totals by status and time period.
- Incomplete orders:** A table showing the total and count of unpaid, not yet shipped, and incomplete orders.
- Registered customers:** A table showing the count of customers in different time periods.
- Bestsellers by quantity:** A table listing top-selling products by quantity.
- Bestsellers by amount:** A table listing top-selling products by total amount.

On the right side, there is a **NopCommerce News** section with a link to recommended hosting and a link to the user guide. Below that, there is a link to remove the "Powered by nopCommerce" footer text.

# Managing Categories

This section describes how to manage categories. It includes the following:

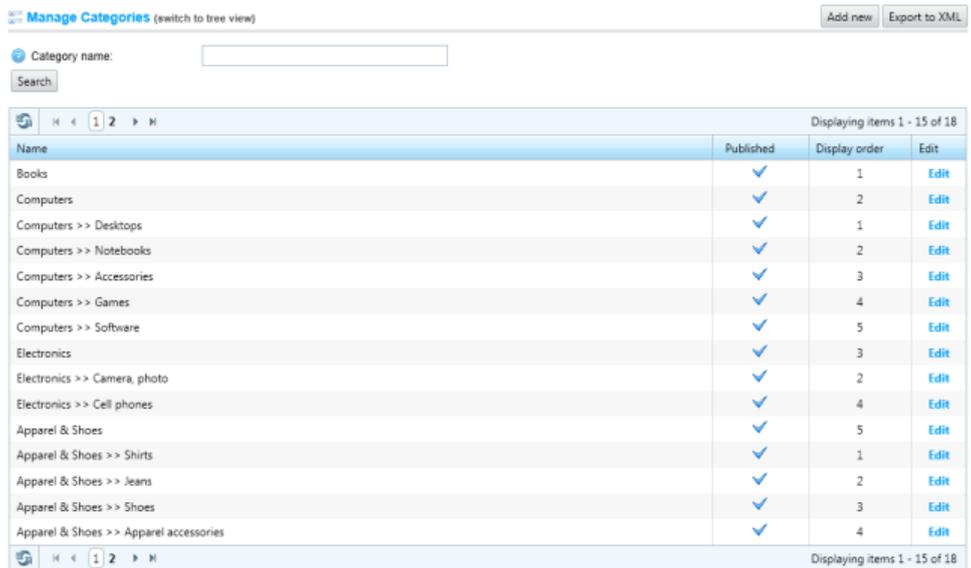
- **Adding Categories**, below
- **Editing Categories**, page 71
- **Searching for categories**, page 73

## Adding Categories

This section describes how to add and edit categories that are displayed in the public store as shown on page 17. You can export the categories setting to an external file for backup purposes, by clicking the **Export to XML** button.

### ► To add a category:

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Categories>List**. The **Manage Categories** window is displayed.



The screenshot shows the 'Manage Categories' interface. At the top, there is a title 'Manage Categories' with a '(switch to tree view)' link and two buttons: 'Add new' and 'Export to XML'. Below the title is a 'Category name:' input field with a 'Search' button. The main part of the interface is a table with the following columns: 'Name', 'Published', 'Display order', and 'Edit'. The table contains 15 rows of categories, all of which are published (indicated by a blue checkmark in the 'Published' column). The 'Display order' column shows the sequence of categories, and the 'Edit' column contains a blue 'Edit' link for each row. The table is paginated, showing 'Displaying items 1 - 15 of 18'.

Name	Published	Display order	Edit
Books	✓	1	Edit
Computers	✓	2	Edit
Computers >> Desktops	✓	1	Edit
Computers >> Notebooks	✓	2	Edit
Computers >> Accessories	✓	3	Edit
Computers >> Games	✓	4	Edit
Computers >> Software	✓	5	Edit
Electronics	✓	3	Edit
Electronics >> Camera, photo	✓	2	Edit
Electronics >> Cell phones	✓	4	Edit
Apparel & Shoes	✓	5	Edit
Apparel & Shoes >> Shirts	✓	1	Edit
Apparel & Shoes >> Jeans	✓	2	Edit
Apparel & Shoes >> Shoes	✓	3	Edit
Apparel & Shoes >> Apparel accessories	✓	4	Edit

- 2 Click **Add new** to add a new category. The **Add a new category** window is displayed.

- 3 In the **Category Info** tab, define category information, as follows:

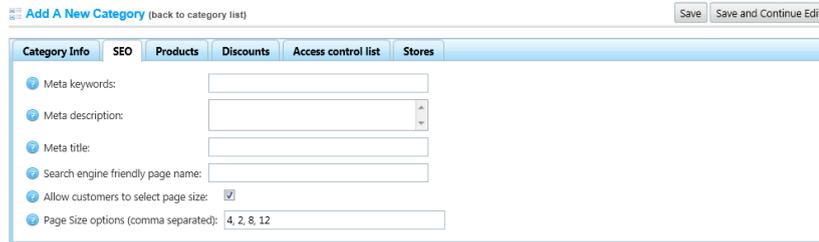
- In the **Name** field, enter the name of the category.
- In the **Description** field, enter a description for the new category. Use the editor for layout and fonts.
- From the **Category template** dropdown list, select a category template. This template defines how this category will be displayed.
- In the **Picture** field, browse to select an image representing the category.
- From the **Parent Category** dropdown list, select the required category of the parent. The new category will be placed under this category in the public store.

- In the **Price ranges** field, enter a price range in the currency that you defined in the Currencies window. This allows customers to filter products by price ranges. Format: 0-1000; 1000-1200; 1200-(1200 means 1200 and over).



- Select the **Show on home page** checkbox to display the category on the home page.
- Select the **Published** checkbox to enable the category to be visible in the public store.
- In the **Display Order** field, enter the order number for displaying the category. This display number is used to sort categories in the public store (ascending). The category with display order **1** will be displayed at the top of the list.

4 Select the **SEO** tab, as follows:



5 Define the following SEO parameters:

- In the **Meta keywords** field, enter the required category meta keywords, which are a brief and concise list of the most important themes of your page. The meta keywords tag takes the following form:

`<meta name="keywords" content="keywords, keyword, keyword phrase, etc.">`

- In the **Meta description** field, enter a description of the category. The meta description tag is a brief and concise summary of your page's content. The meta description tag is in the following format:

`<meta name="description" content="Brief description of the contents of your page.">`

- In the **Meta title** field, enter the required title. The title tag specifies the title of your Web page. It is code which is inserted into the header of your web

page and is in the following format

```
<head>
<title> Creating Title Tags for Search Engine Optimization & Web Usability
</title>
</head>
```

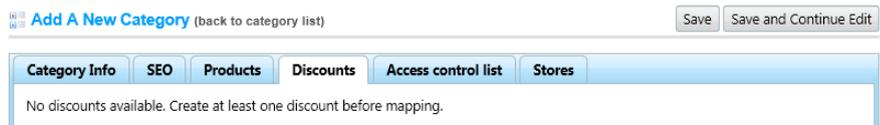
- In the **Search engine friendly page name** field, enter the name of the page used by search engines. If you enter nothing then the category page URL is formed using the category name. If you enter **custom-seo-page-name**, then the following custom the URL will be used:

**http://www.yourStore.com/custom-seo-page-name**

- 6 Select the **Allow customers to select page size** checkbox to enable customers to select a page size on the Category Details page from the page sizes list entered by the store owner. In this case, the **Page size options** field becomes visible in the Administration area. When this option is disabled, customers will *not* be able to select a page size on the Category Details page and the store owner can enter a certain page size. In this case, the **Page size** field becomes visible in this case in Administration area, as described below.

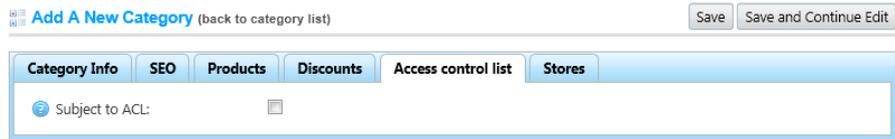
- In the **Page size** field, enter the number of products to display on the category details page per page. For example, when you add seven products to a category and you set its page size to three. Three products per page will be displayed on this category details page in the public store.

- 7 Select the **Discounts** tab, as follows:



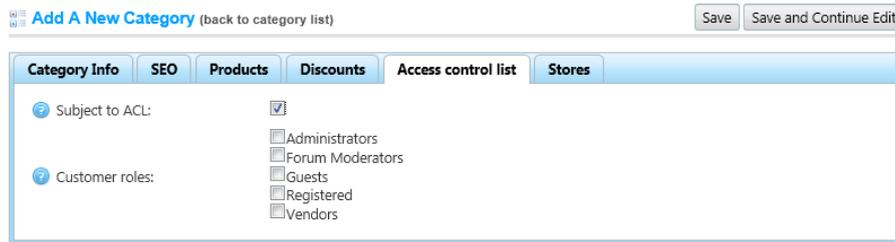
- 8 This window contains the discount associated with the category that is added in the **Administration** area by selecting **Discounts** from the **Promotions** menu. When adding several discounts you will see them in the **Discounts** tab. Note that discounts with **Assigned to categories** type are visible here. After discounts are mapped to a category, they will be applied to all the products in this category.

9 Select the **Access Control List** tab, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Category' form with the 'Access control list' tab selected. The 'Subject to ACL' checkbox is currently unchecked.

10 Select the **Subject to ACL** checkbox, to enable configuring the access control at the category level (showing specific categories based on customer roles). The window is expanded, as follows:



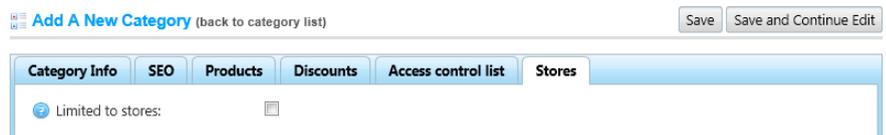
The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Category' form with the 'Access control list' tab selected. The 'Subject to ACL' checkbox is now checked, and a list of customer roles is visible below it.

11 Select the required customer roles having access to this category, as follows:

- Administration
- Forum Moderators
- Guests
- Registered
- Vendors

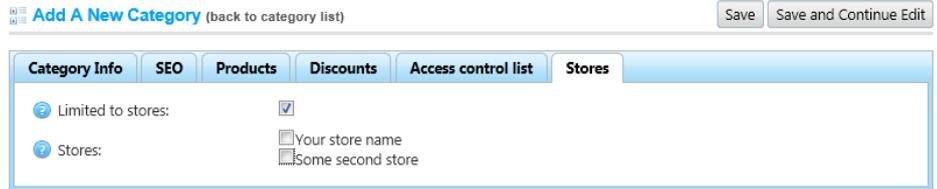
*Note: These customer roles are not hard-coded and can be configured in the **Administration** area, by selecting **Customer Roles** from the **Customers** menu..*

12 Select the **Stores** tab, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Category' form with the 'Stores' tab selected. The 'Limited to stores' checkbox is currently unchecked.

- 13 Select the **Limited to stores** checkbox, to enable defining the stores where the category will be available. The window is expanded, as follows:



The screenshot shows a web interface for adding a new category. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: "Add A New Category (back to category list)". To the right of the breadcrumb are two buttons: "Save" and "Save and Continue Edit". Below the breadcrumb is a horizontal tabbed menu with six tabs: "Category info", "SEO", "Products", "Discounts", "Access control list", and "Stores". The "Stores" tab is currently selected and highlighted. Under the "Stores" tab, there are two sections. The first section is labeled "Limited to stores:" and contains a checked checkbox. The second section is labeled "Stores:" and contains two checkboxes, one labeled "Your store name" and one labeled "Some second store".

*Note: This checkbox is used only when you have several stores configured. For further details refer to [Multi-store Support](#)*

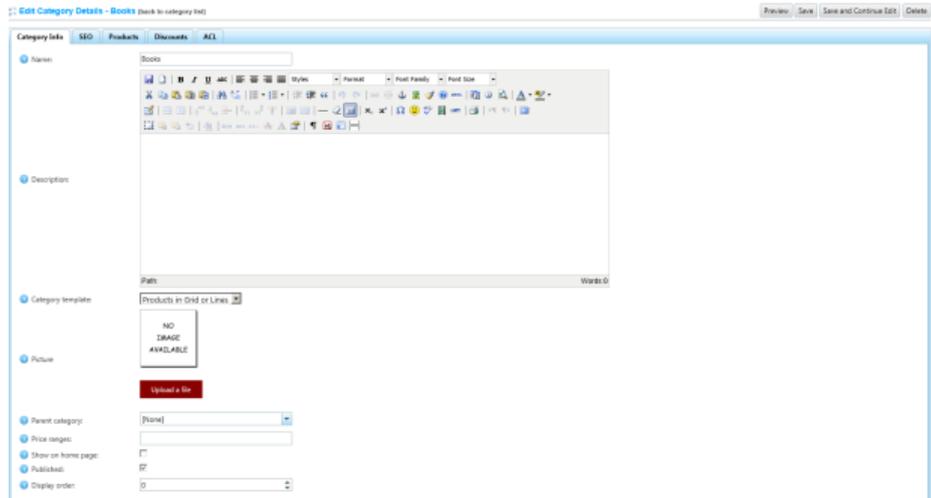
- 14 Click **Save**. The new category will be displayed in the public store under the parent category that was selected.

# Editing Categories

This section describes how to edit the category details that are displayed in the public store as shown on page 17.

## ► To edit a category

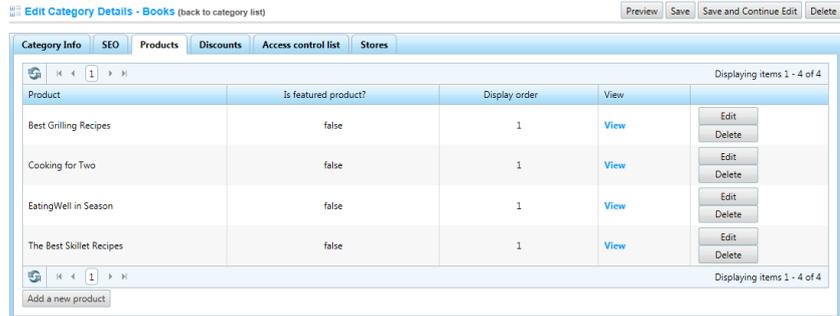
- 1 From the **Manage Categories** window, shown on page 65, click **Edit** besides the category to edit. The **Edit Categories** window is displayed, showing the **Categories Info** tab.



*Note: Click the **Preview** button to go to the **Category Details** page in the public store.*

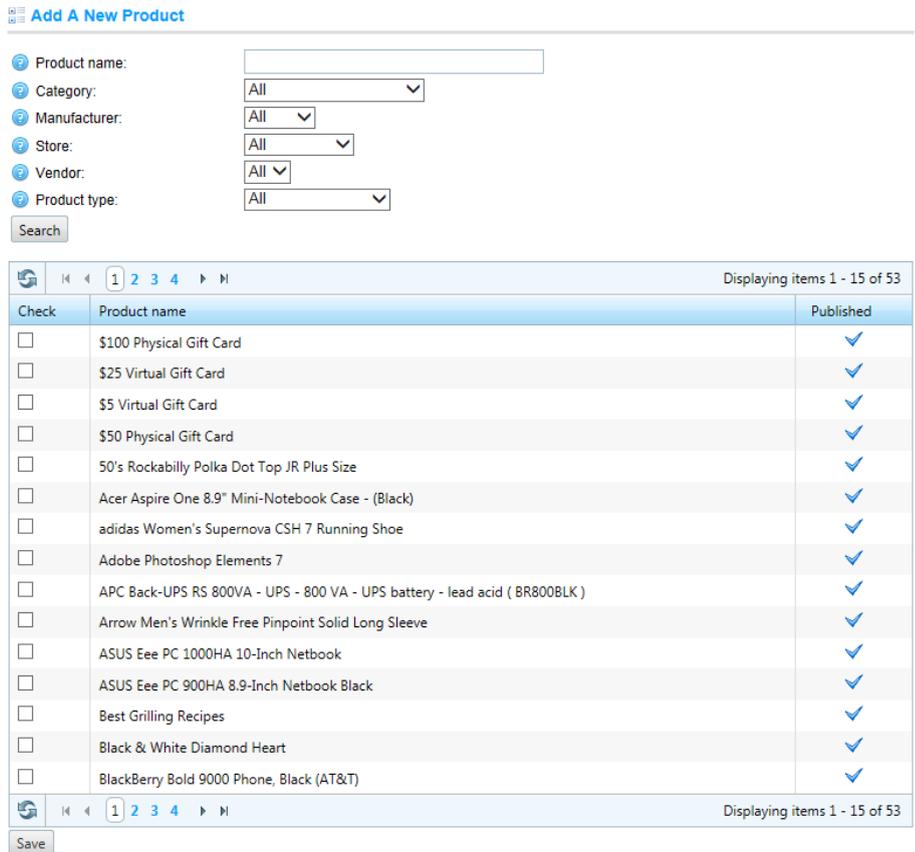
- 2 Edit the category details, as described in **Adding Categories**, on page 65.
- 3 Select the **SEO** tab and define the SEO parameters, as described on page 67 in the **Adding Categories** section.

4 Select the **Products** tab, as follows:



This tab contains a list of the product belonging to the selected category. You can add new products to the category by clicking **Add Product**, as described below.

5 Click **Add a new product** to add products to categories. The **Add a New Product** window is displayed.



- 6 Define the new product details, as follows:
  - In the **Product name** field, enter the product name.
  - From the **Category** drop-down list, select the category to search by.
  - From the **Manufacturer** drop down list, select the manufacturer to search by.
  - From the **Store** drop down list, select the store to search by.
  - From the **Vendor** drop down list, select the vendor to search by.
  - From the **Product Type** drop down list, select the product type to search by.
- 7 Click **Search**. The products matching the search criteria are displayed.
- 8 Check the required product you would like to add to the category and click the **Save** button. The selected product will be displayed under the selected category.
- 9 Select the **Discounts** tab and add discounts, as described on page 68 in **Adding a Category**
- 10 Select the **Access Control List** tab and configure the access control list at the category level based on customer roles, as described on page 69, in **Adding a Category**
- 11 Click **Save** to save the category changes.

*Note: You can click **Delete** to remove the category, click **Delete** at the confirmation to remove the category from the store.*

## Searching for Categories

This section describes how to search for categories that are displayed in the public store as shown on page 17.

► **To search for a category:**

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Categories>List**. The **Manage Categories** window is displayed.

Manage Categories (switch to tree view) Add new Export to XML

Category name:

Search

Name	Published	Display order	Edit
Books	true	1	Edit
Computers	true	2	Edit
Computers >> Desktops	true	1	Edit
Computers >> Notebooks	true	2	Edit
Computers >> Accessories	true	3	Edit
Computers >> Games	true	4	Edit
Computers >> Software	true	5	Edit
Electronics	true	3	Edit
Electronics >> Cameras, photo	true	2	Edit
Electronics >> Cell phones	true	4	Edit
Apparel & Shoes	true	5	Edit
Apparel & Shoes >> Shirts	true	1	Edit
Apparel & Shoes >> Jeans	true	2	Edit
Apparel & Shoes >> Shoes	true	3	Edit
Apparel & Shoes >> Apparel accessories	true	4	Edit

Displaying items 1 - 15 of 18

- In the **Categories name** field, enter the name (or part of the name) of the category to search for.
- Click **Search**. The category or categories matching the search criteria are displayed as shown in the example below.

Manage Categories (switch to tree view) Add new Export to XML

Category name:

Search

Name	Published	Display order	Edit
Apparel & Shoes	true	5	Edit
Apparel & Shoes >> Shoes	true	3	Edit

Displaying items 1 - 2 of 2

- You can click **Edit** besides the category to display the **Edit Category Details** window. For further details refer to **Editing Categories** on page 71.

# Managing Manufacturers

This section describes how to manage manufacturers. It includes the following:

- **Adding Manufacturers**, below
- **Editing Manufacturers**, page 80
- **Searching for Manufacturers**, page 80

## Adding Manufacturers

This section describes how to add manufacturers that are displayed in the public store as shown on page 17. You can export the manufacturer settings to an external file for backup purposes, by clicking the **Export to XML** button.

► **To add a manufacturer:**

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Manufacturers**. The **Manufacturers** window is displayed.

Name	Published	Display order	Edit
ASUS	✓	2	<a href="#">Edit</a>
HP	✓	5	<a href="#">Edit</a>

***Note:** You can export the manufacturer and their settings to an external XML file for backup purposes by clicking the **Export to XML** button.*

2 Click **Add New**. The **Add a New Manufacturer** window is displayed.

3 In the **Manufacturer Info** tab, define manufacturer information, as follows:

- In the **Name** field, enter the name of the manufacturer.
- In the **Description** field, enter a description for the new manufacturer. Use the editor for layout and fonts.
- From the **Manufacturer template** dropdown list, select a manufacturer template. This template defines how this manufacturer will be displayed.
- In the **Picture** field, browser to select an image representing the manufacturer.
- In the **Price ranges** field, enter a price range in the currency that you defined in the **Currencies** window. This is defined in the **Administration** area, by selecting **Currencies** from the **Configuration** menu.
- Select the **Published** checkbox to enable the manufacturer to be visible in the public store.
- In the **Display Order** field, enter the order number for displaying the manufacturer. This display number is used to sort manufacturer in the public store (ascending). The manufacturer with display order **1** will be displayed at the top of the list.

#### 4 Select the **SEO** tab, as follows:

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Add A New Manufacturer" with a link "(back to manufacturer list)". There are "Save" and "Save and Continue Edit" buttons. A message says "Please provide a name." Below this are tabs for "Manufacturer Info", "SEO", "Products", "Access control list", and "Stores". The "SEO" tab is active and contains the following fields:

- Meta keywords: [text input]
- Meta description: [text input]
- Meta title: [text input]
- Search engine friendly page name: [text input]
- Allow customers to select page size:
- Page Size options (comma separated): [text input with value "4, 2, 8, 12"]

#### 5 Define the following SEO parameters:

- In the **Meta keywords** field, enter the required category meta keywords. These are a brief and concise list of the most important themes of your page. The meta keywords tag takes the following form:
  - `<meta name="keywords" content="keywords, keyword, keyword phrase, etc.">`
- In the **Meta description** field, enter a description of the category. The meta description tag is a brief and concise summary of your page's content. The meta description tag is in the following format:
  - `<meta name="description" content="Brief description of the contents of your page.">`
- In the **Meta title** field, enter the required title. The title tag specifies the title of your Web page. It is code which is inserted into the header of your web page and is in the following format:
  - `<head>`  
`<title> Creating Title Tags for Search Engine Optimization & Web Usability`  
`</title>`  
`</head>`
- In the **Search engine friendly page name** field, enter the name of the page used by search engines. If you enter nothing then the category page URL is formed using the category name. If you enter **custom-seo-page-name**, then the following custom the URL will be used:  
***`http://www.yourStore.com/custom-seo-page-name`***

- Select the **Allow customers to select page size** checkbox, to enable customers to select a page size on the **Manufacturer Details** page from the page sizes list entered by the store owner. In this case the, **Page size options** field becomes visible in the **Administration** area. When this option is disabled, customers will not be able to select a page size on the **Manufacturer Details** page and the store owner can enter a certain page size. The **Page size** field becomes visible in this case in the **Administration** area, as described below.
  - In the **Page size** field, enter the number of products to display on the manufacturer details page per page. For example, when you add seven products to a category and you set its page size to three. Three products per page will be displayed on this manufacturer details page in the public store.

6 Select the **Access Control List** tab, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Manufacturer' form with the 'Access control list' tab selected. The form includes a breadcrumb 'Add A New Manufacturer (back to manufacturer list)', 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit' buttons, and a message 'Please provide a name.' The tabs are 'Manufacturer Info', 'SEO', 'Products', 'Access control list', and 'Stores'. The 'Subject to ACL' checkbox is currently unchecked.

7 Select the **Subject to ACL** checkbox, to enable configuring the access control at the product level (showing specific products based on customer roles). The window is expanded, as follows:

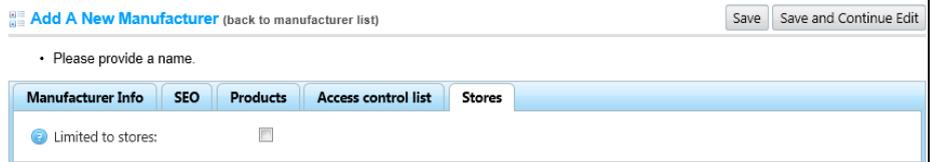
The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Manufacturer' form with the 'Subject to ACL' checkbox checked. The 'Customer roles' section is expanded, showing a list of roles with checkboxes: Administrators, Forum Moderators, Guests, Registered, and Vendors. The form includes the same breadcrumb, buttons, and message as the previous screenshot. The tabs are 'Manufacturer Info', 'SEO', 'Products', 'Access control list', and 'Stores'.

8 Select the required customer roles having access to this product.

- Administration
- Forum Moderators
- Guests
- Registered
- Vendors

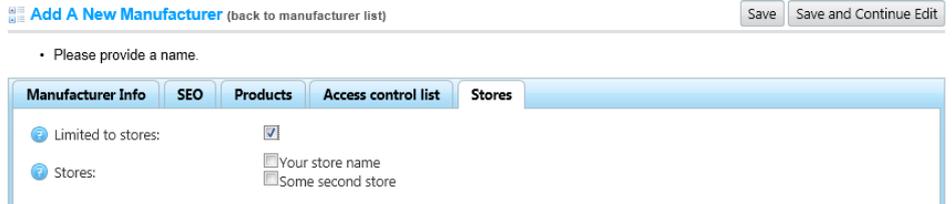
*Note: These customer roles are not hard-coded and can be configured in the Administration area, by selecting Customer Roles from the Customers menu*

9 Select the **Stores** tab, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Manufacturer' form with the 'Stores' tab selected. The form has a header with 'Add A New Manufacturer (back to manufacturer list)' and 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit' buttons. Below the header is a message: 'Please provide a name.' The 'Stores' tab is active, and the 'Limited to stores:' checkbox is unchecked.

10 Select the **Limited to stores** checkbox, to enable defining the stores where the manufacturer will be available. The window is expanded, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Manufacturer' form with the 'Stores' tab selected. The form has a header with 'Add A New Manufacturer (back to manufacturer list)' and 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit' buttons. Below the header is a message: 'Please provide a name.' The 'Stores' tab is active, and the 'Limited to stores:' checkbox is checked. Below this, there are two options: 'Your store name' and 'Some second store', both with unchecked checkboxes.

*Note: This checkbox is used only when you have several stores configured. For further details refer to [Multi-store support](#).*

11 Click **Save**. The new manufacturer will be displayed in the public store.

## Editing Manufacturers

This section describes how to edit the manufacturer's details that are displayed in the public store as shown on page 17. In this window, you define the search engine optimization parameters required for improving ranking in search engine results.

► **To edit a manufacturer:**

- 1 From the **Manufacturers** window, shown on page 75, click **Edit** beside the manufacturer to edit. The **Edit Manufacturers Details** window is displayed showing the **Manufacturers Info** tab.

Edit Manufacturer Details - ASUS (back to manufacturer list) [Preview] [Save] [Save and Continue Edit] [Delete]

**Manufacturer Info** | SEO | Products | Access control list | Stores

Name: ASUS

Description:

Manufacturer template: Products in Grid or Lines

Picture

Price ranges:

Published:

Display order: 2

Path: Words: 0

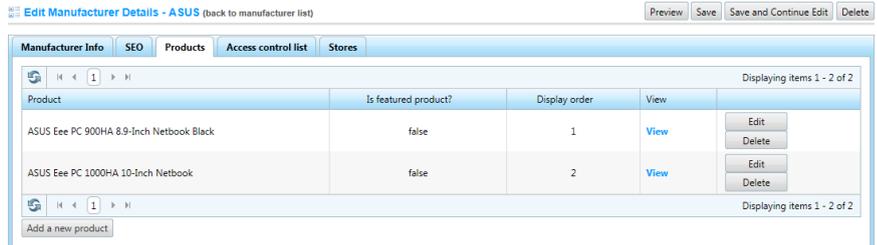
NO IMAGE AVAILABLE

Upload a file

*Note:* Click the **Preview** button to go to the *Manufacturer Details* page in the public store.

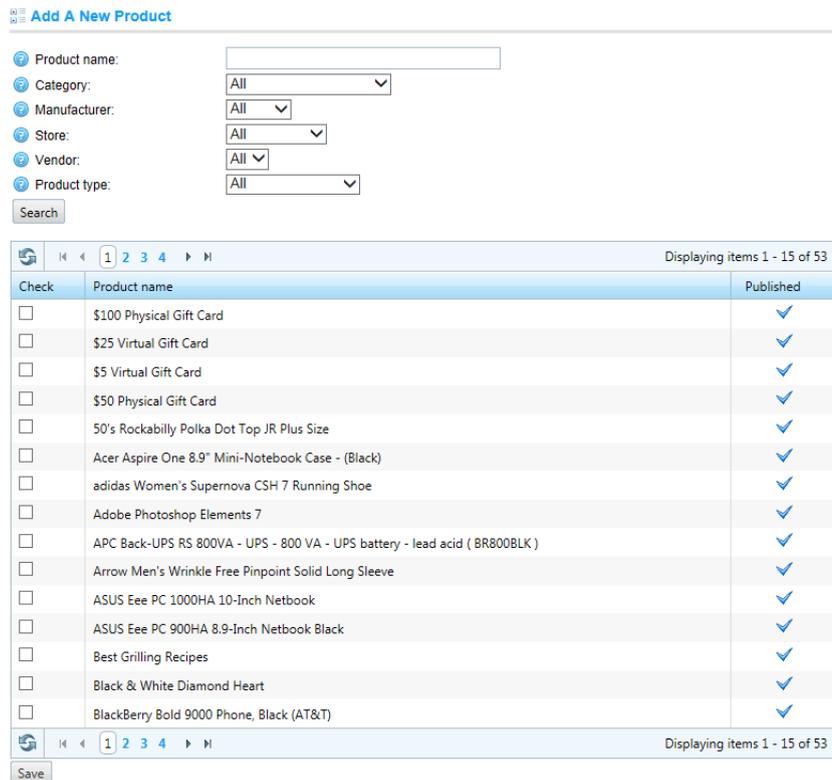
- 2 Edit the manufacturer's details, as described in **Adding Manufacturers**, on page 75.
- 3 Select the **SEO** tab and define the SEO parameters, as described on page 76 in **Adding a Manufacturer**.

4 Select the **Products** tab, as follows:



This tab contains a list of the products belonging to the selected manufacturer. You can add new products to the manufacturer by clicking **Add a new product**, as described below.

5 Click **Add a new product** to add products to the manufacturer. The **Add a new product** window is displayed.



- 6 Define the new product details, as follows:
  - In the **Product name** field, enter the product name.
  - From the **Category** drop-down list, select the category to search by.
  - From the **Manufacturer** drop down list, select the manufacturer to search by.
  - From the **Store** drop down list, select the store to search by.
  - From the **Vendor** drop down list, select the vendor to search by.
  - From the **Product Type** drop down list, select the product type to search by.
- 7 Click **Search**. The products matching the search criteria are displayed.
- 8 Check the required product you would like to add to the manufacturer and click the **Save** button. The selected product will be displayed under the selected manufacturer.
- 9 You can click **Delete** to remove the manufacturer.

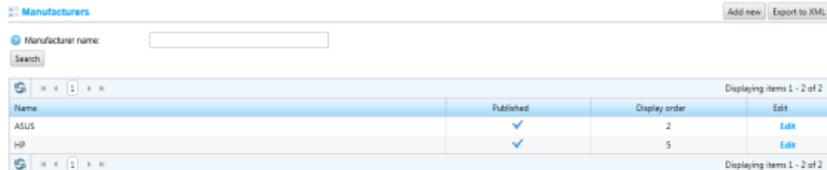
*Note: You can click **Delete** to remove the manufacturer, click **Delete** at the confirmation to remove the manufacturer from the store.*

# Searching for Manufacturers

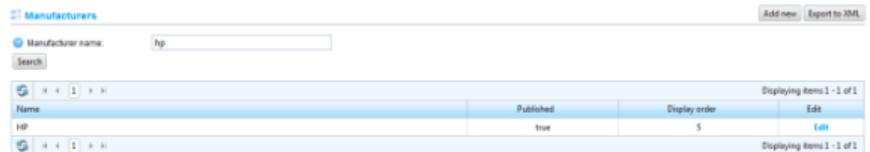
This section describes how to search for manufacturers that are displayed in the public store as shown on page 17.

► **To search for a manufacturer:**

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Manufacturers**. The **Manufacturers** window is displayed.



- 2 In the **Manufacturer name** field, enter the name (or part of the name) of the manufacturer to search for.
- 3 Click **Search**. The **Manufacturer** or **Manufacturers** matching the search criteria are displayed as shown in the example below.



- 4 You can click **Edit** besides the manufacturer to display the **Edit Manufacturer Details** window. For further details refer to **Editing Manufacturers** on page 80.

# Managing Attributes

This section describes how to manage attributes. It includes the following:

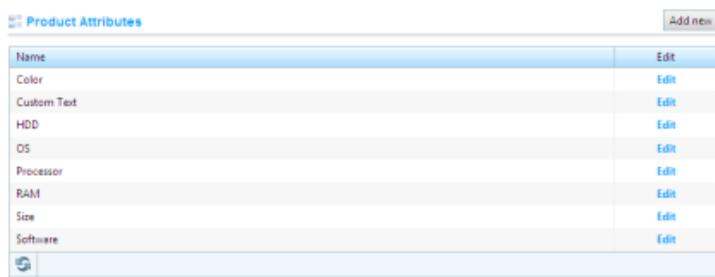
- **Product Attributes**, below
- **Specification Attributes**, page 85
- **Checkout Attributes**, page 88

## Product Attributes

In nopCommerce, the product attributes are quantifiable or descriptive aspects of a product (such as, color). For example, if you were to create an attribute for color, with the values of blue, green, yellow, and so on, you may want to apply this attribute to shirts, which you sell in various colors (you can adjust a price or weight for any of existing attribute values). You can then map these attributes to a product later on.

► **To define product attributes:**

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Attributes > Product Attributes**. The **Product Attributes** window is displayed.

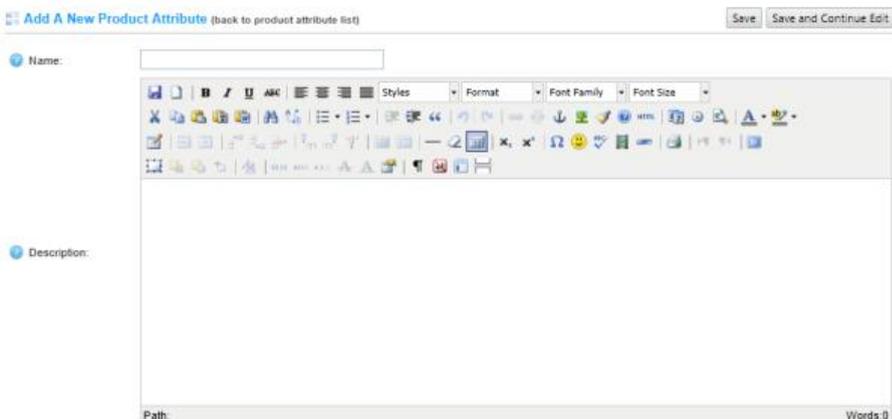


The screenshot shows the 'Product Attributes' management window. It features a table with the following columns: 'Name' and 'Edit'. The table contains the following rows:

Name	Edit
Color	Edit
Custom Text	Edit
HDD	Edit
OS	Edit
Processor	Edit
RAM	Edit
Size	Edit
Software	Edit

At the top right of the window is an 'Add new' button. At the bottom left is a small icon.

- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add a new product attribute** window is displayed:



The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Product Attribute' form. It includes a breadcrumb trail 'Add A New Product Attribute (back to product attribute list)' and 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit' buttons. The form has two main sections:

- Name:** A text input field.
- Description:** A rich text editor with a toolbar containing various formatting options (bold, italic, underline, link, etc.) and a large text area below it.

At the bottom, there is a 'Path' field and a 'Words: 0' indicator.

- 3 In the **Name** field, enter the name of the attribute.
- 4 In the **Description** field, enter a description of the attribute.
- 5 Click **Save**. The new attribute is added to the **Product Attributes** window.

*Note: To edit an existing attribute click **Edit** beside the attribute and then enter the name and description in the relevant fields.*

## **Specification Attributes**

This section describes how to add a new specification attribute. After a specification attribute is added, the administrator defines the specification attribute options in the **Add new specification attribute** window. For example, for a **Color** specification attribute, you can define the specification attribute options, such as green, blue, or red and so on.

Unlike product attributes, specification attributes are used for information purposes only (visible on product details page) and can be used for filtering products on the category details page.

► **To add specification attributes:**

- 1 From the Catalog menu, select Attributes > Specification Attributes. The **Specification Attributes** window is displayed.

Name	Display order	Edit
Screensize	1	Edit
CPU Type	2	Edit
Memory	3	Edit
Hardrive	5	Edit

- 2 Click Add new. The Add a New Specification Attribute window is displayed showing the Attribute info tab.

Attribute info Options

Name:

Display order:

- 3 In the **Name** field, enter the name of the specification attribute.
- 4 In the **Display order** field, enter the display order number of the specification attribute.
- 5 Click **Save and Continue Edit**. The new specification attribute is added to the **Specification Attributes** window and the window changes to display the **Edit Specification Attributes Details** window, as follows:

Attribute info Options

Name	Display order	Number of associated products	Edit	Delete
No records to display.				

Add a new option

- 6 Click **Add a new option**. The **Add A New Option** window is displayed.

Attribute info Options

Name:

Display order:

- 7 In the **Name** field, enter the attribute option. **Red**, for example, if the attribute is a color.
- 8 In the **Display order field**, enter the required display order for the selected option. Entering **1** will display it at the top of the list.
- 9 Click **Save**. The attribute option is added, as follows:


[Edit Specification Attribute Details - Color](#) (back to specification attribute list)

Attribute info		Options		
Name	Display order	Number of associated products	Edit	Delete
Red	1	0	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Green	2	0	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>



- 10 Repeat these steps **6** through **9** to add additional attribute options, for example, **Green**, **Blue** and more. The **Specification Attribute** window is displayed as follows:


[Edit Specification Attribute Details - Color](#) (back to specification attribute list)

Attribute info		Options		
Name	Display order	Number of associated products	Edit	Delete
Red	1	0	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Green	2	0	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Blue	3	0	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>



- 11 Click **Edit** beside the attribute option to update the store or **Delete** to remove the **Attribute** option from the system.

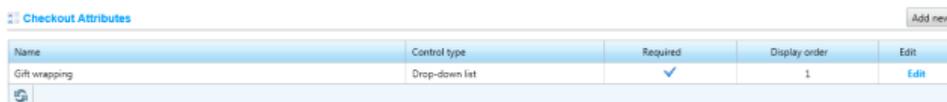
*Note: To edit an existing specification attribute click **Edit** beside the specification attribute in the **Specification Attributes** window. The **Edit specifications attributes window** is displayed. Edit the relevant fields, as required.*

## Checkout Attributes

This section describes how to add a new checkout attributes which are displayed on the **Shopping Cart** page and enables the user to select them, if required, before checkout. The store owner can define these **Checkout Attributes** from the **Add A New Checkout Attribute** window. Using this option the store owner can create questions or comments that the user will read before checkout, such as **Do you need gift-wrapping?** or **Enter a custom message**, as described below.

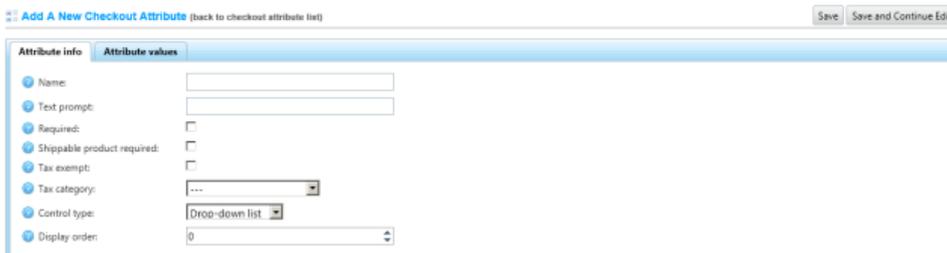
► **To add checkout attributes:**

- 1 From the Catalog menu, select **Attributes > Checkout Attributes**. The **Checkout Attributes** window is displayed.



Name	Control type	Required	Display order	Edit
Gift wrapping	Drop-down list	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	<a href="#">Edit</a>

- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add a New Checkout Attribute** window is displayed, showing the **Attribute Info** tab, as follows:



**Add A New Checkout Attribute** (back to checkout attribute list) Save Save and Continue Edit

**Attribute info** | **Attribute values**

- Name:
- Text prompt:
- Required:
- Shippable product required:
- Tax exempt:
- Tax category:
- Control type:
- Display order:

- 3 In the **Name** field, enter the name of the checkout attribute.
- 4 In the **Text prompt** field, enter a question or comment to add as a text prompt to the checkout area on the shopping cart page.
- 5 Select the **Required** checkbox to force the customer to select an attribute value before continuing.
- 6 Select the **Shippable product required** checkbox to specify that shippable products are required in order to display this attribute.
- 7 Select the **Tax exempt** checkbox to indicate that tax will not be applied to this checkout attribute.
- 8 From the **Tax category** dropdown list, select the tax category that the checkout attribute is applied to.

9 From the **Control Type** drop down list, select the required method for displaying the attribute value:

- Dropdown List
- Radio List
- Checkboxes
- Textbox
- Multiline Textbox
- Date picker
- File upload
- Color squares

*Note: Dropdown lists, radio lists, checkboxes and color squares require the store owner to define values (such as, Green, Blue, Red and so on). The Textbox and Date picker control types do not require the store owner to define values, since the customers will be required to enter text in these textbox fields.*

10 In the **Display order** field, enter the display order number of the checkout attribute.

11 Click **Save**.

*Note: You must click Save before proceeding to the Attribute Values tab*

12 Select the **Attribute Values** tab, as follows:

Edit Checkout Attribute Details - Gift Wrapping (back to checkout attribute list) Save Save and Continue Edit Delete

**Attribute info** **Attribute values**

Name	Price adjustment	Weight adjustment	Pre-selected	Display order	Edit	Delete
Yes	10	0	✓	1	<span>Edit</span>	<span>Delete</span>



Add a new checkout value

- 13 Click **Add a new checkout value**. The Add a New Checkout Value window is displayed.

**Add A New Checkout Value** Save

Name:

Price adjustment: 0.0000 [USD]

Weight adjustment: 0.0000 [lb(s)]

Pre-selected:

Display order: 0

- 14 In the **Name** field, enter the attribute value name to add. For example, **Yes** or **No**, for questions such as, **Do you require fragile care handling?**
- 15 In the **Price adjustment** field, enter the price adjustment to apply why selecting this attribute value. For example, enter **10** to add **10** dollars.
- 16 In the **Weight adjustment** field, enter the weight adjustment to apply why selecting this attribute value.
- 17 Select the **Pre-selected** checkbox to indicate this attribute value is pre-selected for the customer.
- 18 In the **Display order** field, enter the display order number of the attribute value.
- 19 Click **Save**. The new attribute is saved and is displayed in the window, as follows:

**Edit Checkout Attribute Details - Gift-Wrapping** (back to checkout attribute list) Save Save and Continue Edit Delete

Name	Price adjustment	Weight adjustment	Pre-selected	Display order	Edit	Delete
Yes	10	0	true	1	Edit	Delete
No	5	0	true	2	Edit	Delete

- 20 Repeat steps **13** through **19** to add additional attribute values.
- 21 Click **Save**.

# Managing Products

Products are the merchandise that is for sale in your store. All products need to be listed under a category or subcategory. All products will have their own **Product Page**. This section describes how to manage products in the system. It includes the following:

- **Adding Products**, below
- **Editing Product Details**, page 104
- **Adding Pictures**, page 105
- **Adding to Categories**, page 106
- **Adding to Manufacturers**, page 107
- **Product Specifications**, page 109
- **Product Attributes**, page 111
- **Tier Prices**, page 116
- **Discounts**, page 118
- **Access Control List**, page 118
- **Stores**, page 119
- **Defining Related Products**, page 120
- **Adding Cross-sell Products**, page 122
- **Bulk Edit Products**, page 125

# Adding Products

## ► To add products:

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products > Manage Products**. The **Manage Products** window is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Manage Products' interface. At the top, there are several buttons: 'Add new', 'Download catalog as PDF', 'Export to XML (all)', 'Export to XML (selected)', 'Export to Excel (all)', 'Export to Excel (selected)', 'Import from Excel', and 'Delete (selected)'. Below these are search filters for Product name, Category, Manufacturer, Store, Vendor, Product type, and Go directly to product SKU. A 'Search' button is located below the filters. The main area displays a table of products with columns for Picture, Product name, SKU, Price, Stock quantity, Product type, Published, and Edit. The table shows five items, including various gift cards and a Rockabilly Polka Dot Top.

Picture	Product name	SKU	Price	Stock quantity	Product type	Published	Edit
	\$100 Physical Gift Card		100	10000	Simple product	✓	Edit
	\$25 Virtual Gift Card		25	10000	Simple product	✓	Edit
	\$5 Virtual Gift Card		5	10000	Simple product	✓	Edit
	\$50 Physical Gift Card		50	10000	Simple product	✓	Edit
	50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size		15	10000	Simple product	✓	Edit

*Note: You can export the product list to an external file for backup purposes, by clicking **Export to XML(all)** or **Export to Excel (all)**. You can export selected products by clicking **Export to XML (selected)** and **Export to Excel (selected)**. Alternatively, you can import a product from an external file by clicking **Import from Excel** and you can click **Download catalog as PDF** to print the selected products to a PDF file. In addition, you can select products to delete from the list and then click the **Delete (selected)** button to remove these products.*

- 2 Click **Add New**. The **Add a New Product** window is displayed, showing the **Product Info** tab, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Product' window with the 'Product Info' tab selected. The window has a navigation bar at the top with tabs for 'Product Info', 'SEO', 'Pictures', 'Category mappings', 'Manufacturer mappings', 'Specification attributes', 'Product attributes', 'Tier prices', and 'Discounts'. Below the navigation bar are sub-tabs: 'Access control list', 'Stores', 'Related products', 'Cross-sells', and 'Associated products'. The main content area contains the following form fields:

- Product type:** A dropdown menu with 'Simple product' selected.
- Visible individually:** A checked checkbox.
- Product template:** A dropdown menu with 'Simple product' selected.
- Product name:** A text input field.
- Short description:** A text area.
- Full description:** A rich text editor with a toolbar and a 'Path:' field at the bottom right showing 'Words: 0'.
- Admin comment:** A text area.
- Vendor:** A dropdown menu with 'No vendor' selected.
- Show on home page:** An unchecked checkbox.
- Allow customer reviews:** A checked checkbox.
- Product tags:** A text input field.

- 3 From the **Product Type** dropdown list, select the required product type, as follows:
  - Select the **Simple product** type to select a simple product. In most cases your product will have the **Simple** product type.
  - Select the **Grouped** product type to create a new grouped product using one or more existing products that will be displayed on one single product details page, as follows

- **Step 1:** The store owner creates several products with the **Simple** product type.

- **Step 2:** The store owner creates a **Grouped** product and assigns these **Simple** products in the **Associated products** tab.

In the public store, the customer sees a separate **Add to cart** button for each associated product on the **Grouped product details** page. A **Simple** product could be associated to only one **Grouped** product.

**Grouped** products are not directly orderable. However, associated **Simple** products are. For example, a customer cannot order the **Creative Sound Card** product directly. The customer must order an **OEM** or **Retail** version of the Creative Sound Card. Therefore, in this case, the **Grouped** product is a **Creative Sound Card**, and there are two associated **Simple** products for this **Grouped** product: **OEM** and **Retail**, each with potentially different prices.

- 4 Select the **Visible Individually** checkbox if you do not want **Simple** products associated to a **Grouped** product to have a separate product details page.
- 5 From the **Product Template** dropdown list, select the **Simple Product** or **Grouped Product** template option. You should be the same as your **product type**.
- 6 In the **Product name** field, enter the name of the new product.
- 7 In the **Short description** field, enter a short description of the product.
- 8 In the **Full description** field, enter a long description of the product.
- 9 In the **Admin comment** field, enter a comment for information purposes.
- 10 From the **Vendor** dropdown list select the product vendor.

*Note: This is useful when using the multi-vendor functionality.*

For further details refer to [Multi Vendor Support](#).

- 11 Select the **Show on home page** checkbox to display the product on the

homepage of the store.

- 12 Select the **Allow customer reviews** checkbox to enable customers to provide reviews of the product.
- 13 In the **Products Tags** field, enter the keyword that this product can be identified by. This is performed by entering a comma separated list of the tags to be associated with this product.

The more products associated with a particular tag, the larger it will show on the **Popular Tags** area, displayed in the side bar on the home page, as follows:



- 14 In the **SKU** field, enter the product stock keeping unit, used internally for tracking the product. This is your internal unique ID used to track this product.
- 15 In the **Manufacturer part number** field, enter the part number provided by the manufacturer for the product.
- 16 In the **GTIN (global trade item number)** field, enter the global trade item number (GTIN). These identifiers include, UPC (in North America), EAN (in Europe), JAN (in Japan), and ISBN (for Books).
- 17 Define the price and availability details of the product, as follows:
  - In the **Price** field, enter the product price in the currency defined in the backend. You can manage primary store currency in the **Administration** area by selecting **Location > Currencies** from the **Configuration** menu, as described on page 230.
  - (optional) In the **Old price** field, enter an old price. If the old price is larger than zero it will be visible in public store and displayed beside the new price for comparison purposes.
  - (optional) In the **Product cost** field, enter the sum of all the costs associated with the production of a specific quantity of a product or service. This cost is not displayed to customers.

- (Optional) In the **Special price** field, the store owner can enter a special price for the product. The new price will be valid between the start and end dates. Leave this field empty to ignore the field.
  - (Optional) In the **Special price start date** field, click on the calendar to select the special price start date in **Coordinated Universal Time**. Leave this field empty to ignore the field.
  - (Optional) In the **Special price end date** field, click on the calendar to select the special price end date in **Coordinated Universal Time**. Leave this field empty to ignore the field.
  - Select the **Disable buy button** checkbox to disable the customer from buying the product.
  - Select the **Disable wishlist button** checkbox to disable the customer from adding the product to the wishlist.
  - Select the **Available for pre-order** checkbox to if the item is available for pre-ordering. The **Pre-ordered** button is displayed to replace the standard Add to cart button.
  - Select the **Call for Price** checkbox to show **Call for Pricing** or **Call for Quote** instead of price.
  - Select the **Customer enters price** checkbox to indicate the customer must enter the price. When selected, the following fields are displayed:
    - In the **Minimum amount** field, enter the minimum amount for the price.
    - In the **Maximum amount** field, enter the maximum amount for the price.
  - From the **Available start date** calendar, select the date from when the product will be available in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).
  - From the **Available end date** calendar, select the date until when the product will be available in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)..
- 18 Select the **Require other products are added to the cart** checkbox if this product requires that other products are added to the cart. When selected, the following fields are displayed:
- In the **Required product IDs**, enter a comma separated list of the required product IDs.

*Note: Ensure there are no circular references. For example A requires B and B requires A.*

- Select the **Automatically add these products to the cart** checkbox to automatically add these products to the cart.

**19** Select the **Is Gift Card** checkbox to state that the product is a gift card product. Gift card must be used through the nopCommerce Web site towards purchasing products. Purchases are deducted from the Gift Card balance. Any unused balance will be placed in the recipient's Gift Card account. If an order exceeds the amount of the gift card, the balance must be paid with a credit card or any other available payment method. When this option is selected the following options are displayed:

- **Virtual:** Select this option to define the gift card as virtual. Customers are requested to enter sender and recipient emails.
- **Physical:** Select this option to define the gift card as physical. Customers are not requested to enter sender and recipient emails.

*Note: It is not recommended to change the gift card type in a production environment.*

**20** Select the **Downloadable product** checkbox to enable the product to be downloaded from the website. The following options, are displayed related to downloadable products:

- **Use download URL:** Select this checkbox to use a file URL to download the file.
- **Download file/Download URL:** Enter the path of the file or URL to download.
- **Unlimited downloads:** Select this checkbox to enable unlimited downloads. When this option is unchecked, an additional field Max. downloads appears below it. Enter the maximum number of downloads, that are enabled for the customer, after purchasing the product
- **Number of Days:** The number of days during which customers keep access to the file, such as 14 days. Leave this fields empty if you want to enable continuous downloads.
- **Download activation type:** Select the required option from the dropdown list:
  - **When order is paid:** Select this option to enable the download only when the order payment status is Paid.
  - **Manually:** Select this option to give the store owner control. When this is selected, the store owner must manually activate the download, as required. This is performed in the Administration Area, from the order Details Page in the Products tab.

- **Has user agreement:** Select this checkbox if the customer has a user agreement. The User agreement text editor is then displayed enabling you to enter/edit the user agreement text.

*Note: A customer must agree with this user agreement when trying to download the downloadable product (providing the download enabled).*

- **Has sample download file:** Select this checkbox if a sample download file exists. The following options, are displayed:
- **Use download URL:** Use file URL to download sample file.
- **Sample download file:** Enter the path of the sample download file.

*Note: If the store owner uploads a sample download, then it will be shown on the product details page and can be downloaded for without any charge by any customer.*

**21** Select the **Recurring product** checkbox to define this product as a recurring product. The following fields are displayed:

- **Cycle Length:** Enter the cycle length.
- **Cycle Period:** Select the cycle period of the recurring product:
  - Days
  - Weeks
  - Months
  - Years
- **Total cycles:** Enter the total number of the recurring product cycles.

For any product, you can define a recurring cycle to enable the system to automatically create orders that repeat when a customer purchases such products. For example, if a customer buys a product, which has a monthly recurring, cycle, then when paying for the order the system will create a new recurring order with the recurring products. The system will use the payment details from the initial order for subsequent recurring orders. In addition, the original shipping charges will apply to subsequent orders. Note that at least one of the active payment modules should support recurring payments.

**22** Define the shipping details, as follows:

- **Select the Shipping enabled** checkbox to enable the product to be shipped to a location defined by the customer.
- **Select the Free shipping** checkbox to enable the product to be shipped without charge to a location defined by the customer.

- **In the Additional shipping charge** field, enter the additional amount to charge for shipping in the primary store currency. You can manage primary store currency in the Administration area by selecting **Currencies** from the **Configuration** menu, as described on page 230.
- **In the Weight** field, enter the weight of the product. Can be used for shipping calculation purposes. This field is in the primary store measure unit. You can set it in the **Administration** area. From the **Configuration** menu select the **Measures > Weights**, as described on page 236.
- In the **Length (inches)** field, enter the product length.
- In the **Width (inches)** field, enter the product width.
- In the **Height (inches)** field, enter the product height.

*Note: Inches are not hard-coded. You can change the primary store measure dimensions. From the **Configuration** menu select the **Measures>Dimensions**, as described on page 236.*

**23** Define the tax details, as follows:

- Select the **Tax exempt** checkbox, if the product is exempted from tax.
- From the **Tax category** dropdown list, select the required tax classification for this product, as in the following example:
  - Books
  - Electronics and software
  - Downloadable Products
  - Jewelry
  - Apparel and Shoes

*Note: These options are not hard-coded and can be configured by store owner in the Administration area, by selecting **Tax>Tax Categories** from the **Configuration** menu.*

**24** Define the stock details for the product , as follows:

- From the **Manage Inventory Method** dropdown list select the required option, as follows:
  - Don't track inventory
  - **Track inventory by product attributes:** In this case, inventory is managed for product attributes of this product. For example, if you have product attributes, you can create a combination of these attributes and then manage inventory for this combination (such as color and size)

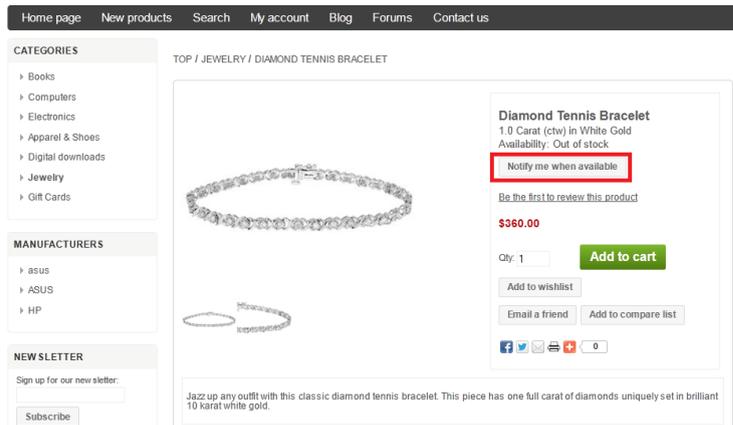
- **Track inventory:** The window expands to display the following fields:
- In the **Stock Quantity** field, enter the number of items that are currently in stock

*Note: Stock quantities are automatically adjusted when customers make purchases.*

- Select the **Display Stock availability** checkbox to enable displaying stock availability in the public store (on the product details page). When this checkbox is selected, the **Display Stock Quantity** checkbox is displayed.
- Select the **Display Stock Quantity** checkbox to enable customers to see a particular quantity of stock on the product details page (this checkbox is displayed only when the **Display Stock Availability** checkbox is selected).
- In the **Minimum stock quantity** field, enter a minimum value, under which an action will be taken as defined in the next item.
- From the **Low stock activity** dropdown list, select the action to be taken when the stock quantity falls below the minimum stock quantity value, as follows:
- **Nothing:** No action is taken, meaning customers can continue to order products.
- **Disable buy button:** The buy button becomes disabled when stock is low. Therefore, customers cannot buy this product but can still see it existing in the store.
- **Un-publish:** The product is not visible in the store anymore. Used when the product will be stopped entirely.
- In the **Notify Admin for quantity below** field, enter a value under which the administrator will be notified.
- From the **Backorders** dropdown list, select the required backorder mode, as follows:
- **No backorders:** Select this option to prevent a customer from purchasing this product when there is no stock available.
- **Allow qty below 0:** Select this option to enable a customer to purchase this product even when there is no stock available.
- **Allow qty below 0 and notify customer:** Select this option to enable a customer to purchase this product even when there is no stock available. In addition, the customer will be notified, by receiving the following message: Out of Stock - on backorder and will be dispatched once in stock (**Display Stock availability** option should be also

enabled in this case).

- Select the **Allow back in stock subscriptions** checkbox to enable customers to subscribe to a notification list for a product that has gone out of stock. When a product is out of stock and this option is enabled, customers can subscribe to a notification list to be informed when this product is in stock again, as shown in the screen shots of the public store below:



- Click the **Notify me when available** link. The following message appears:



- Click Notify me to subscribe to the notification list.
- You can unsubscribe from this list by clicking the **Notify me when available link** again. The following is displayed:



- Click Unsubscribe to unsubscribe from the notification list.

- 25 In the **Minimum cart quantity** field, enter the minimum value. A customer cannot place an order for a quantity under this value.
- 26 In the **Maximum cart quantity** field, enter the maximum value. A customer cannot place an order for a quantity over this value.

- 27 In the **Allowed quantities** field, enter a comma-separated list of quantities you want this product to be restricted to. For example, if you enter 3,7 a customer will only have a choice of purchasing 3 or 7 of these items at a time. Instead of a quantity textbox that allows him to enter any quantity, he will see a dropdown list of the values you enter here. If this field remains blank, the customer can enter any required quantity.
- 28 In the **Available Start date** field, enter the start date of the products availability.
- 29 In the **Available Start date** field, enter the end date of the products availability.
- 30 Select the **Published** checkbox to publish the product and make it available in the store
- 31 Select the **SEO** tab, as follows:

The screenshot shows a web interface for adding a new product. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'Add A New Product (back to product list)' and two buttons: 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit'. Below this is a horizontal menu with tabs: 'Product Info', 'SEO', 'Pictures', 'Category mappings', 'Manufacturer mappings', 'Specification attributes', 'Product attributes', and 'Tier prices'. Underneath, there is a sub-menu with tabs: 'Discounts', 'Access control list', 'Stores', 'Related products', 'Cross-sells', and 'Associated products'. The 'SEO' tab is selected. The main content area contains four input fields, each with a blue circular icon containing a 'P' and a label: 'Meta keywords:', 'Meta description:', 'Meta title:', and 'Search engine friendly page name:'.

Search engine optimization (SEO) is the process of improving the volume or quality of traffic to a web site from search engines via "natural" or un-paid search results as opposed to search engine marketing (SEM) which deals with paid inclusion. Typically, the higher a site appears in the search results list, the more visitors it will receive from the search engine. SEO may target different kinds of searches, including image searches, local searches, video searches and industry-specific vertical search engines. This gives a web site web presence.

As an Internet marketing strategy, SEO considers how search engines work and what people search for. Optimizing a website primarily involves editing its content and HTML and associated coding to both increase its relevance to specific keywords and to remove barriers to the indexing activities of search engines.

- 32 Define the following SEO parameters:
  - In the **Meta keywords** field, enter the required category meta keywords. These are a brief and concise list of the most important themes of your page.

The meta keywords tag takes the following form:

- `<meta name="keywords" content="keywords, keyword, keyword phrase, etc.">`
- In the **Meta description** field, enter a description of the category. The meta description tag is a brief and concise summary of your page's content. The meta description tag is in the following format:

`<meta name="description" content="Brief description of the contents of your page.">`

- In the **Meta title** field, enter the required title. The title tag specifies the title of your Web page. It is code which is inserted into the header of your web page and is in the following format:

```
<head>
<title> Creating Title Tags for Search Engine Optimization
& Web Usability </title>
</head>
```

- In the **Search engine friendly page name** field, enter the name of the page used by search engines. If you enter nothing then the category page URL is formed using the category name. If you enter **custom-seo-page-name**, then the following custom the URL will be used:

`http://www.yourStore.com/custom-seo-page-name`

**33** Click **Save**. The new product will be displayed in the public store.

## Editing Product Details

You can edit the product details at any time by clicking the **Edit** button. To remove the product from the system, click the **Delete** button. A confirmation button will be displayed.

To create a full copy of the product, click **Copy product**. A confirmation message is displayed, with the name of the product and a published checkbox, which you can deselect if you do not want the product to be published. Click **Yes** to save a full copy of the product.

► **To edit product details:**

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products> Manage Products**. The **Manage Products** window is displayed.
- 2 Click **Edit** beside the product to edit. The **Edit product details** window is displayed, showing the **Product Info** tab.

*Note: Click the **Preview** button to go to the product details page in the public store.*

- 3 In the **Product Info** tab, edit the product information, as described on page 92, in **Adding Products**.
- 4 Select the **SEO** tab, and define the SEO parameters as described on page 102 in **Adding Products**.

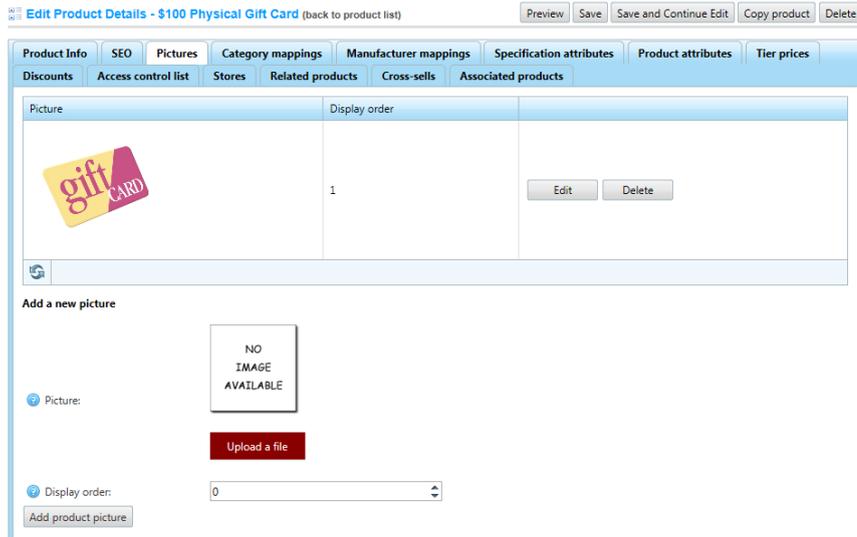
- 5 Select the **Category Mappings** tab, and define the category mappings, as described on page 106 in **Adding Products**.
- 6 Select the **Manufacturer Mappings** tab, and define the manufacturer mappings, as described on page 107 in **Adding Products**.
- 7 Select the **Related Products** tab, and define the related product definitions, as described on page 120 in **Defining Related Products**.
- 8 Select the **Pictures** tab, and define the picture definitions, as described on page 105 in **Adding Pictures**.
- 9 Select the **Product Specifications** tab, and define the product specifications, as described on page 109 in **Defining Product Specifications**.
- 10 Click **Save**.

## Adding Pictures

The **Pictures** tab in the **Edit Product Details** page enables you to upload product images. After adding a new product, nopCommerce assumes you will want to upload some images for the product, and displays the **Pictures** tab after the product has been successfully added.

▶ **To add pictures:**

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products > Manage Products**. The **Manage Products** window is displayed.
- 2 Click **Edit** beside the product to edit. The **Edit product details** window is displayed, showing the **Product Info** tab, shown on page 104
- 3 Select the **Pictures** tab, as follows:



- 4 From the **Add a new picture** area, in the **Picture** field, click the **Upload** button, and navigate and select the new picture you want to upload to your product page.
- 5 In the **Display order** field, enter a value for the display order. Entering a value of 1 will display the uploaded image first.
- 6 Click **Add product picture**. The picture is displayed in the image list.
- 7 You can change the order of the images at any time and then click **Edit** to update the site with the new picture.

*Note: Click **Delete** beside the required image to remove it from the list and from the details page and click **Edit** to update the site.*

## Adding to Categories

- ▶ To add products to categories :
  - 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products > Manage Products**. The **Manage Products** window is displayed.
  - 2 Click **Edit** beside the product to edit. The **Edit product details** window is displayed, showing the **Product Info** tab, shown on page 104

### 3 Select the **Category Mappings** tab, as follows:

Edit Product Details - \$100 Physical Gift Card (back to product list) [Preview] [Save] [Save and Continue Edit] [Copy product] [Delete]

Product Info | SEO | Pictures | **Category mappings** | Manufacturer mappings | Specification attributes | Product attributes | Tier prices

Discounts | Access control list | Stores | Related products | Cross-sells | Associated products

Add new record

Category	Is featured product?	Display order	
Gift Cards	false	4	[Edit] [Delete]

[Refresh]

The **Category Mappings** window enables store owners to map products to categories in order to group them, as required. You can assign a product to as many categories as you want in nopCommerce.

### 4 Click the **Add new record** button and select the categories to map, as follows:

- From the **Category** list, select the required categories to which you want to map your selected product.
- Check the **Is Product Featured?** checkbox to display the selected product as a featured product on the details page in the store.
- In the **Display order** column, enter the display order of the selected product. Setting this value to **1** means it will be displayed at the top of the list.

## Adding to Manufacturers

### ► To add products to manufacturers :

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products > Manage Products**. The **Manage Products** window is displayed.
- 2 Click **Edit** beside the product to edit. The **Edit product details** window is displayed, showing the **Product Info** tab, shown on page 104
- 3 Select the **Manufacturer Mappings** tab, as follows:

Edit Product Details - \$100 Physical Gift Card (back to product list) [Preview] [Save] [Save and Continue Edit] [Copy product] [Delete]

Product Info | SEO | Pictures | Category mappings | **Manufacturer mappings** | Specification attributes | Product attributes | Tier prices

Discounts | Access control list | Stores | Related products | Cross-sells | Associated products

Add new record

Manufacturer	Is featured product?	Display order	
No records to display.			

[Refresh]

The **Manufacturer Mappings** tab enables store owners to map products to manufacturer in order to group them, as required. You can assign a product to as many manufacturers as you want in nopCommerce.

- 4 Click the **Add new record** button and select the categories to map, as follows:
  - From the **Manufacturer** list, select the required manufacturers to which you want to map your selected product.
  - Check the **Featured Product** checkbox to display the selected product as a featured product on the details page in the store.
  - In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of the selected product. Setting this value to **1** means it will be displayed at the top of the list.

# Product Specifications

This page enables you to enter product specifications. Specifications can be used to list any technical or other useful information about the product (for example, color, height, and so on).

► **To define product specifications:**

- 1 From the **Manage Products** window on page 92, click **Edit** beside the product for which you want to define the product specifications. The **Edit product details** window is displayed.
- 2 Select the Specifications attributes tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Product Details' window for the product 'APC Back-UPS RS 800VA - UPS - 800 VA - UPS Battery - Lead Acid (BR800BLK)'. The 'Specification attributes' tab is active. The 'Associated products' table is empty. Below the table, the 'Add a new product specification attribute' form is visible. The form has the following fields and options:

- Attribute: Operating system (dropdown menu)
- Attribute option: (dropdown menu)
- Custom value: (text input field)
- Allow filtering:
- Show on product page:
- Display order: 0 (dropdown menu)

An 'Add attribute' button is located at the bottom of the form.

3 Add a new specification attribute, as follows:

- From the **Attribute dropdown** list, select the required specification attribute. These were defined in the **Specification Attributes** section, on page 85.
- From the **Attribute option** dropdown list, select the value of the specification attribute.
- In the **Custom Value** field, you can enter a custom value which will be used instead of the selected **Attribute option** above. Alternatively, you can leave this field empty. When this field is filled in ensure the **Allow filtering** checkbox is not selected.
- Select the **Allow filtering** checkbox to enable product filtering by the selected attribute. For further details on filtering, refer to Filtering the Display on page 21.
- Select the **Show on product page attribute** checkbox to show the value of the specification attribute on the product page and on the compare products page.
- In the **Display Order** field, enter the order display value of the specification. A value of **1** represents the top of the list.

- 4 Click **Add Attribute**. The specification attribute is added to the product, as follows:

[Edit Product Details - APC Back-UPS RS 800VA - UPS - 800 VA - UPS Battery - Lead Acid \( BR800BLK \)](#) (back to product list) [Preview](#) [Save](#) [Save and Continue Edit](#) [Copy product](#) [Delete](#)

Product Info | SEO | Pictures | Category mappings | Manufacturer mappings | **Specification attributes** | Product attributes | Tier prices | Discounts | Access control list | Stores

Related products | Cross-sells | Associated products

Attribute	Attribute option	Custom value	Allow filtering	Show on product page	Display order	
Memory	1 GB	2	false	true	0	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
Memory	1 GB		false	true	0	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
Memory	3 GB		true	true	1	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

**Add a new product specification attribute**

Attribute:

Attribute option:

Custom value:

Allow filtering:

Show on product page:

Display order:

- 5 Edit the specification attribute as required and then click **Update** to update the store.
- 6 If required, you can click **Delete** to remove the specification attribute.
- 7 Click **Save**.

# Product Attributes

This section describes how to define product attributes, which are applied to the product.

## ▶ To define product attributes

- 1 From the **Manage Products** window on page 92, click **Edit** beside the product to which you want to add a product attribute. The **Edit product details** window is displayed.
- 2 Select the **Product Attributes** tab. The **Attributes** sub-tab is displayed, that is used to map product attributes to a product, as follows:

Attribute	Text prompt	Is Required	Control type	Display order	Values	
Processor		✓	Drop-down list	0	View/Edit value (Total: 2)	Edit Delete
RAM		✓	Drop-down list	0	View/Edit value (Total: 3)	Edit Delete
HDD		✓	Radio button list	0	View/Edit value (Total: 2)	Edit Delete
OS		✓	Radio button list	0	View/Edit value (Total: 2)	Edit Delete
Software		✗	Checkboxes	0	View/Edit value (Total: 3)	Edit Delete

- 3 Click the **Add new record** to map a product attribute to a product, as follows:

- From the **Attribute** column, select the attribute from the drop down list to add to the product.

*Note: These attributes are defined in the **Product Attributes** window shown on page 84, that is displayed in **Administration** area by selecting **Attributes > Product Attributes** from the **Catalog** menu.*

- In the **Text Prompt** field, enter the text that will be shown in front of this product attribute in the public store. For example, for a Color product attribute that is attached to your product, you can enter text such as "Select the preferred color". This text will be followed by the product attribute values, such as Green, Blue and Red.
- Select the **Is Required** checkbox to define this option as required for customers.
- From the **Control Type** dropdown list, select the required pre-defined control type, as follows:
  - Dropdown list
  - Radio list
  - Checkboxes
  - Textbox
  - Multiline textbox
  - Date picker
  - File upload
  - Color squares

*Note: Dropdown lists, radio lists, checkboxes and color squares require store owner to define values (such as, Green, Blue, Red). The Textbox and Date picker control types do not require this, since customers will be required to enter text into this textbox field.*

- In the **Display Order** field, enter the order display value of the specification. 1 represents the top of the list.

**4** In the **Values** column, click the **View/Edit value** link. The **Add/Edit Values** window is displayed, as follows:

[Add/Edit Values For \[Processor\] Attribute. Product: Build Your Own Computer](#) (back to product details)

Attribute value type	Name	Associated product	Price adjustment	Weight adjustment	Is pre-selected	Picture	Display order	Edit	Delete
Simple	2.2 GHz Intel Pentium Dual-Core E2200		0	0	✘		1	Edit	Delete
Simple	2.5 GHz Intel Pentium Dual-Core E2200		15	0	✔		2	Edit	Delete

 Add a new value

- 5 Click the **Add a new value** button. The **Add a new value** window is displayed:

**Add A New Value** Save

Attribute value type: Simple

Name:

Price adjustment: 0.0000

Weight adjustment: 0.0000

Is pre-selected:

Display order: 0

Picture:  No picture      

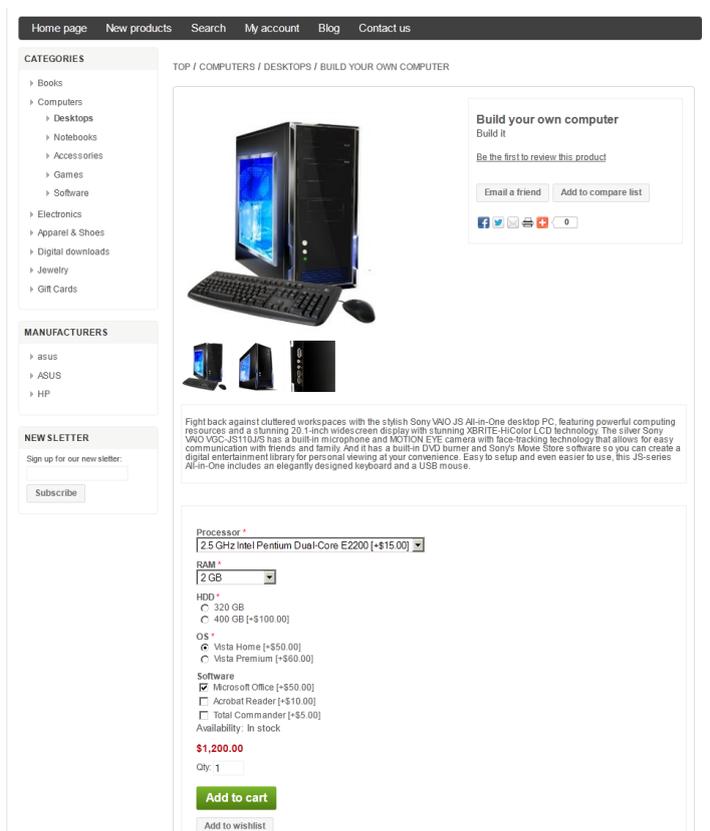
- 6 Define the new attribute value, as follows:

- In the **Attribute value type** field, select the required option, as follows:
  - **Simple:** This is a standard attribute value. In most cases a store owner will use it.
  - **Associated to product:** Use this attribute value type to associate other products to this attribute value. When this option is selected, the store owner can choose any other product which will be associated to this attribute value. This enables the store owner to create bundle products. When a customer makes a purchase of a bundle product, stock will adjust for each product of this bundle product. If no stock exists of any simple-unique product that composes this bundle product, the bundle product will be **out of stock**. An associated product price and weight is also used when purchasing such a bundle product.
- In the **Name** field, enter the name for the value (such as, Red, Green, Yellow, for a color attribute for example).
- In the **Price adjustment** field, enter the price adjustment that is applied when selecting this attribute value. Negative price adjustment can also be entered. This field is only used when the **Simple** attribute option is selected. Otherwise, a price of an associated product will be used.
- In the **Weight adjustment** field, enter the weight adjustment that is applied when selecting this attribute value. This field is only displayed when the **Simple** attribute option is selected. Otherwise, weight of an associated product will be used.
- Select the **Pre-selected** checkbox to indicate this attribute value is pre-selected for the customer.

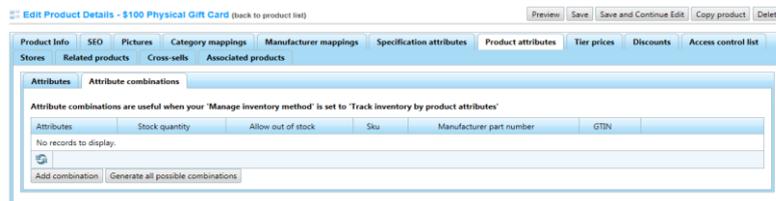
- From the **Picture** options, select the picture to associate with the attribute value. When a customer selects this attribute value on the product details page, the main product picture is replaced with this attribute value picture.
- In the **Display Order** field, enter the display order of the attribute value. A value of 1 represents the top of the list.

7 Click **Save**. The new attribute value is added to the **Add/Edit Values** window.

You can now view the updated product details page in the public store, as follows:



8 Select the **Attribute Combinations** sub-tab, which enables store owners to manage inventory stock levels, SKU and more for distinct combinations as follows:



- 9 Click the **Add combination** button to define the attribute combinations. The **Select New Combination** window is displayed, as follows:

Select New Combination And Enter Details Below

**Processor \***  
2.5 GHz Intel Pentium Dual-Core E2200

**RAM \***  
2 GB

**HDD \***  
 320 GB  
 400 GB

**OS \***  
 Vista Home  
 Vista Premium

**Software**  
 Microsoft Office  
 Acrobat Reader  
 Total Commander

? Stock quantity: 10,000

? Allow out of stock:

? Sku:

? Manufacturer part number:

? GTIN:

Add combination

- 10 Define the new combination, as follows:

- Select required attribute combinations from the dropdown list.
- In the **Stock quantity** field, enter the available stock quantity of the combination.
- Select the **Allow out of stock orders** checkbox to enable orders to be approved even when the product is out of stock.
- In the **SKU (Stock Keeping Unit)** field, enter your unique ID that can be used to track this attribute combination.
- In the **Manufacturer part number** field enter the manufacturer part number for this attribute combination.
- In the **GTIN** field enter the Global Trade Item Number, these identifiers include **UPC** (in north America), **EAN** (in Europe), **JAN** (in Japan), and **ISBN** (for books).
- Click **Add combination** to update the site with the new combinations.

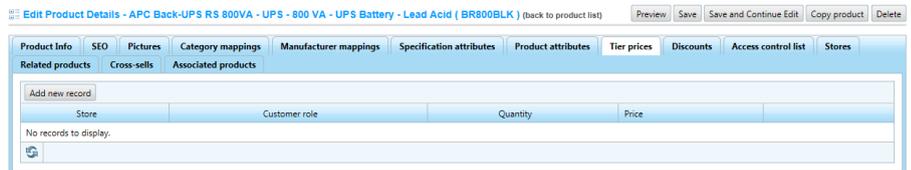
*Note: Attribute combinations are useful only when the **Manage inventory method** field of your product is set to **Track inventory***

# Tier Prices

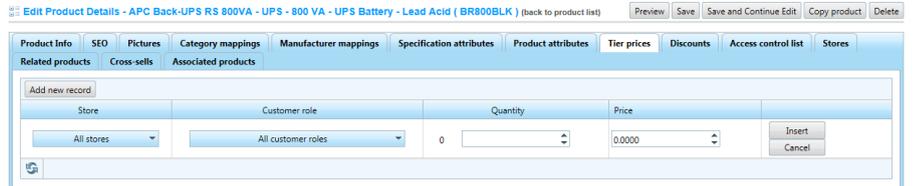
This section describes how to add tier prices. Tier Pricing is a promotional tool that allows a store owner to price items differently for higher quantities. This is an effective way to move more merchandise and appeal to customers who buy more than one product at a time. When a customer adds a certain quantity of a product to their cart, the price is automatically changed to reflect the discount.

► **To add tier prices:**

- 1 From the **Manage Products** window on page 92, click **Edit** beside the product to which you want to add a product. The **Edit product details** window is displayed.
- 2 Select the **Tier Prices** tab, as follows:



- 3 Click **Add new record**. The window expands, as follows:



- 4 Add the tier price, as follows:
  - From the **Store** drop down list, select the store based on which to define a tier price.
  - From the **Customer role** drop down list, select the customer role based on which to define a tier price.
  - In the **Quantity** field, enter the quantity of the product.
  - In the **Price** field, enter the price per item of the product.
- 5 Click **Insert**. The **Tier Prices** tab is updated with the new data, as shown below.

Edit Product Details - APC Back-UPS RS 800VA - UPS - 800 VA - UPS Battery - Lead Acid (BR800BLK) (back to product list)

Preview Save Save and Continue Edit Copy product Delete

Product Info SEO Pictures Category mappings Manufacturer mappings

Specification attributes Product attributes Tier prices Discounts Access control list Stores Related products Cross-sells Associated products

Add new record

Store	Customer role	Quantity	Price	
Demo store	Guests	1	12.0000	<input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>

- 6 Click **Edit** beside the required tier price to edit the price in the store. You can click **Delete** to remove the tier price.
- 7 Click **Save**. You can now view the updated product details page in the public store, as follows:

TOP / APPAREL & SHOES / JEANS / LEVI'S SKINNY 511 JEANS




**Levi's Skinny 511 Jeans**  
 Levi's Faded Black Skinny 511 Jeans  
 Availability: In stock

[Be the first to review this product](#)

Old price: ~~\$55.00~~  
 Price: **\$43.50**

Qty:

[f](#) [t](#) [e](#) [+](#) 0

**PRICE BREAKS - The more you buy, the more you save**

Quantity	3+	6+	10+
Price	<b>\$40.00</b>	<b>\$38.00</b>	<b>\$35.00</b>

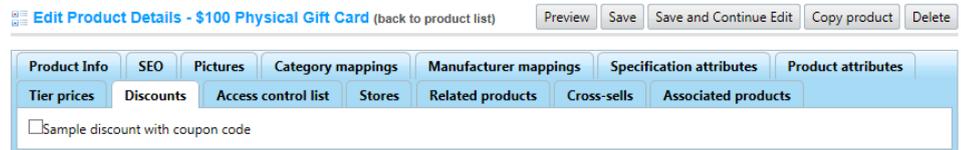
Product tags  
[cool](#) (21) , [apparel](#) (10) , [jeans](#) (2)

# Discounts

This section describes how to add discounts. Tier prices are applied only to the product price and not to product attributes.

► **To add discounts:**

- 1 From the **Manage Products** window on page 92, click **Edit** beside the product to which you want to add a product. The **Edit product details** window is displayed.
- 2 Select the **Discounts** tab, as follows:

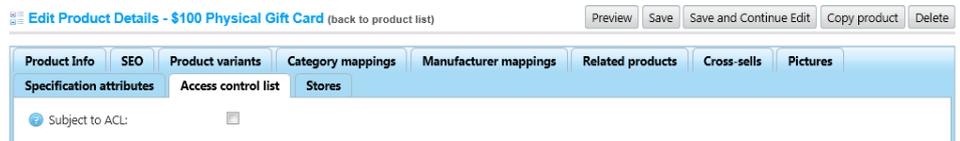


- 3 Select the **Discount** checkbox to apply the discount to the product. Only discounts with **Assigned to products** type are visible here.
- 4 Click **Save**.

# Access Control List

► **To configure ACL:**

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products > Manage Products**. The **Manage Products** window is displayed.
- 2 Click **Edit** beside the product to edit. The **Edit product details** window is displayed, showing the **Product Info** tab, shown on page 104
- 3 Select the **Access Control List** tab, as follows:



- 4 Select the **Subject to ACL** checkbox, to enable configuring the access control at the product level (showing specific products based on customer roles).The window is expanded, as follows:

Edit Product Details - \$100 Physical Gift Card (back to product list) Preview Save Save and Continue Edit Copy product Delete

Product Info SEO Pictures Category mappings Manufacturer mappings Specification attributes Product attributes Tier prices

Discounts Access control list Stores Related products Cross-sells Associated products

Subject to ACL:

Customer roles:

- Administrators
- Forum Moderators
- Guests
- Registered
- Vendors

5 Select the required customer roles having access to this product.

- Administration
- Forum Moderators
- Guests
- Registered
- Vendors

*Note: These customer roles are not hard-coded and can be configured in the Administration area, by selecting Customer Roles from the Customers menu*

## Stores

► To limit a product to a certain store(s):

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products > Manage Products**. The **Manage Products** window is displayed.
- 2 Click **Edit** beside the product to edit. The **Edit product details** window is displayed, showing the **Product Info** tab, shown on page 104
- 3 Select the **Stores** tab, as follows:

Edit Product Details - \$100 Physical Gift Card (back to product list) Preview Save Save and Continue Edit Copy product Delete

Product Info SEO Pictures Category mappings Manufacturer mappings Specification attributes Product attributes Tier prices

Discounts Access control list Stores Related products Cross-sells Associated products

Limited to stores:

- 4 Select the **Limited to stores** checkbox, to enable defining the stores where the product will be available. The window is expanded, as follows:

Edit Product Details - \$100 Physical Gift Card (back to product list) Preview Save Save and Continue Edit Copy product Delete

Product Info SEO Pictures Category mappings Manufacturer mappings Specification attributes Product attributes Tier prices

Discounts Access control list Stores Related products Cross-sells Associated products

Limited to stores:

Stores:  Demo store

*Note: This checkbox is used only when you have several stores configured. For further details refer to [Multi-store support](#).*

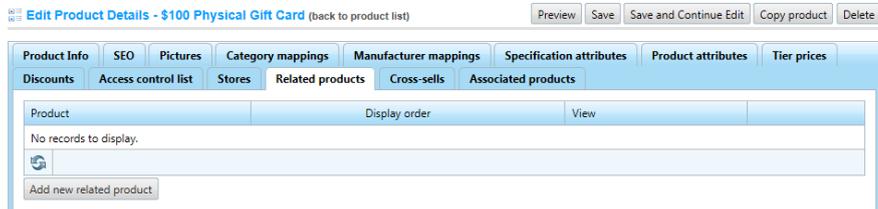
## Defining Related Products

The **Related Products** option provides the opportunity to advertise products that are not part of the selected category, to your visitors. These products are displayed below the selected product. Related products can also be used to pin certain products from the category to a more prominent position.

You can add an unlimited number of related products to a product, although consideration should be made for the look and feel for the visitor.

► **To define related products:**

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products**> **Manage Products**. The **Manage Products** window is displayed.
- 2 Click **Edit** beside the product to edit. The **Edit product details** window is displayed, showing the **Product Info** tab, shown on page 104.
- 3 Select the **Related Products** tab, as follows:



- 4 From the **Product** list, select the related product to add.
- 5 In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of the selected product. Setting this value **1** means it will be displayed at the top of the list.
- 6 Click **Add new related product**. The Add New Related Product window is displayed.

### Add New Related Product

Product name:

Category:

Manufacturer:

Store:

Vendor:

Product type:

Displaying items 1 - 15 of 53

Check	Product name	Published
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$100 Physical Gift Card	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$25 Virtual Gift Card	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$5 Virtual Gift Card	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$50 Physical Gift Card	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black)	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	adidas Women's Supernova CSH 7 Running Shoe	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	Adobe Photoshop Elements 7	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	APC Back-UPS RS 800VA - UPS - 800 VA - UPS battery - lead acid ( BR800BLK)	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	ASUS Eee PC 1000HA 10-Inch Netbook	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	ASUS Eee PC 900HA 8.9-Inch Netbook Black	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	Best Grilling Recipes	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	Black & White Diamond Heart	✓
<input type="checkbox"/>	BlackBerry Bold 9000 Phone, Black (AT&T)	✓

Displaying items 1 - 15 of 53

#### 7 Enter the search criteria for the related product:

- In the **Product name** field, enter the name of the product
- From the **Category** field, select the category to search by.
- From the **Manufacturer** field, select the manufacturer to search by.
- From the **Store** field, select the store to search by.
- From the **Vendor** field, select the vendor to search by.
- From the **Product Type** field, select the product type to search by.

#### 8 Click **Search**. The related products that were found based on the search criteria will be added to the related products list.

#### 9 Click **Save**.

## Adding Cross-sell Products

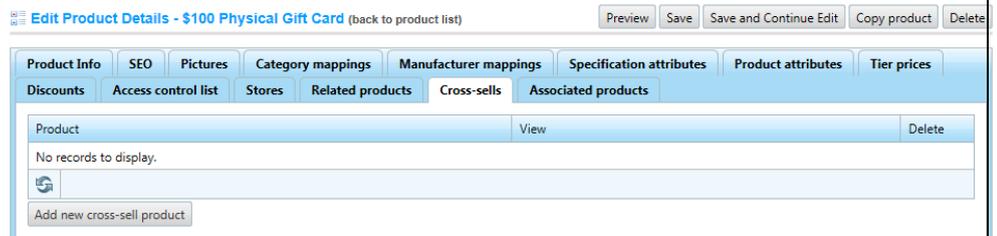
The customer has now added items to their basket. They are on the shopping cart page about to buy their products. Great! However, you could also convince them that they need more items to go with their purchase. In a box on the shopping cart page, cross-sells have the same mission as the related products – to get more sales from the customer.

The **Cross-sell products** option provides the opportunity to buy additional products that generally go with the selected product. They are displayed at the bottom of the checkout page. For example, when building a computer, the customer may want to buy some additional software.

You can add an unlimited number of cross-sell products to a product, although consideration should be made for the look and feel for the visitor.

### ► To cross-sell products:

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products**> **Manage Products**. The **Manage Products** window is displayed.
- 2 Click **Edit** beside the product to edit. The **Edit product details** window is displayed, showing the **Product Info** tab, shown on page 104.
- 3 Select the **Cross-sells** tab, as follows:



- 4 Click **Add new cross-sell product**. The Add cross-sell Product window is displayed.

**Add New Cross-Sell Product**

Product name:

Category:

Manufacturer:

Store:

Vendor:

Product type:

Check	Product name	Published
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$100 Physical Gift Card	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$25 Virtual Gift Card	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$5 Virtual Gift Card	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$50 Physical Gift Card	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	adidas Women's Supernova CSH 7 Running Shoe	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Adobe Photoshop Elements 7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	APC Back-UPS RS 800VA - UPS - 800 VA - UPS battery - lead acid ( BR800BLK )	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	ASUS Eee PC 1000HA 10-Inch Netbook	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	ASUS Eee PC 900HA 8.9-Inch Netbook Black	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Best Grilling Recipes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Black & White Diamond Heart	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	BlackBerry Bold 9000 Phone, Black (AT&T)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

- 5 Enter the search criteria for the cross-sell product:

- In the **Product name** field, enter the name of the product
- From the **Category** field, select the category to search by.
- From the **Manufacturer** field, select the manufacturer to search by.
- From the **Store** field, select the store to search by.
- From the **Vendor** field, select the vendor to search by.
- From the **Product Type** field, select the product type to search by.

- 6 Click **Search**. The cross-sells that were found based on the search criteria will be displayed to the cross-sell products list.
- 7 Click **Save**. These cross-sell products can be displayed on the checkout page of the shopping cart of the product that these items were added to, as shown below:

Home page
New products
Search
My account
Blog
Contact us

Cart Address Shipping Payment Confirm Complete

---

### Shopping cart

Remove	Product(s)	Price	Qty.	Total
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black)	\$21.60	1	\$21.60
<input type="checkbox"/>	 ASUS Eee PC 900HA 8.9-Inch Netbook Black	\$1,500.00	2	\$3,000.00

Update shopping cart
Continue shopping

**Discount Code**  
Enter your coupon here

Apply coupon

**Gift Cards**  
Enter gift card code

Add gift card

**Estimate shipping**  
Enter your destination to get a shipping estimate

Country:

State / province:

Zip / postal code:

Estimate shipping

Sub-Total: \$3,021.60

Shipping: \$0.00

Tax: \$0.00

**Total: \$3,021.60**

Checkout

**Based on your selection, you may be interested in the following items:**



Adobe Photoshop Elements 7

\$75.00

Add to cart



Corel Paint Shop Pro Photo X2

\$65.00

Add to cart

# Bulk Edit Products

This page enables you to bulk edit products; this includes product prices, whether a product is published and more.

## ► To bulk edit products:

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products** > **Bulk Edit Products**. The **Bulk Edit Products** window is displayed.

**Bulk Edit Products**

Product name:   
Category: All   
Manufacturer: All   
Product type: All

Displaying items 1 - 15 of 53

Name	SKU	Price	Old price	Manage inventory	Stock qty	Published	Delete	View
\$100 Physical Gift Card		100	0	Don't track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
\$25 Virtual Gift Card		25	0	Don't track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
\$5 Virtual Gift Card		5	0	Don't track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
\$50 Physical Gift Card		50	0	Don't track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size		15	0	Track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black)		21.6	0	Track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
adidas Women's Supernova CSH 7 Running Shoe		40	0	Track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
Adobe Photoshop Elements 7		75	0	Track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
APC Back-UPS RS 800VA - UPS - 800 VA - UPS battery - lead acid ( BR800BLK )		75	0	Track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve		24	0	Track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
ASUS Eee PC 1000HA 10-Inch Netbook		2600	0	Track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
ASUS Eee PC 900HA 8.9-Inch Netbook Black		1500	0	Track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
Best Grilling Recipes		27	30	Track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>

- 2 Click in the item to edit in the grid, beside the required product as shown in the example below.

**Bulk Edit Products**

Product name:   
Category: All   
Manufacturer: All   
Product type: All

Displaying items 1 - 15 of 53

Name	SKU	Price	Old price	Manage inventory	Stock qty	Published	Delete	View
\$100 Physical Gift Card		<input type="text" value="100"/>	0	Don't track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
\$25 Virtual Gift Card		25	0	Don't track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
\$5 Virtual Gift Card		5	0	Don't track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
\$50 Physical Gift Card		50	0	Don't track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>
50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size		15	0	Track inventory	10000	true	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<a href="#">View</a>

- 3 Click **Save Changes** to save your changes.

# 5 Preparing for Selling

This section describes how to prepare and setup your public store your products. It includes the following:

- **Settings**, below
- **Configuring the Default Store Settings**, page 161
- **Multi-store Support**, 160
- **Multi-vendor Support**, page 165
- **Email Accounts**, page 170
- **Taxes**, page 171
- **Shipping Methods** , page 176
- **Payment Methods**, page 195
- **Content Management**, page 203
- **Location**, page 224
- **Measures**, page 236
- **SMS Providers**, page 239
- **External Authentication Methods**, page 241
- **Plugins**, page 243

# Configuration Settings

This section describes the general and global settings for your public store, for example closing the store, or enabling unregistered users to purchase products in your store. This section includes:

- **All Settings**, page 128
- **General and Miscellaneous Settings**, page 129
- **Catalog Settings**, page 135
- **Customer Settings**, , page 139
- **Shopping Cart Settings**, , page 145
- **Order Settings**, page 147
- **Media Settings**, page 149
- **Tax Settings**, page 151
- **Shipping Settings**, page 153
- **Reward Points**, page 155
- **Blog Settings**, page 156
- **News Settings**, page 157
- **Forum Settings**, page 158

# All Settings

Modifying the settings in this window is only recommended to use for advanced users. It is not recommended to modify these settings unless the user is very familiar with the system.

► **To define settings:**

- 1 From the Configuration menu, select Settings>All Settings (Advanced). The All settings (advanced) window is displayed.

All Settings (Advanced)

To find text or a specific setting (by name), you can apply a filter via the funnel icon in the "Value" or "Setting name" column headers.

Setting name	Value	Store	
addresssettings.cityenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.cityrequired	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.companyenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.companyrequired	False	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.countryenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.faxenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.faxrequired	False	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.phoneenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.phonerequired	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.stateprovinceenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.streetaddress2enabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.streetaddress2required	False	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.streetaddressenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.streetaddressrequired	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.zippostalcodeenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete

- 2 Click **Add new record** for adding a setting. The window is expanded, as follows.

All Settings (Advanced)

To find text or a specific setting (by name), you can apply a filter via the funnel icon in the "Value" or "Setting name" column headers.

Setting name	Value	Store	
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	All stores	Insert Cancel
addresssettings.cityenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.cityrequired	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.companyenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.companyrequired	False	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.countryenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.faxenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.faxrequired	False	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.phoneenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.phonerequired	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.stateprovinceenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.streetaddress2enabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.streetaddress2required	False	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.streetaddressenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.streetaddressrequired	True	All stores	Edit Delete
addresssettings.zippostalcodeenabled	True	All stores	Edit Delete

- 3 Enter a new setting , as follows:
  - In the **Setting Name** field, enter the required setting.
  - In the **Value** field, enter the value of the setting.
- 4 Click **Insert**. The new setting is displayed in the **All settings** window.

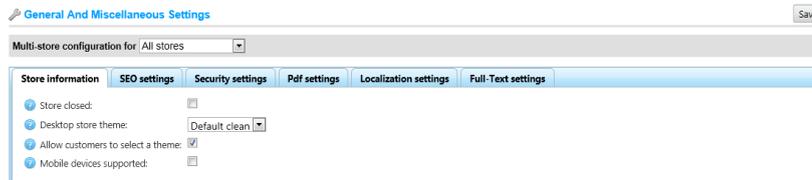
*Note: You can click the **Edit** button beside each parameter to edit the parameter value, as described above.*

## General and Miscellaneous Settings

This section describes how to set the general settings of your store. This includes the store information, SEO settings, security settings and more.

### ► To define general and miscellaneous settings:

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Settings>General and Miscellaneous Settings**. The General and Miscellaneous Settings window appears showing the Store Information tab.



- 2 Define the store information settings, as follows:

- Select the **Store closed** checkbox to close the store, indicating that customers will not be able to visit the store. Uncheck to re-open the store. When this is selected, the Allow admin to view the closed store checkbox appears.
  - Select the **Allow admin to view the closed store** checkbox to enable a user with administrator rights to access the store while it is set to closed.
- From the **Store theme** dropdown list, select the public store theme for the appearance of your public store. You can download new themes from the Extensions page at [www.nopcommerce.com](http://www.nopcommerce.com). You can also develop your own themes if you have a designer.
- Select the **Allow customers to select a theme** checkbox to enable customers to select a store theme (in the public store)

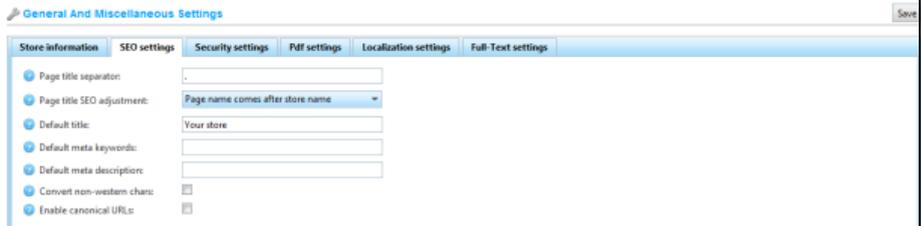
- Select the **Mobile Devices Supported** checkbox to enable mobile device support. When this is selected, the **Mobile Store theme** field appears.
  - From the **Mobile store theme** dropdown list, select the public store theme for mobile devices. You can download themes from the extensions page at [www.nopcommerce.com](http://www.nopcommerce.com).

*Note: When mobile device support is enabled, customers can view a version of the site optimized for mobile devices.*

- Select the **Display EU cookie law warning** field to display the EU warning message that the customers will see when visiting the site for the first time (providing the site is EU cookie compliant):



3 Select **SEO Settings** tab, as follows:



4 Define the SEO settings, as follows:

- In the **Page Title separator** field, specify the page title separator.
- From the **Page Title SEO adjustment** field, select the required page title SEO adjustment, as follows:
  - Page name comes after store name to generate YOURSTORE.COM | PAGENAME for the title.
  - Store name comes after page name to generate PAGENAME | YOURSTORE.COM for the title.
- In the **Default title** field, enter the default title for the pages in your store.
- In the **Default meta keywords description** field, enter the default meta keywords for the pages in your store. This can be overridden for individual categories, manufacturers, and products.

- In the **Default meta description** field, enter the default meta description for the pages in your store. This can be overridden for individual categories, manufacturers, and products.
- Select the **Convert non-western chars** checkbox to remove the accent in SEO names. For example, convert é to e.
- Select the **Enable canonical URL's** checkbox to transform a URL into a canonical URL to enable determining whether two syntactically different URL's may be equivalent.

*Note: When this checkbox is selected, an appropriate canonical URL tag will be added to HTML code.*

5 Select **Security Settings** tab, as follows:

🔑 **General And Miscellaneous Settings** Save

---

Store information | SEO settings | **Security settings** | Pdf settings | Localization settings | Full-Text settings

? Encryption private key:  Change

? Admin area allowed IP:

? Force SSL for all site pages:

---

A CAPTCHA is a program that can tell whether its user is a human or a computer. You've probably seen them — colorful images with distorted text at the bottom of Web registration forms. CAPTCHAs are used by many websites to prevent abuse from "bots," or automated programs usually written to generate spam. No computer program can read distorted text as well as humans can, so bots cannot navigate sites protected by CAPTCHAs. nopCommerce uses [reCAPTCHA](#).

? CAPTCHA enabled:

? Show on login page:

? Show on registration page:

? Show on contact us page:

? Show on 'email wishlist to a friend' page:

? Show on 'email product to a friend' page:

? Show on blog page (comments):

? Show on news page (comments):

? Show on product reviews page:

? reCAPTCHA public key:

? reCAPTCHA private key:

6 Define the Security Settings, as follows:

- In the **Encryption private key** field, enter the encryption private key used for storing sensitive data. Click Change at any time to change this key. All sensitive data is encrypted using this private key.

*Notes:*

*It is recommended to make a backup of your database before you change the encryption key.*

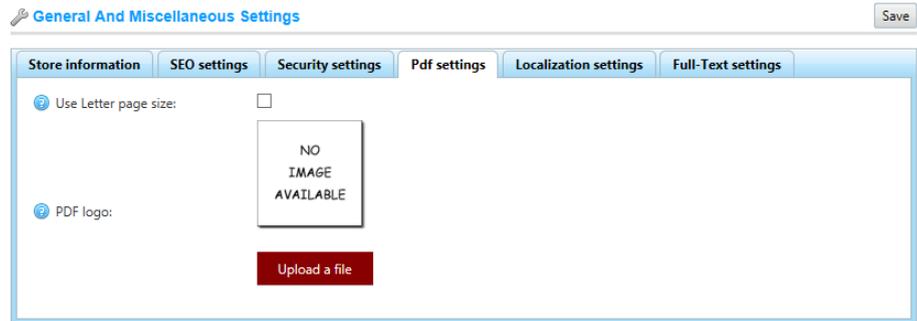
*Sensitive data includes all credit card information (only when this credit card information is stored in the store database).*

- In the **Admin area allowed IP** field, enter the IP addresses that are allowed to access the backend. Leave this field empty if you do not want to restrict access to the backend. Use commas between the IP addresses (for example, 127.0.0.10, 232.18.204.16).
- Select the **Force SSL for all site Pages** to enforce SSL for the entire site. This is useful only when you have SSL enabled on your store details pages.
- Select the **CAPTCHA** checkbox, to enable CAPCHA. The following checkboxes are displayed:
  - Select the **Show on login page** checkbox, to show CAPTCHA on the login page.
  - Select the **Show on registration page** checkbox, to show CAPTCHA on the registration page.
  - Select the **Show on contact us page** checkbox, to show CAPTCHA on the contact us page.
  - Select the **Show on 'email wishlist to a friend' page** checkbox, to show CAPTCHA on the 'email wishlist to a friend' page.
  - Select the **Show on 'email product to a friend' page** checkbox, to show CAPTCHA on the 'email product to a friend' page.
  - In the **reCAPTCHA public key** field, enter the reCAPTCHA public key if enabled.
  - In the **reCAPTCHA private key** field, enter the reCAPTCHA private key if enabled.

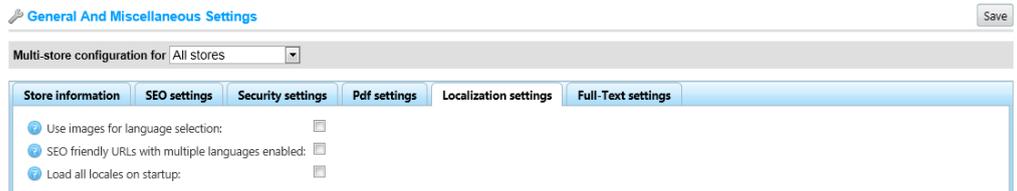
*Note:*

*These checkboxes displayed only when the CAPTCHA checkbox is selected.*

- 7 Select the **PDF settings** tab, as follows:



- 8 Select the **Use Letter page size** checkbox, to use Letter page size for PDF documents. When this **checkbox** is unchecked, the A4 page size is used.
- 9 Click **Upload** beside the **PDF logo** to select the logo to upload.
- 10 Select the **Localization Settings** tab, as follows:



- 11 Select the **Use Images for language selection** checkbox to enable using images for language selection.

*Note: This is useful when you have more than one active language*

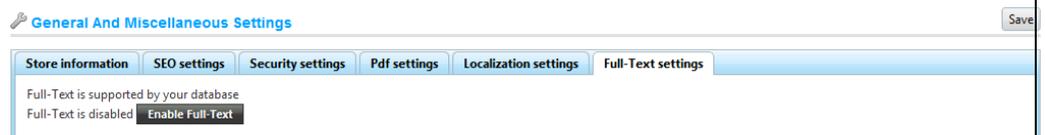
- 12 Select the **SEO friendly URLs with multiple languages enabled** checkbox to enable your URLs to be SEO friendly:

<http://www.yourStore.com/en/> or <http://www.yourStore.com/ru/>

*Note: This is useful when you have more than one active language*

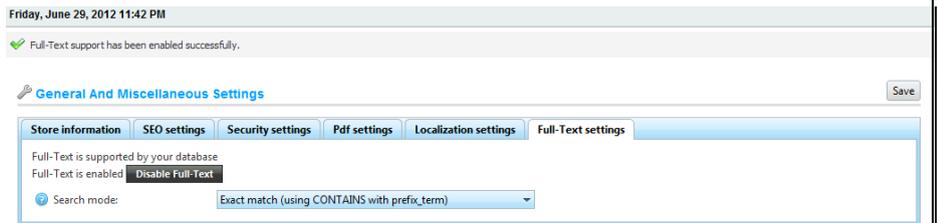
- 13 Select **Load all locales on startup** checkbox to enable all local resources to be loaded on application startup. The application startup will be slower. However, then all the pages could be open faster.

- 14 Select the **Full-Text settings** tab, as follows:



- 15 Click the **Enable Full-Text** button to enable full-text queries which perform linguistic searches against text data in full-text indexes operating on words and phrases (based on rules of a particular language such as English or Japanese). Full-text queries can include simple words and phrases or multiple forms of a word or phrase.

This option is disabled by default. When enabled, the window is expanded, as follows:



- 16 From the **Search mode** drop down list, select the required option, as follows:

- Exact match (using CONTAINS with prefix\_term)
- Using CONTAINS and OR with prefix\_term
- Using CONTAINS and AND with prefix\_term

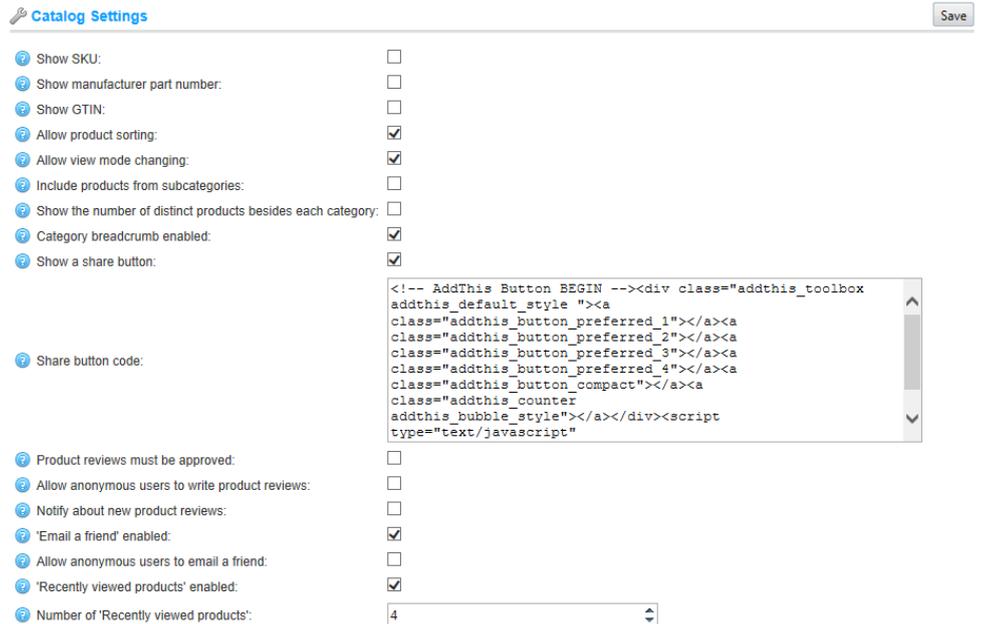
- 17 Click **Save**.

# Catalog Settings

This section describes how to set the catalog settings of your store. This includes enabling options for product sorting, changing view modes, comparing products and more.

## ► To define catalog settings:

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Settings>Catalog Settings**. The Catalog Settings window is displayed.



Setting	Value
Show SKU:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Show manufacturer part number:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Show GTIN:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Allow product sorting:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Allow view mode changing:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Include products from subcategories:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Show the number of distinct products besides each category:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Category breadcrumb enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Show a share button:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Share button code:	<pre>&lt;!-- AddThis Button BEGIN --&gt;&lt;div class="addthis_toolbox addthis_default_style "&gt;&lt;a class="addthis_button_preferred_1"&gt;&lt;/a&gt;&lt;a class="addthis_button_preferred_2"&gt;&lt;/a&gt;&lt;a class="addthis_button_preferred_3"&gt;&lt;/a&gt;&lt;a class="addthis_button_preferred_4"&gt;&lt;/a&gt;&lt;a class="addthis_button_compact"&gt;&lt;/a&gt;&lt;a class="addthis_counter addthis_bubble_style"&gt;&lt;/a&gt;&lt;/div&gt;&lt;script type="text/javascript"&gt;</pre>
Product reviews must be approved:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Allow anonymous users to write product reviews:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Notify about new product reviews:	<input type="checkbox"/>
'Email a friend' enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Allow anonymous users to email a friend:	<input type="checkbox"/>
'Recently viewed products' enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Number of 'Recently viewed products':	4

- 2 Define the catalog settings, as follows:

- Select the **Show SKU** checkbox, to display the product SKU in the public store.
- Select the **Show manufacturer part number** checkbox, to display the manufacturer part numbers in the public store.
- Select the **Allow product sorting** checkbox, to enable the product sorting option on the category and manufacturer details page.
- Select the **Allow view mode changing** checkbox, to enable changing the view mode in the Category and Manufacturers details pages.
- Select the **Include products from subcategories** checkbox, to include products from sub categories when viewing a category details page.

- Select the **Show number of distinct products beside each category** checkbox, to display the number of products besides each category in the category navigation area located in the left column in the public store.
- Select the **Category breadcrumb enabled** checkbox, to display the category breadcrumb.
- Select the **Show a share button**, to display a *share* button on the product details page. When this field is selected the **Share button code field** is displayed
- Select the **Share button code** field to display the pages button code. **AddThis** service (<http://www.addthis.com/>) is used by default.
- Select the **Product reviews must be approved** checkbox to enforce product reviews to be approved by the administrator.
- Select the **Allow anonymous users to write product reviews** checkbox to enable anonymous users to write reviews for products.
- Select the **Notify about new product reviews** checkbox to notify the store owner about new public reviews.
- Select the **'Email a friend' enabled** checkbox to enable customers to use the Email a friend option in your public store.
- Select the **Allow anonymous users to email a friend** checkbox to enable anonymous users to email a friend
- Select the **'Recently viewed products' enabled** checkbox to enable customers to use the **Recently viewed products** option in your public store.
- In the **Number of 'Recently viewed products'** field, enter the number of recently viewed products to display when the recently viewed products checkbox is enabled.
- Select the **'Recently added products' enabled** checkbox to enable customers to use the **Recently added products** option in your public store.
- In the **Number of 'Recently added products'** field, enter the number of recently added products to display when the recently added products checkbox is enabled.
- Select the **'Compare Products' enabled** checkbox to enable customer to use the **Compare Products** option in your public store.

- Select the **Show best sellers on home page** checkbox to display the best sellers on the home page.
- In the **Search page. Products per page** field enter the number of products that you want to display on the search page.
- Select the **Search autocomplete enabled** checkbox to display the autocomplete search box in the public store, as follows:



- This autocomplete search box enables performing autocomplete actions for searches entered in the search box.
- When this option is enabled the following additional fields are displayed:
  - **Number of autocomplete products to display:** Enter the number of results that will be visible in the autocomplete dropdown list of the search box in the public store when performing a search.
  - **Show product images in autocomplete box:** Select this checkbox to enable displaying product images in the autocomplete search box.
- Select the **'Products also purchased' enabled** checkbox to enable customers to view a list of products purchased by other customers who also purchased the above.
  - In the **Number of also purchased products to display** field, enter the number of products also purchased by other customers. This field is displayed when the **Products also purchased** option is enabled.
- Select the **Enable dynamic price update** checkbox, to enable a dynamic price update on the product details page for cases that a product contains product attributes with price adjustments.
- In **Number of product tags (cloud)** field, enter the number of product fields that appear in the tag cloud.

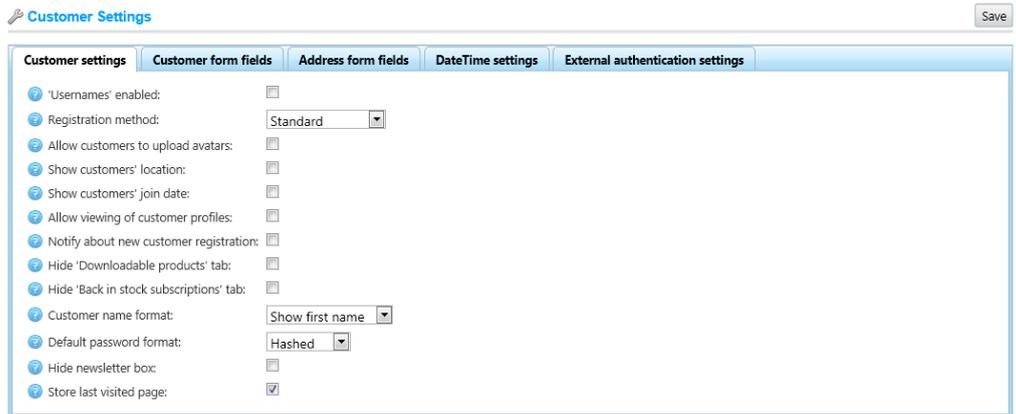
- Select the **Allow customers to select 'Products by tag' page size** to enable customers to select the Products by tag page size on the product tag page from a predefined list of options defined by the store owner. **The Page size options** field becomes visible in this case in administration area. When disabled, customers will not be able to select a page size on the product tag page and the store owner enters a certain page size. The **Page size** field becomes visible in this case in administration area.
- In the **'Products by tag' page. Products per page** field enter the number of products that you want to display on the search page.
- In the **Number of manufacturers to display** field, enter the number of manufacturers that you want to display in the manufacturer navigation block.
- Select the **Include short description in compare products** checkbox to display short product descriptions on the compare products page.
- Select the **Include full description in compare products** checkbox to display full product descriptions on the compare products page.
- Select the **Ignore discounts (sitewide)** checkbox to ignore discounts throughout the site (can improve performance significantly).
- Select the **Featured products (sitewide)** checkbox to ignore featured products throughout the site (can improve performance significantly).

# Customer Settings

This section describes how to set the customer settings of your store. This includes enabling customers to upload avatars, showing customers locations, name formats, joining dates and more.

► **To define customer settings:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Settings>Customer Settings**. The **Customer Settings** window is displayed, showing the **Customer Settings** tab, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Customer Settings' window with the following settings:

Setting	Value
'Usernames' enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registration method:	Standard
Allow customers to upload avatars:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Show customers' location:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Show customers' join date:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Allow viewing of customer profiles:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Notify about new customer registration:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Hide 'Downloadable products' tab:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Hide 'Back in stock subscriptions' tab:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Customer name format:	Show first name
Default password format:	Hashed
Hide newsletter box:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Store last visited page:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

- 2 Define the customer settings, as follows:

- Select the **'Usernames' enabled** checkbox to enable using usernames for login and registration instead of emails. It is not recommended to change the option in the Product environment. When this option is selected, the following options are displayed:
  - **Allow customers to change their usernames:** Select this option to enable customers to change their usernames.

- **Allow customers to check the availability of usernames:** Select this option to enable customers to check the username availability before clicking the **Save** button on the **My Account -Customer Info** page. The **Check Availability** button is displayed, see example **My Account -Customer Info** page, below.

- From the **Registration method dropdown** list, select the required registration method, as follows:
  - **Standard:** Select this option to enable visitors to register and no approval is required.
  - **Email Validation:** Select this option to enable users to register. However, they must accept the confirmation email sent to them before their account is approved.
  - **Admin Approval:** Select this option to enable visitors to register. However, approval by the administrator is required.
  - **Disabled:** Select this option to disable registration.
- Select the **Allow customers to upload avatars** checkbox to enable customers to upload avatars. The customer avatars will be shown in the store under, news and blog comments, forums and more.
- Select the **Default avatar enabled** checkbox, to display the default user avatar.
- Select the **Show customers location** checkbox to show the customers location.
- Select the **Show customers join date** checkbox to show the customers join date.
- Select the **Allow viewing customer profiles** checkbox to enable viewing customer profiles.
- Select the **Notify about new customer registration** checkbox to notify the store owner when a new customer has registered.

- Select the **Hide ‘Downloadable products’ tab** checkbox to hide the Hide ‘Downloadable products’ tab on the My Account page.
- From the **Customer name format** dropdown list, select the required customer name format, as follows:
  - Show Emails
  - Show Usernames
  - Show Full Names
  - Show First Name
- The customer name will be shown in the store under, news and blog comments, forums and more.
- From the **Default Password format** dropdown list, select the required Default password format, as follows:
  - Clear
  - Hashed
  - Encrypted

*Note: This setting is for storing the customer's password and will be applied only to newly registered customers.*

- 3 Select the **Hide newsletter box checkbox** if you do **not** want to display the newsletter subscription box.
- 4 Select the **Store last visited page** checkbox to enable the last visited page to be stored. It is used only on the online customers page

*Note: You can uncheck this checkbox to improve performance.*

- 5 Select the **Customer form fields** tab, which enables a store owner to manage the customer form fields available during registration below as follows:

**Customer Settings** Save

**Customer settings** **Customer form fields** **Address form fields** **Date/Time settings** **External authentication settings**

You can create and manage the customer form fields available during registration below.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 'Gender' enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 'Date of Birth' enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 'Company' enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> 'Company' required:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> 'Street address' enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> 'Street address 2' enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> 'Zip / postal code' enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> 'City' enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> 'Country' enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> 'Phone number' enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> 'Fax number' enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> 'Accept privacy policy' enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 'Newsletter' enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

- 6 Define the whether the following form fields are enabled in the system:
- Select the **'Gender' enabled** checkbox if the gender is enabled.
  - Select the **'Date of Birth' enabled** checkbox if the date of birth is enabled.
  - Select the **'Company' enabled** checkbox if the company is enabled.
  - Select the **'Company' required** checkbox if the company is required.
  - Select the **'Street address enabled** checkbox if the first street address is enabled.
  - Select the **'Street address 2 enabled** checkbox if the second street address is enabled.
  - Select the **'Zip/postal code' enabled** checkbox if the zip/postal code is enabled.
  - Select the **'City' enabled** checkbox if the city code is enabled.
  - Select the **'Country enabled** checkbox if the city code is enabled
  - Select the **'State/province' enabled** checkbox if the state/province is enabled.

*Note: This field is visible only when the **Country enabled** checkbox is selected.*

- Select the **‘Phone number’ enabled** checkbox if the phone number is enabled.
- Select the **‘Fax number’ enabled** checkbox if the fax number is enabled.
- Select the **Accept Privacy policy enabled** checkbox to request customers to accept the privacy policy during registration
- Select the **‘Newsletter’ enabled** checkbox if the newsletter is enabled.

*Note: When each of these form fields are selected (apart from **Gender** and **Date of Birth**) an additional field is displayed enabling you to define whether each form field is required. For example:*

*When selecting the **Company enabled** form field the **Company required** checkbox is displayed enabling you to define whether the company name is required during registration or not.*

- 7 Select the **Address form fields** tab, which enables a store owner to manage the address form fields available during registration below as follows:

- 8 For a description of all the fields, refer to **Customer form fields** tab, described on page 142.

- 9 Select the **Date Time Settings** tab, as follows:

10 Define the date and time settings, as follows:

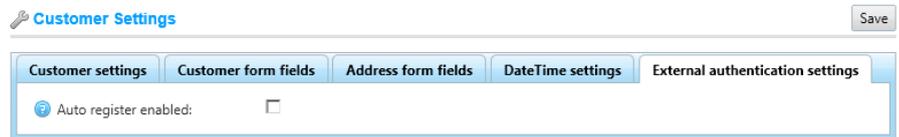
- Select the **Allow customers to select time zone** checkbox to enable customers to select the time zone in the public store on the accounts page. Otherwise, the default time zone is used.

*Note: Only when option is enabled, the time zone can be set on the Customer Accounts pages in the public store.*

- From the **Default store time zone dropdown** list, select the default time zone.

*Note: The current time zone is displayed automatically.*

11 Select the **External authentication settings** tab, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Customer Settings' interface. At the top left is a key icon and the text 'Customer Settings'. At the top right is a 'Save' button. Below this is a horizontal tab bar with five tabs: 'Customer settings', 'Customer form fields', 'Address form fields', 'DateTime settings', and 'External authentication settings'. The 'External authentication settings' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a section titled 'Auto register enabled:' with an unchecked checkbox.

12 Select the **Auto register enabled** checkbox to enable auto registration when using external authentication methods. Refer to the **External Authentication Methods** section, for further details, as described on page 241.

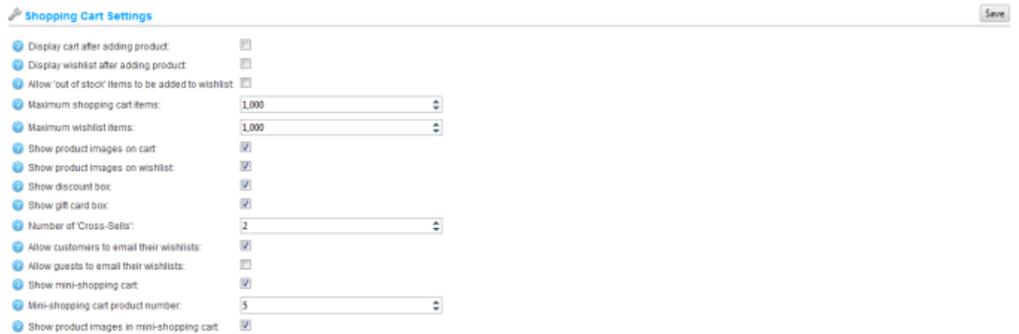
13 Click **Save**.

# Shopping Cart Settings

This section describes how to set the shopping cart settings of your store. This includes defining the maximum number of shopping cart items allowed, the maximum wishlist items and more.

► **To define shopping cart settings:**

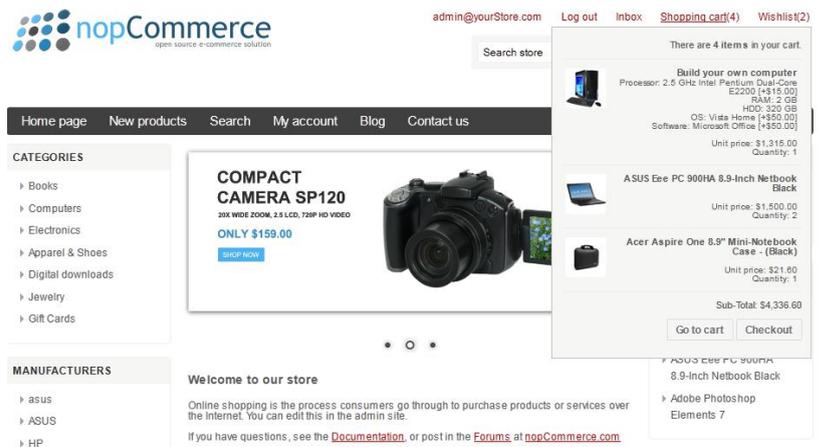
- 1 From the Configuration menu, select Settings>Shopping Cart Settings. The Shopping Cart Settings window is displayed.



- 2 Define the shopping cart settings, as follows:

- Select the **Display cart after adding product** checkbox to the display the Shopping Cart page immediately after a product has been added to their cart. When this checkbox is unchecked, the customer will remain on the page where the product is added to the cart.
- Select the **Display wishlist after adding product** checkbox to the display the Wishlist page immediately after a product has been added to their wishlist. When this checkbox is unchecked, the customer will remain on the page where the product is added to the wishlist.
- Select the **Allow out of stock items to be added to the wishlist** checkbox to enable adding items that are no longer in stock to the wishlist.
- In the **Maximum shopping cart items** field, enter the maximum number of different products allowed to add to the shopping cart.
- In the **Maximum wishlist items** field, enter the maximum number of different products allowed to add to the wishlist.
- Select the **Show product images on cart** checkbox to display product images in your store shopping cart.
- Select the **Show product images on wishlist** checkbox to display product images on customer wishlists.
- Select the **Show discount box** checkbox, to display the discount coupon box on the shopping cart page.

- Select the **Show gift card** checkbox, to display the gift card coupon box, on the shopping cart page.
- In the **Number of Cross-Sells** field, enter the number of cross-sell products that you want to display on the checkout page of the shopping cart in the public store. Enter a value of 0, if you do not want to display cross-sells.
- Select the **Allow customers to email their wishlist** checkbox, to enable customers to email their wishlist to friends. When this field is enabled the following field is displayed:
  - **Allow guests to email their wishlist:** Select this checkbox to enable guests to email their wishlist to friends.
- Select the '**Show mini-shopping cart**' checkbox to display a mini-shopping cart in your store. The following **mini shopping cart** drop down menu, appears at the top left hand corner of the main window, when hovering over **the Shopping Cart** link (marked in red), as shown below.



When this field is selected the following fields are displayed:

- **Mini Shopping cart product number:** Enter the maximum number of products to display in the **mini shopping cart** drop down menu, in the public store (see **mini shopping cart** drop down menu above).
- **Show product images in mini shopping cart:** Select this checkbox to determine whether images are displayed in the **mini shopping cart** drop down menu, in the public store (see **mini shopping cart** drop down menu above).

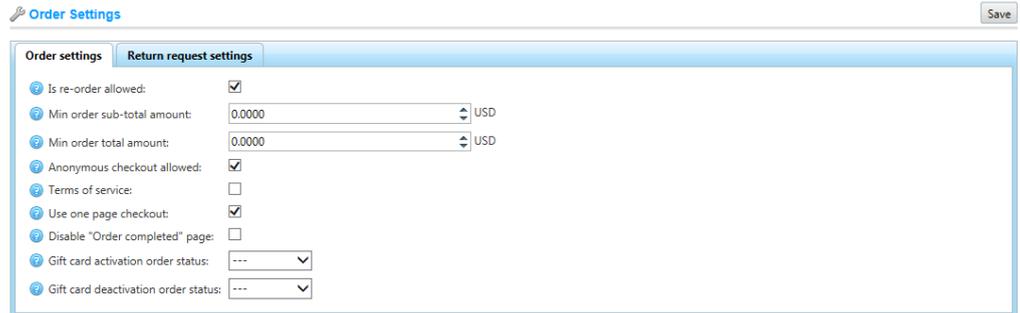
### 3 Click Save.

# Order Settings

This section describes how to set the order details of your store. This includes the minimum order total amount, enabling re-ordering, return request settings and more.

► **To define the order settings:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Settings>Order Settings**. The **Order Settings** window is displayed, showing the **Order Settings** tab.



The screenshot shows the 'Order Settings' window with the following configuration:

- Is re-order allowed:
- Min order sub-total amount: 0.0000 USD
- Min order total amount: 0.0000 USD
- Anonymous checkout allowed:
- Terms of service:
- Use one page checkout:
- Disable "Order completed" page:
- Gift card activation order status: ---
- Gift card deactivation order status: ---

- 2 Define the order settings as follows:

- Select the **'Is re-Order' allowed** checkbox to enable customers to re-order. The re-order mechanism causes all items that were in a previous order to be automatically added to the shopping cart.
- In the **Min order sub-total amount** field, enter the minimum order sub-total amount. Orders under this amount will not be issued.
- In the **Min order total amount** field, enter the minimum order total amount. Orders under this amount will not be issued.
- Select the **Anonymous checkout allowed** checkbox to enable anonymous checkout. Meaning, customers are not required to enter a login when purchasing products.
- Select the **Terms of service** checkbox to force the customer to accept or decline the terms of service before processing the order.
- Select the **Use one page checkout** checkbox to enable using one page checkout, which is a single web page your customers can use to buy a product or service from you.
- Select the **Disable Order completed** page to order redirect a customer to the order details page when he places an order instead of showing a 'Thank you' order completed page.

- From the **Gift card activation order status** drop down list, select the status that the gift cards are activated for, as follows:
  - Pending
  - Processing
  - Complete
  - Cancelled

*Note: Selecting --- enables manual activation.*

- From the **Gift card deactivation order status** drop down list, select the status that the gift cards are deactivated for, as follows:
  - Pending
  - Processing
  - Complete
  - Cancelled

*Note: Selecting --- enables manual deactivation.*

- In the **Order ID** field, set the order ID counter. This is useful if you want your orders to start at a certain number. This only affects orders created going forward and the value must be greater than the current maximum order ID.

3 Select the **Return request settings** tab, as follows:

Order Settings Save

Order settings **Return request settings**

The returns system will allow your customers to request a return on items they've purchased. These are also known as RMA requests.

NOTE: This option is available for completed orders.

Enable Returns System:

Number of days that the return request is available:

Return reasons:

Return actions:

4 Define the Return request settings, as follows:

- Select the **Enable Returns System** checkbox to enable your customers to submit return requests for purchased items.
- In the **Number of days that the return request is available** field, enter the number of days that the return request link will be available in the customer area. For example, if the store owner allows returns within 30 days after purchase, this field will be set to 30. When the customer logs into the website and looks at My Account, any orders completed more than 30 days ago will not show a Return Request button.
- In the **Return reasons** field, enter a list of reasons (separated by commas) that the customer can choose from when submitting a return request.
- In the **Return action** field, enter a list of actions (separated by commas) that the customer can choose from when submitting a return request.

*Note: For further information, refer to [Return Requests](#).*

## Media Settings

This section describes how to set the media details of your store. This includes defining product, variant and avatar image sizes and more.

► **To define the media settings:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Settings>Media Settings**. The **Media Settings** window is displayed:

Setting	Value
Pictures are stored into...:	database <input type="button" value="Change"/>
Avatar image size:	85
Product thumbnail image size (catalog):	125
Product detail image size:	300
Product thumbnail image size (product page):	70
Associated product image size:	125
Category thumbnail image size:	125
Manufacturer thumbnail image size:	125
Cart/Wishlist thumbnail image size:	80
Mini-shopping cart thumbnail image size:	47
Maximum image size:	1,280

2 Define the media settings, as follows:

- Click the **Change** button besides the **Pictures are stored into** option to toggle between database or file system.

*Note: It is recommended to make a backup of the database before clicking the **Change** button.*

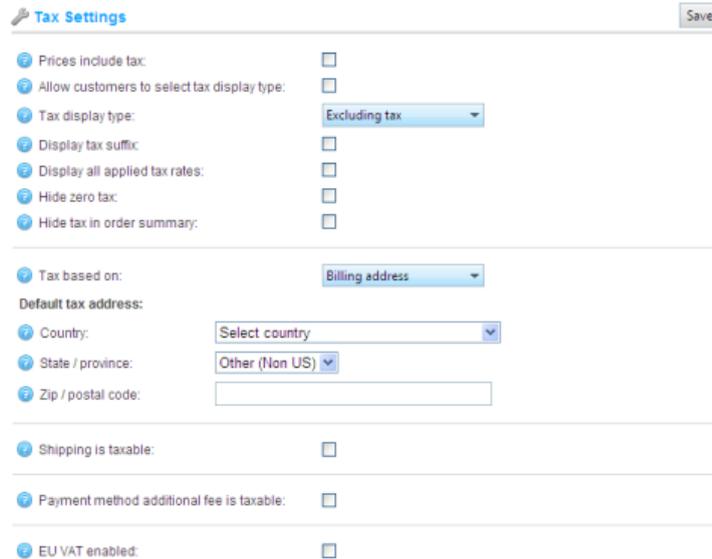
- In the **Avatar image size** field, enter the default size for avatar images.
- In the **Product thumbnail image (catalog)** field, enter the default size for the product thumbnail images displayed on category or manufacturer pages (pixels).
- In the **Product detail image size** field, enter the default size for the product detail images (pixels).
- In the **Product thumbnail image size (product pages)** field, enter the default size for the product thumbnail images (pixels) displayed on the product details page (used when you have more than one product image).
- In the **Associated product detail image** field, enter the default size for the associated product images (pixels). Associated products are part of grouped products.
- In the **Category thumbnail image** field, enter the default size for the product thumbnail images on the category pages (pixels).
- In the **Manufacturer thumbnail image size** field, enter the default size for the product thumbnail images on the manufacturer pages (pixels).
- In the **Cart/Wishlist thumbnail image size** field, enter the default size for product thumbnail images on the shopping cart and wishlist (pixels).
- In the **Mini-shopping cart thumbnail image size** field, enter the default size (pixels) of the product thumbnail images displayed in the mini-shopping cart block.
- In the **Maximum image size** field, enter the maximum image size (meaning, the longest side) allowed for image upload (pixels).

# Tax Settings

This section describes how to set the tax details of your store. This includes defining prices including or excluding tax, defining the tax display type and more.

► **To define the tax settings:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Settings>Tax Settings**. The **Tax Settings** window is displayed:



- 2 Define the tax settings, as follows:

- Select the **Prices include tax** checkbox to indicate entered prices include tax.
- Select the **Allow customers to select tax display type** checkbox to indicate whether customers are allowed to selected the tax display type. When unchecked the following dropdown list is displayed:
  - **Excluding tax:** Select to enforce excluding tax.
  - **Including tax:** Select to enforce including tax.
- Select the **Display tax suffix** checkbox to display the tax suffix (incl. tax\excl. tax).
- Select the **Display all applied tax rates** checkbox to display all applied tax rates on a separate line in the shopping cart page.
- Select the **Hide zero tax** checkbox, to hide the zero tax value in the order summary.
- Select the **Hide tax in order summary** checkbox, to hide the tax value in the order summary when prices **are shown as tax inclusive**.

- From the **Tax based on** dropdown list, select the required option on which the tax is based on, as follows:
  - **Billing Address.** When this option is selected, tax is based on the customer billing address. If the billing address is unknown, the default address is used (entered below)
  - **Shipping Address.** When this option is selected, tax is based on customer shipping address. If the shipping address is unknown, the default address is used (entered below)
  - **Default Address.** When this option is selected, tax is based on the default address that is entered below
- Define the default tax address, as follows:
  - From the **Country** dropdown list, select the country.
  - From the **State/Province** dropdown list, select the state or province.
  - In the **Zip / Postal code** field, enter the required zip or postal code.
- Select the **Shipping is taxable** checkbox to indicate the shipping is taxable. The following fields are then displayed:
  - **Shipping price includes tax:** Select to indicate the shipping price includes tax.
  - **Shipping tax class:** Select the required tax class used for the shipping tax calculation.
- Select the **Payment method additional fee is taxable** checkbox to indicate the payment method additional fee is taxable. The following options are then displayed
  - **Payment method additional fee includes tax:** Select to indicate the Payment method additional fee is taxable.
  - **Payment method additional fee tax class:** From the dropdown list, select the required tax class used for the Payment method additional fee tax calculation.
- Select the **EU VAT enabled** checkbox to indicate European Union Value Added Tax is enabled. When this option is selected, customers will be requested for the Company VAT number during registration or on the customer account details page. This VAT number could be automatically validated through a web service, if the Use web service checkbox is checked, or manually on the customer details page in the administration area by the store owner.
  - **Your shop country:** From the dropdown list, select the country where your store is located.

- **Allow VAT exemption:** Select this checkbox to exempt eligible VAT registered customers from VAT.
- **Use web service:** Select this checkbox to use the WEB service to validate VAT numbers.
- **Notify admin when a new VAT number is submitted:** Select this checkbox to receive a notification by email, when a new VAT number is submitted.

*Note: If VAT is enabled, then it charges 0% tax to those shipping outside the EU and 0% to those who have supplied a validated and approved VAT number and are shipping within the EU but outside the shop country. Refer to [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/European\\_Union\\_Value\\_Added\\_Tax](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/European_Union_Value_Added_Tax) for further information about EU VAT*

3 Click **Save**.

## Shipping Settings

This section describes how to set the shipping details of your store. This includes defining free shipping over a certain amount and more.

### ► To define the shipping settings:

1 From the Configuration menu, select Settings>Shipping Settings. The Shipping Settings window is displayed.

2 Define the shipping settings, as follows:

- Select the **Free shipping over 'x'** checkbox to enable free shipping for all orders over X. The following field is then displayed, enabling you to define the value of X:
  - In the **Value of X** field, enter the value over which all orders with a total greater than this value will qualify for free shipping.
  - Check **Calculate 'X'** including tax if you want to calculate Value of X including tax. If it is not checked, then the value will be calculated excluding tax.

- 3 Select the **Estimate shipping enabled** checkbox to enable customers to get a shipping estimate from the shopping cart page.
- 4 Select the **Display shipment events** checkbox to enable customers to view shipment events on their shipment details page.

*Note: This feature is currently supported only by the UPS and FedEx plugins.*

- 5 Perform the following to view the **Estimate shipping** box in the public store:

- Access the public store
- Add a product to your cart
- Select Shopping Cart. The Estimate shipping box is displayed, as shown below:

The screenshot shows a shopping cart interface. At the top, there are navigation links: Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, and Contact us. Below these are status indicators for Cart (green), Address, Shipping, Payment, Confirm, and Complete. The main section is titled 'Shopping cart' and contains a table of items:

Remove	Product(s)	Price	Qty.	Total
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black)	\$21.60	1	\$21.60
<input type="checkbox"/>	ASUS Eee PC 900HA 8.9-Inch Netbook Black	\$1,500.00	2	\$3,000.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Build your own computer Processor: 2.5 GHz Intel Pentium Dual-Core E2200 [+(\$15.00)] RAM: 2 GB HDD: 320 GB OS: Vista Home [+(\$50.00)] Software: Microsoft Office [+(\$50.00)]	\$1,315.00	1	\$1,315.00

Below the table are buttons for 'Update shopping cart' and 'Continue shopping'. On the left, there are fields for 'Discount Code' and 'Gift Cards'. On the right, there is a summary: Sub-Total: \$4,336.60, Shipping: \$0.00, Tax: \$0.00, Total: \$4,336.60, and a 'Checkout' button. A red box highlights the 'Estimate shipping' section, which includes a form to enter destination details: Country (United States), State/province (New York), and Zip/postal code (10021). Below this form are shipping options: 'In-Store Pickup (\$0.00)', 'By Ground (\$0.00)', and 'By Air (\$0.00)'.

- Define the shipping origin details, as follows:
  - From the **Country dropdown** list, select the country.
  - From the **State/Province** dropdown list, select the state or province.
  - In the **Zip / Postal** code field, enter the required zip or postal code.

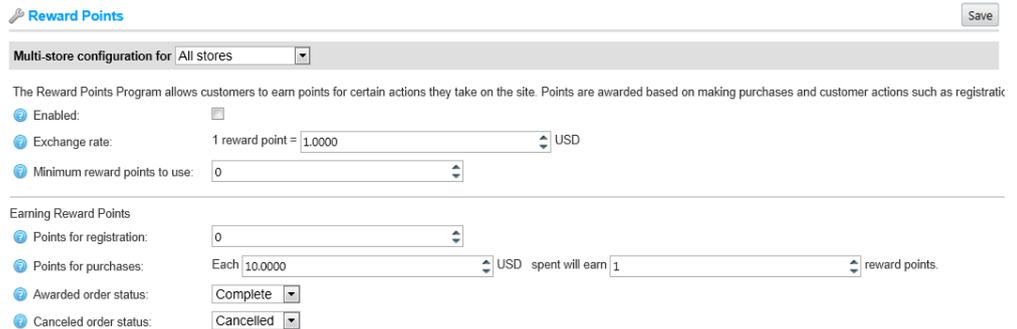
- 6 Click **Save**.

# Reward Points

This section describes how to set the reward point details of your store. This includes defining the exchange rate, the settings for earning reward points and more.

► **To define the reward points settings:**

- 1 From the Configuration menu, select Settings>Reward Points Settings.  
The Reward Points window is displayed:



**Reward Points** Save

Multi-store configuration for All stores

The Reward Points Program allows customers to earn points for certain actions they take on the site. Points are awarded based on making purchases and customer actions such as registration.

**Reward Points Program**

- Enabled:
- Exchange rate: 1 reward point = 1,0000 USD
- Minimum reward points to use: 0

**Earning Reward Points**

- Points for registration: 0
- Points for purchases: Each 10,0000 USD spent will earn 1 reward points.
- Awarded order status: Complete
- Canceled order status: Cancelled

- 2 Define the reward point settings, as follows:

- Select the **Enabled** checkbox to enable the reward points program.
- In the **Exchange** rate field, specify the reward points exchange rate.
- In the **Minimum reward point to use** field, enter the minimum amount of rewards points required, before the customer can use their reward point. Enter **0**, if you do not to define this setting.
- In the **Points for registration** field, specify the number of points rewarded for customer registration.
- In the **Points for purchases** field, specify the number of points awarded for purchases.
- From the **Awarded order status** drop down list, select the status that the points are awarded for, as follows:
  - Pending
  - Processing
  - Complete
  - Cancelled

- From the **Canceled order status drop down** list, select the status for which the points are cancelled, as follows:
  - Pending
  - Processing
  - Complete
  - Cancelled

*Note: for additional information, about the reward points program, refer to the **Reward Points** section described on page 39*

- 3 Click **Save**.

## Blog Settings

This section describes how to define the blog settings of your store. This includes, enabling blogs, defining number of posts per page and more.

### ► To define the blog settings:

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Settings>Blog Settings**. The **Blog Settings** window is displayed:

Setting	Value
Blog enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Posts page size:	10
Allow not registered users to leave comments:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Notify about new blog comments:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Number of tags (cloud):	15
Display blog RSS feed link in the browser address bar:	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 2 Define the blog settings, as follows:

- Select the **Blog Enabled** checkbox to enable the blog in your store.
- In the **Posts page size** field, set the number of posts per page.
- Select the **Allow not registered users to leave comments** checkbox, to enable non registered users to add comments to the blog.
- Select the **Notify about new blog comments** checkbox, to notify the store owner about new blog comments.
- In the **Number of tags (cloud)** field, enter the number of tags (cloud) that appear in the tag cloud.
- Select the **Display blog RSS feed link in the browser address bar** checkbox to show the blog RSS feed link in the browser address bar.

- 3 Click **Save**.

# News Settings

This section describes how to define the news settings of your store. This includes, enabling news, defining number of news post per page and more.

► **To define the news settings:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Settings>News Settings**. The **News Settings** window is displayed:

News Settings		Save
News enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Allow not registered users to leave comments:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Notify about new news comments:	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Show on home page:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Number of items to display:	3	
News archive page size:	10	
Display news RSS feed link in the browser address bar:	<input type="checkbox"/>	

- 2 Define the news settings, as follows:

- Select the **News Enabled** checkbox to enable news items in your store.
- Select the **Allow not registered users to leave comments** checkbox, to enable non registered users to add comments to the news items.
- Select the **Notify about new news comments** checkbox, to notify the store owner about new news comments.
- Select the **Show on home page** checkbox, to display the news item on your store homepage.
- In the **Number of items to display** field, enter the number of news items to display on your home page.
- In the **News archive page size** field, set the number of news items to display per page.
- Select the **Display news RSS feed link in the browser address bar** checkbox to show the news RSS feed link in the browser address bar.

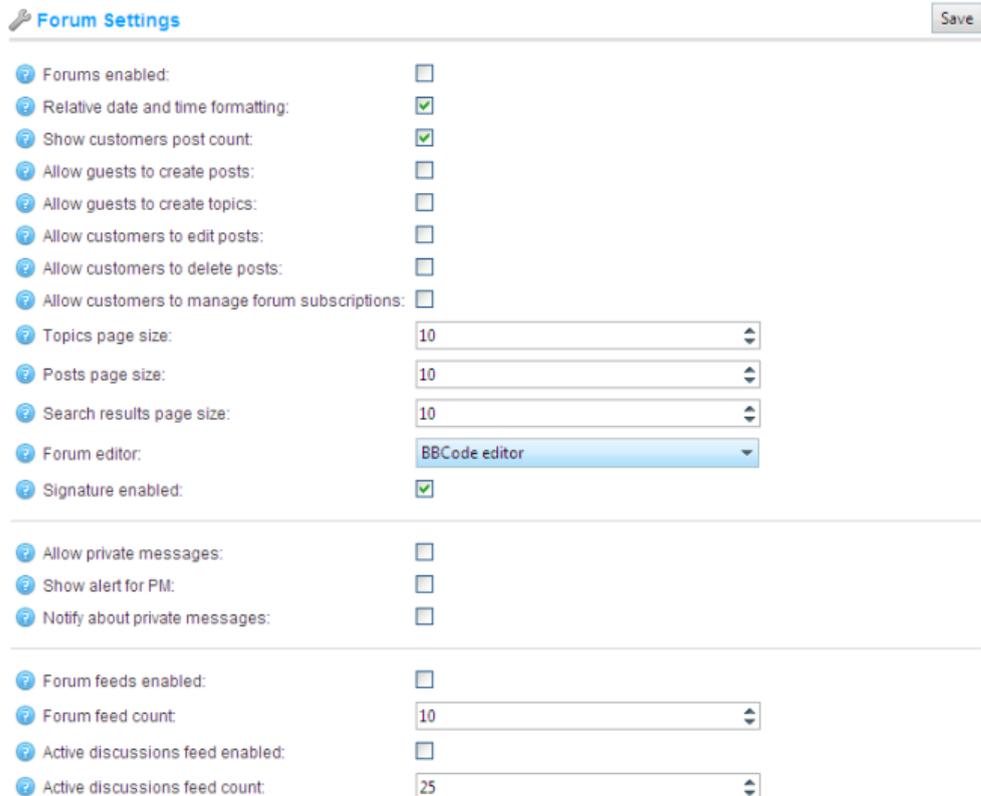
- 3 Click **Save**.

# Forum Settings

This section describes how to define the forum settings of your store. This includes, enabling forums, defining number of posts and topics per page and more.

► **To define the forum settings:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Settings>Forum Settings**. The **Forum Settings** window is displayed:



Forums enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Relative date and time formatting:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Show customers post count:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Allow guests to create posts:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Allow guests to create topics:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Allow customers to edit posts:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Allow customers to delete posts:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Allow customers to manage forum subscriptions:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Topics page size:	10
Posts page size:	10
Search results page size:	10
Forum editor:	BBCode editor
Signature enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<hr/>	
Allow private messages:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Show alert for PM:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Notify about private messages:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<hr/>	
Forum feeds enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Forum feed count:	10
Active discussions feed enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Active discussions feed count:	25

- 2 Define the forum settings, as follows:

- Select the **Forums Enabled** checkbox to enable forums your store.
- Select the **Relative date and time formatting** checkbox, to enable relative date and time formatting.
- Select the **Show customers post count** checkbox, to enable showing the customers posts count.
- Select the **Allows guests to create posts** checkbox, to enable your guests to create posts.
- Select the **Allows guests to create topics** checkbox, to enable your guests to create topics.

- Select the **Allows customers to edit posts** checkbox, to enable your customers to edit posts.
- Select the **Allows customers to delete posts** checkbox, to enable your customers to delete posts.
- Select the **Allow customers to manage forum subscriptions** checkbox, to enable customers to edit forum subscriptions.
- In the **Topics page size** field, set the page size for topics in forums.
- In the **Posts page size** field, set the page size for posts in topics.
- In the **Search results page size** field, set the page size for search results.
- From the **Forum Editor** dropdown list, select the forum editor type to use:
  - Simple Textbox
  - BBCode Editor
- Select the **Signature enabled** checkbox, to enable customers to specify signatures.
- Select the **Allow private messages** checkbox, to enable private messages in the system.
- Select the **Show alert for PM** checkbox to show an alert for new private messages.
- Select the **Notify about private messages** checkbox, to notify a customer about a new private message.
- Select the **Forum feeds enabled** checkbox, to enable RSS feeds for each forum.
- In the **Forum feed count** field, set the number of topics to be included in each feed.
- Select the **Active discussions** feed enabled checkbox, to enable RSS feeds for active discussion topics.

# Configuring the Default Store Settings

By default nopcommerce installation has only one store created which needs to be configured, as described below.

► **To setup the default store:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu select **Stores**. The **Stores** window is displayed.

Store name	Store URL	Display order	Edit
Your store name	http://www.yourStore.com/	1	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Some second store	http://www.store2.com/	10	<a href="#">Edit</a>

*Note: By default only one store is created.*

- 2 Click **Edit** beside a default store to configure
- 3 Configure your store, as follows:
  - In the **Store name** field, enter the name of your store.
  - In the **Store URL** field, enter the URL of your store.
  - Select the **SSL enabled** checkbox if your store is SSL secured. SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) is the standard security technology for establishing an encrypted link between a web server and a browser. This link ensures that all data passed between the web server and browsers remain private and integral. SSL is an industry standard and is used by millions of websites in the protection of their online transactions with their customers.

*Important Note: Check this option only after you have installed the SSL certificate on your server. Otherwise, you won't be able to access your site and will have to manually edit the appropriate record in your database ([Store] table).*

The **HOST values** field required only when you have a multi-store solution to determine the current store.

For further details, refer to [Multi-store Support](#) in the following section.

# Multi-store Support

The Multi-store feature enables you to run more than one store from a single nopCommerce installation.

This enables you to host more than one front-end store on different domains and manage all admin operations from your single **Administration** panel. You can share catalog data between stores, have a product in more than one store for example, and your customers can login to all of your stores using the same credentials.

This example describes the setup of two sample stores, as follows:

- www.store1.com
- www.store2.com

## Setting Up Multi-stores

### ▶ To setup multi-stores:

- 1 Upload and install the site on **www.store1.com**. This is the only place where nopCommerce files and DLLs are stored.
- 2 From the control panel of **www.store2.com** (Meaning, your hosting control panel, not nopCommerce Administration area) ensure that all requests to **www.store2.com** are forwarded (not redirected) to **www.store1.com**. Perform this using **CNAME** records. **This step is crucial.**
- 3 From the control panel of **www.store1.com**, configure a domain alias for **www.store2.com**. This step could be complicated for some users (your administrator can perform this step if you have issues).

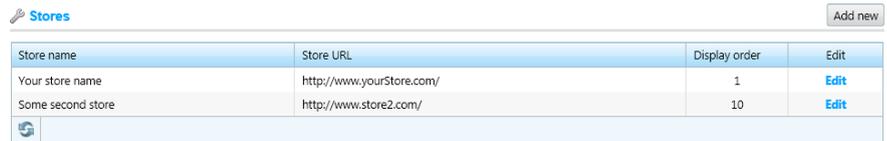
After completing the steps above, when accessing **www.store2.com** from your browser, the content of **www.store1.com** will be displayed.

**Optional (sample):** This step can be performed from the Plesk control panel below, as follows:

- When **www.store2.com** is redirected to **www.store1.com**, the web server for Plesk does not know how to display **www.store2.com** since it uses **Name-Based Virtual Hosting**. Therefore, you must create a domain alias for **www.store2.com**, as described below:
  - Log in to the domain panel of **www.store1.com**, either directly or via the **Open in Control Panel** link from the server administration panel.
  - From the **Websites & Domains** tab, select the **Add New Domain Alias** link near the bottom of the tab.
  - Enter the full alias. For example - **store2.com**.

- Ensure the **Web service** option is selected.
- The **Mail service** is optional. Check this option if you want mail from **www.store2.com** to redirect in a similar way.
- Ensure the Synchronize DNS zone with the primary domain option is unchecked.

4 From the **Configuration** menu select **Stores**. The **Stores** window is displayed.



Store name	Store URL	Display order	Edit
Your store name	http://www.yourStore.com/	1	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Some second store	http://www.store2.com/	10	<a href="#">Edit</a>

*Note: By default only one store is created.*

5 Click **Edit** beside a store to configure

6 Configure your store, as follows:

- In the **Store name** field, enter the name of your store.
- In the **Store URL** field, enter the URL of your store.
- Select the **SSL enabled** checkbox if your store is SSL secured. SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) is the standard security technology for establishing an encrypted link between a web server and a browser. This link ensures that all data passed between the web server and browsers remain private and integral. SSL is an industry standard and is used by millions of websites in the protection of their online transactions with their customers.

***Important Note:** Check this option only after you have installed the SSL certificate on your server. Otherwise, you won't be able to access your site and will have to manually edit the appropriate record in your database ([Store] table).*

- In the **HOST values** field, enter the possible host values, the comma separating the list of possible **HTTP\_POST values**. For example, enter **store1.com,www.store1.com** for the first store and **store2.com,www.store2.com** for the second store.

*Note: This field is required only when you have a multi-store solution to determine the current store.*

*This field enables distinguishing requests to distinct URLs and determines the current store.*

*You can also see the current HTTP\_POST value by selecting **System Information** from the **System** menu.*

The two stores have now been configured using a single nopCommerce installation, as follows:

- www.store1.com
- www.store2.com

*Note: The Multi-store solution (distinction of stores by HTTP HOST) does not work for sites in virtual categories on the same domain.*

*For example, you cannot have one store on <http://www.site.com/store1> and the second store on <http://www.site.com/store2>, since the HTTP HOST value for both of these sites is the same ([www.site.com](http://www.site.com)).*

## Configuring Entities and Settings Per Store

Once the stores have been setup and configured, you can then define your entities for each store from the **Stores** tab on the details page for each of the following (and more):

- Products
- Categories
- Manufacturers
- Languages
- Currencies
- Message templates
- Blogs
- News

Different themes can also be configured for different stores.

An example is shown in the **Edit Product Details** screen below:

Product Info | SEO | Product variants | Category mappings | Manufacturer mappings | Related products | Cross-sells | Pictures | Specification attributes | Access control list | Stores

Limited to stores:

Stores:  First Store  Second Store

From this screen you can either make an entity available to all stores or make it restricted to a selected store. In addition, you can override any setting value per store, as shown in the example, **Catalog Settings** screen below:

Catalog Settings Save

Multi-store configuration for First Store

Check/uncheck all (check boxes if you want to set a custom value for this shop)

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show SKU:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show manufacturer part number:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Show GTIN:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Allow product sorting:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Allow view mode changing:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Include products from subcategories:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show the number of distinct products besides each category:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include subcategories (number of distinct products):	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Category breadcrumb enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Show a share button:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

*Note: This multi-store configuration screen is visible only when you have created two stores at least.*

# Multi-vendor Support

Multi-vendor and drop shipping support enables you to sell online without having to stock inventory or ship orders. When drop shipping is enabled, each product is assigned to a particular vendor whose details (including email address) are stored.

When an order is placed an email is sent to the vendor of each product in the order. The email includes the products, quantities, etc. The vendor then ships the item to the customer on behalf of the merchant, who typically pays each of their vendors at the end of the month.

Products from multiple independent vendors appear in the common product catalog and your website visitors can shop at one web store even if your products are supplied by hundreds of different vendors from all over the world.

Each vendor could be provided with an administrator panel access to manage their products, review sales reports and order details regarding their products. Vendors do not interfere with each other's activity.

The money goes to the merchant account of the store administrator who then manually distributes funds among the vendors according to the history of orders, which is tracked and managed separately for each provider. In this manner, the customer only sees one charge from the main company.

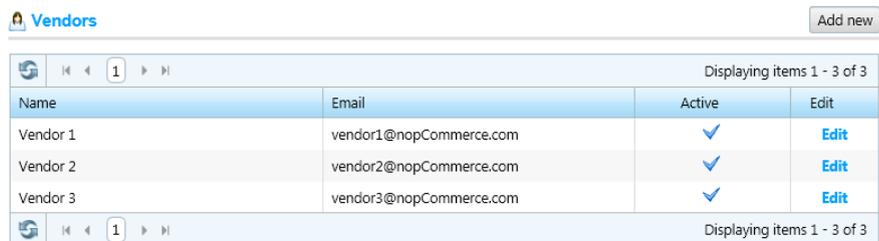
## Setting up a Vendor Account

The following procedure describes how to setup and provide a vendor record with access to the vendor portal site.

### Step 1: Setup a Vendor Account

► To setup a vendor account :

- 1 From the **Customers** menu select **Vendors**. The **Vendors** window is displayed.



**Vendors** Add new

Name	Email	Active	Edit
Vendor 1	vendor1@nopCommerce.com	✓	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Vendor 2	vendor2@nopCommerce.com	✓	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Vendor 3	vendor3@nopCommerce.com	✓	<a href="#">Edit</a>

2 Click **Add New**. The **Add a New Vendor** window is displayed.

[Add A New Vendor](#) (back to vendor list) Save Save and Continue Edit

Name:

Email:

Description:

Admin comment:

Active:

3 Define the vendors details, as follows:

- In the **Name** field, enter the name of the vendor.
- In the **Email** field, enter the vendor's email. He could receive “order placed” notifications to this email (the appropriate message template is disabled by default).
- In the **Description** field, enter a description for the vendor.
- In the **Admin comment** field, enter an optional comment or information for internal use.
- Ensure the **Active** checkbox is selected to activate the vendor.

## Step 2: Assigning a Vendor to a Customer Record

This step is optional and is required only if you want your vendor to be able to login to his administration portal and manage products, orders, etc.

If you do not want vendors to have access to your site, ignore this step to enable the store owner manage all vendor mappings

### ► To register a vendor:

- 1 From the **Customers** menu select **Customers**. The **Customers** window is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Customers' management interface. At the top, there are buttons for 'Add new', 'Export to XML (all)', 'Export to XML (selected)', 'Export to Excel (all)', and 'Export to Excel (selected)'. Below these are checkboxes for 'Customer roles': Administrators, Forum Moderators, Guests, Registered, and Vendors. The 'Registered' and 'Vendors' roles are checked. There are input fields for 'Email', 'First name', 'Last name', 'Date of birth' (with 'Month' and 'Day' dropdowns), and 'Company'. A 'Search' button is located below the form.

	Id	Email	Name	Customer roles	Company name	Active	Created on	Last activity	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	jan.kay@gmail.com	jan kay	Registered		✓	4/19/2013 6:02:22 AM	4/19/2013 6:19:23 AM	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	admin@yourStore.com	John Smith	Administrators, Forum Moderators, Registered		✓	4/15/2013 1:29:02 AM	4/23/2013 5:28:02 AM	Edit

- 2 Click **Edit** beside the customer record you want to assign a vendor to. The **Edit Customer** window is displayed:

[Edit Customer Details - Smith John](#) (back to customer list) Save Save and Continue Edit Send email Send private message Delete

Customer Info Customer Roles Orders Addresses Current shopping cart Current wishlist Activity Log

Place order (Impersonate)

Email: admin@yourStore.com

Password:  Change password

Manager of vendor: Not a  Note: if you have a vendor associated with this customer, then also ensure it is in "Vendors" customer role.

Gender:  Male  Female

First name: John

Last name: Smith

Date of birth:

Company name:

Admin comment:

Is tax exempt:

Active:

IP Address: 212.179.62.21

Created on: 4/15/2013 1:29:02 AM

Last activity: 4/23/2013 5:37:35 AM

Last visited page: http://user-guide-janet.nopcommerce.com/

- 3 From the **Customer Info** tab shown above, select a vendor record previously created vendor from the **Manager of Vendor** drop down list.
- 4 Select the **Customer Roles** tab, as follows:

[Edit Customer Details - Smith John](#) (back to customer list) Save Save and Continue Edit Send email Send private message Delete

Customer Info Customer Roles Orders Addresses Current shopping cart Current wishlist Activity Log

Place order (Impersonate)

Administrators

Forum Moderators

Guests

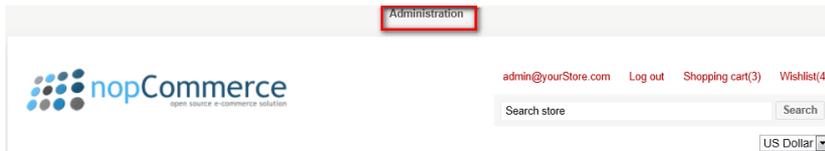
Registered

Vendors

5 Ensure the **Vendors** customer role is selected as the customer role.

*Note: A **Vendor** customer account cannot be in **Administrators** customer role (which is defined as the default).*

After the vendor's customer account has been set up, the vendor can use this customer account to manage his products, orders, shipments, and view reports. The **Administration** link at the top of the public store will be displayed after logging-in.

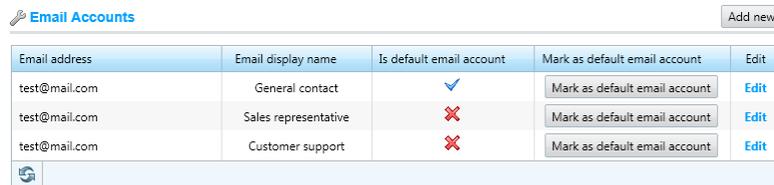


# Email Accounts

The **Email Accounts** window, accessed by selecting **Email Accounts** from the **Configuration** menu in the **Administration Area** displays the email accounts of the store owner. These can include a general contact email, a sales representative email, a customer support email and more. After the email accounts are configured, the store owner can then select the required email account on the message template details page, as described on page 222

► **To add a new email account:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Email Accounts**. The **Email Accounts** window is displayed.



Email address	Email display name	Is default email account	Mark as default email account	Edit
test@mail.com	General contact	✓	Mark as default email account	Edit
test@mail.com	Sales representative	✗	Mark as default email account	Edit
test@mail.com	Customer support	✗	Mark as default email account	Edit

- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add Email Account** window is displayed.



**Add A New Email Account** (back to email account list) Save Save and Continue Edit

- Email address:
- Email display name:
- Host:
- Port:
- User:
- Password:
- SSL:
- Use default credentials:

- 3 Define the email account information, as follows:

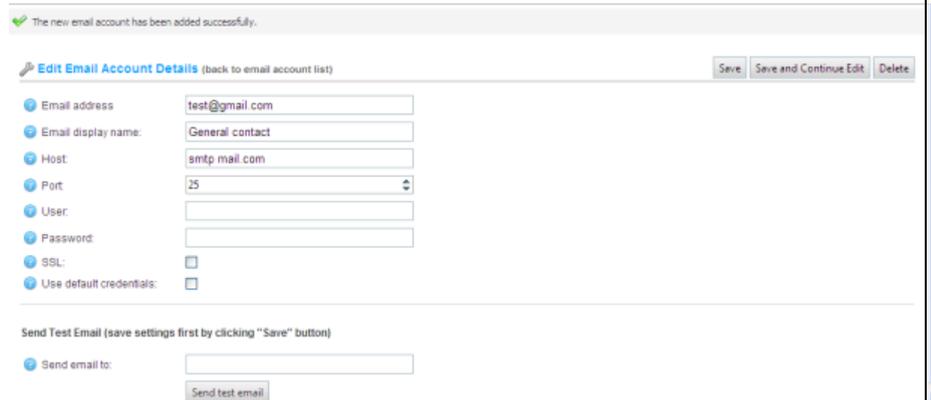
- In the **Email Address** field, enter the displayed *from* email address for all outgoing emails from your store. Example, *sales@yourstore.com*.
- In the **Email Display Name** field, enter the display name for outgoing emails from your store. Example, *Your Store Sales Department*.
- In the **Host** field, enter the host name or IP address of your email server.
- In the **Port** field, enter the SMTP port of your email server.

*Note: You cannot change a port in a medium trust environment.*

- In the **User** field, enter the user name of your email server.

- In the **Password** field, enter the password of your email server.
- Select the **Enable SSL** checkbox to use Security Sockets Layer to encrypt the SMTP connection.
- Select the **Use default credentials** checkbox to use default credentials for the connection.

4 Click **Save**. The window is expanded, as follows:



The screenshot shows a web interface for editing email account details. At the top, a green message states "The new email account has been added successfully." Below this is a form titled "Edit Email Account Details (back to email account list)". The form contains several fields: "Email address" (test@gmail.com), "Email display name" (General contact), "Host" (smtp mail.com), "Port" (25), "User", "Password", "SSL" (unchecked), and "Use default credentials" (unchecked). There are buttons for "Save", "Save and Continue Edit", and "Delete". Below the form is a section for "Send Test Email (save settings first by clicking 'Save' button)" with a "Send email to:" field and a "Send test email" button.

5 In the **Send email to** field, enter the email address for the test email and click **Send Test Email**.

## Taxes

This section describes how to define the tax settings in nopCommerce.

It includes the following:

- **Overview**, below
- **Tax Categories**, page 172
- **Tax Rate Providers**, page 173

### Overview

In nopCommerce, the following can be taxable: products, shipping fees and payments methods.

Depending on where your store is located, you may be required to collect tax. nopCommerce enables you to configure taxes for specific areas (Florida Tax) and specific products (Electronics Tax). New tax rates can be added to existing tax categories or to a new tax category, and are based on a country or a state. This allows products to be taxed accordingly to location, and achieves a final tax rate value by adding or compounding the tax rates defined in the assigned products tax class.

# Tax Categories

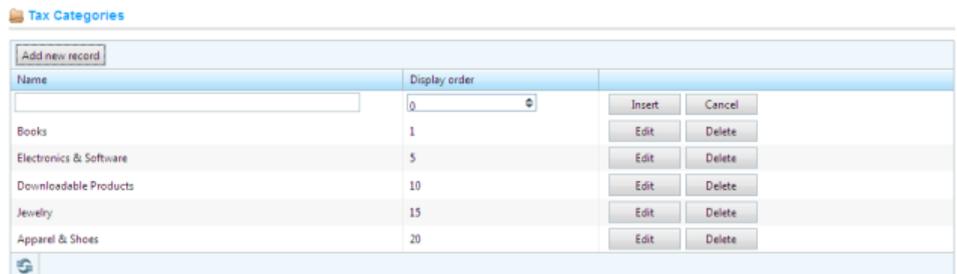
Tax classes are assigned to products, shipping fees and payment method additional fees.

► **To define tax classes:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Tax > Tax Categories**. The **Tax Categories** window is displayed.



- 2 Click **Add new record**. The **Tax categories** window is expanded, as follows:



- 3 In the **Name** field, enter the name of the tax classification (category).
- 4 In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of the tax classification. A value of **1** represents the top of the list.
- 5 Click **Save**.

*Note: You can click **Edit** in the **Tax Categories** window to edit the tax categories, as described above.*

## Tax Rate Providers

Only one tax rate provider can be used for tax calculation. These are the radio button options, which are displayed besides each tax provider in the list enabling you to select the default tax provider to be used. Adding new tax providers is recommended only for advanced users.

► **To define tax rate providers:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Tax > Tax Providers**. The **Tax Providers** window is displayed.

Friendly name	System name	Is primary provider	Mark as primary provider	Configure
Fixed tax rate provider	Tax.FixedRate	✓	Mark as primary provider	Configure
Tax By Country & State & Zip	Tax.CountryStateZip	✗	Mark as primary provider	Configure

- 2 In the **Mark as primary provider** column, click the **Mark as primary provider** button to select the default tax provider to use. In the **Is primary provider** column, **false** option becomes **true**.

## Tax by Country & State & Zip

When this option is selected, tax is calculated according to country, state and zip code. This is the only provider that uses tax classes. If another tax provider is used, then store owner does not have to specify tax classes for each product.

► **To configure tax by country, state and zip:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Tax > Tax Providers**. The **Tax Providers** window is displayed.

Friendly name	System name	Is primary provider	Mark as primary provider	Configure
Fixed tax rate provider	Tax.FixedRate	✓	Mark as primary provider	Configure
Tax By Country & State & Zip	Tax.CountryStateZip	✗	Mark as primary provider	Configure

- 2 Click **Configure** beside the **Tax by country & state & zip** option in the list. The **Configure – Tax By Country & State & Zip** window is displayed, as follows:

Configure - Tax By Country & State & Zip (back to tax provider list)

Country	State / province	Zip	Tax category	Percentage
No records to display.				

Adding a new tax rate

- Country: United States
- State / province: \*
- Zip:
- Tax category: Books
- Percentage: 0.00

Add tax rate

- 3 Define the new tax rate, as follows:
  - From the **Country dropdown** list, select the country for which the tax rate is defined.
  - From the **State/province** dropdown list, select the state or province for which the tax rate is defined. If an asterisk (\*) is selected, this tax rate will apply to all customers from the selected country regardless of the state.
  - In the **Zip** field, enter the Zip/postal code country for which the tax rate is defined. If this field is empty, then this tax rate will apply to all customers from the selected country or state regardless of the zip code.
  - From the **Tax category** dropdown list, select the required class for which to apply the tax rate.
  - In the **Percentage** field, enter the required percentage.

- Click **Add tax rate**. The new tax rate is displayed, as follows:

Configure - Tax By Country & State & Zip (back to tax provider list)

Country	State / province	Zip	Tax category	Percentage	
United States	*	*	Books	0.00	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
United States	Massachusetts	56667	Electronics & Software	16.00	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

Adding a new tax rate

Country:

State / province:

Zip:

Tax category:

Percentage:

[Add tax rate](#)

*Note: You can click **Edit** beside the tax rate to edit the tax rate details, as described above. You can click **Delete** to remove the tax rate.*

## Fixed Rate Tax

When this option is selected, tax is calculated according a fixed rate.

- ▶ To configure fixed rate tax:

- From the **Configuration** menu, select **Tax>Tax Providers**. The **Tax Providers** window is displayed.

Tax Providers

Friendly name	Is primary provider	Mark as primary provider	Configure	System name
Fixed tax rate provider	false	<a href="#">Select</a>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Tax.FixedRate
Free tax rate provider	true	<a href="#">Select</a>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Tax.FreeTaxRate
StrikeIron Basic (US and CA Only)	false	<a href="#">Select</a>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Tax.StrikeIron.Basic
Tax By Country & State & Zip	false	<a href="#">Select</a>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Tax.CountryStateZip

- Click **Configure** beside the **Fixed Rate Tax** option in the list. The **Configure – Fixed Tax Rate Provider** window is displayed, as follows:

Configure - Fixed Tax Rate Provider (back to tax provider list)

Tax category	Rate	
Books	0.00	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Electronics & Software	0.00	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Downloadable Products	0.00	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Jewelry	0.00	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Apparel & Shoes	0.00	<a href="#">Edit</a>

- Click the **Edit** button, beside the tax category for which to define a fixed rate.
- Enter the required rate under the **Rate** column.
- Click **Update**.

# Shipping

This section describes how to define the shipping settings in nopCommerce. It includes the following:

- **Overview**, below
- **Shipping Methods**, below
- **Shipping Method Restrictions**, page 178
- **Offline Shipping Rate Computation Methods**, page 179
- **Real-time Shipping Rate Computation Providers**, page 184

## Overview

The shipping settings defined in this section are used for shippable products only. In addition, you can also define the shipping methods, the shipping rate computation provider and more.

## Shipping Methods

If you have shippable products, you will need to set up the shipping methods that your store will use to deliver orders to customers. You can either define your own shipping methods or use the pre-defined shipping methods provided by popular carriers, such as USPS, UPS and FedEx. If you decide to define and use your own shipping methods, the shipping rates for these methods will need to be entered into nopCommerce manually. If you decide to use the shipping methods provided by the carrier companies like USPS, UPS or FedEx, the shipping rates for these methods will need to be obtained from the respective carrier companies.

### ► To add new shipping methods:

- 1 From the Configuration menu, select Shipping> Shipping Methods. The Shipping Methods window is displayed.

#### Shipping Methods

Add new record			
Name	Description	Display order	
In-Store Pickup	Pick up your items at the store	0	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
By Ground	Compared to other shipping methods, like by flight or over seas, ground shipping is carried out closer to the earth	1	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
By Air	The one day air shipping	3	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>

- 2 Click the **Add new record** button. The window is expanded, as follows:

 Shipping Methods

Name	Description	Display order		
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="button" value="Insert"/>	<input type="button" value="Cancel"/>
In-Store Pickup	Pick up your items at the store	0	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
By Ground	Compared to other shipping methods, like by flight or over seas, ground shipping is carried out closer to the earth	1	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
By Air	The one day air shipping	3	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>



- 3 Define the following fields for the new record:
  - In the **Name** field, enter the name of the shipping method viewed by the customer.
  - In the **Description** field, enter a description for the shipping method viewed by the customer.
  - In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of the shipping method. A value of 1 represents the top of the list.
- 4 Click **Save**.

*Note: You can click **Edit** in the **Shipping methods** window to edit the shipping methods, as described above.*

# Shipping Method Restrictions

► To restrict shipping methods:

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Shipping> Shipping Method Restrictions>**. The Shipping Method Restrictions window is displayed.

 **Shipping Method Restrictions**

Save

Please mark the checkbox(es) for the country or countries in which you want the shipping method(s) not available

Country	In-Store Pickup <input type="checkbox"/>	By Ground <input type="checkbox"/>	By Air <input type="checkbox"/>
United States	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Canada	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Afghanistan	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Albania	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Algeria	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
American Samoa	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Andorra	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Angola	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Anguilla	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Antarctica	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Antigua and Barbuda	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Argentina	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Armenia	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Aruba	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Australia	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Austria	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Azerbaijan	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 2 Select one or more of the following restriction checkboxes beside the relevant country, as follows:
  - In Store Pickup
  - By Ground
  - By Air
- 3 Click **Save**.

*Note: If required, you can select the entire restriction column for the all countries*

## Offline Shipping Rate Computation Methods

The shipping rate computation providers are displayed in the **Shipping Rate Computation** window. These are defined in the *Administration* area, by selecting **Shipping > Shipping Rate Computation Methods** from the **Configuration** menu.

nopCommerce recommends having only one active offline shipping rate computation method. Ensure that the others are not active.

The shipping rate computation method and their configuration settings include the following offline shipping methods:

- **Shipping by Weight**, below
- **Fixed Rate Shipping**, page 183

### Shipping By Weight

This option calculates a shipping fee based on how much the shipment weighs. This is the recommended shipping calculation for companies that have products that vary in weight. The ability to charge different costs depending on the weight of the shipment helps to keep the company's shipping costs down when heavy items are shipped, yet keep the cost reasonable for customers who purchase products that are light in weight. If you decide to use matrix by weight, set up the weight brackets and see how much shipping will cost if the shipment falls within that bracket. For example: 1 pound up to 5 pounds will cost \$3.00 per kg, 6 pounds up to 12 pounds will cost \$8.00 per kg. You can set up multiple shipping fees depending on the shipping methods. Using the first weight bracket above, 1 pound up to 5 pounds will cost \$3.00 per kg using Ground and 1 pound up to 5 pounds will cost \$18.00 per kg using Next Day.

► **To define shipping by weight:**

- 1 From the Configuration menu, select Shipping> Shipping Rate Computation. The Shipping Rate Computation Methods window is displayed.

 **Shipping Rate Computation Methods**

Friendly name	System name	Display order	Is active	Configure	Edit
Australia Post	Shipping.AustraliaPost	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Canada Post	Shipping.CanadaPost	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
FedEx	Shipping.FedEx	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Fixed Rate Shipping	Shipping.FixedRate	1	✓	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Shipping by weight	Shipping.ByWeight	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
UPS (United Parcel Service)	Shipping.UPS	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
USPS (US Postal Service)	Shipping.USPS	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

- 2 Enable this method, as follows:

- In the **Shipping by Weight** row, click the **Edit** button
- In the **Is active** column, check the checkmark
- Click **Update**. The false option becomes true.

- 3 Click **Configure** besides the **Shipping By Weight** option in the list. The **Configure - Shipping by Weight** window is displayed, as follows:

 **Configure - Shipping By Weight** (back to shipping rate computation method list)

---

**Formula to calculate rates:** [additional fixed cost] + ([order total weight] - [lower weight limit]) \* [rate per weight unit] + [order subtotal] \* [charge percentage]

---

Country	State / province	Zip	Shipping method	Data	Edit	Delete
No records to display.						

Limit shipping methods to configured ones:

*Note: Select the **Limit shipping methods to configured ones** checkbox to limit your customers to the shipping methods configured here. When this checkbox is **not** selected, the customers can select any existing shipping options even if they are not configured here. For example, zero shipping fees and so on.*

- 4 Click **Add Record** to define the new values. The **Add New** window is displayed, as follows:

**Add New** Save

Store: \*  
Country: \*  
State / province: \*  
Zip:   
Shipping method: In-Store Pickup  
Order weight from: 0.0000 [lb(s)]  
Order weight to: 1,000,000.0000 [lb(s)]  
Additional fixed cost: 0.0000 [USD]  
Lower weight limit: 0.0000  
Rate per weight unit: 0.0000 [USD]  
Charge percentage (of subtotal): 0.0000

- 5 Define the following new values:

- From the **Store** dropdown list, select the store to for which to configure shipping rates when the multi store feature is used.

*Note: When selecting “\*” as store, the rate will be applied to all the stores.*

- From the **Country** dropdown list, select the country to ship the product to.

*Note: When selecting “\*” as country, the rate will be applied to all countries.*

- From the **State/province dropdown** list, select the state or province to ship the product to.

*Note: When selecting “\*” as State/province, the rate will be applied to all customers from the given regardless of the state or province.*

- In the **Zip** field, enter the zip code to ship the product to.

*Note: If this field is empty, the rate will be applied to all customers from the given country or state/province regardless of the zip code.*

- From the **Select shipping method** dropdown list, select the required option, as follows:
  - **In-Store Pickup**: The order is picked up in the store.
  - **By Ground**: The order is shipped by ground
  - **By Air**: The order is shipped by air.

*Note: These options are not hard-coded and can be configured by the store owner in the Administration area, by selecting **Shipping >Shipping Methods** from the **Configuration menu**.*

- In the **Order weight from** field, enter the minimum order weight (lbs).
- In the **Order weight to** field, enter the maximum order weight (lbs).
- In the **Additional fixed cost** field, enter an additional fixed cost per shopping cart for this option. Enter 0 if you do not want an additional fixed cost to be applied.
- In the **Lower weight limit** field, enter the lower weight limit. This field can be used for "per extra weight limit scenarios".
- In the **Rate per weight unit** field, enter the rate per weight unit.
- Enter a value in the Charge Percentage (of subtotal) field, when the **Use percentage** checkbox is checked. This value entered is the percentage of the order subtotal. For example, if your order subtotal is \$1000 and the **Use percentage** checkbox is checked and the **Charge percentage** is set to %15, the shipping rate will be  $\$1000 * \%15 = \$150$  for the selected shipping method.

*Note: The plugin uses the following formula to calculate rates: [additional fixed cost] + ([order total weight] - [lower weight limit]) \* [rate per weight unit] + [order subtotal] \* [charge percentage].*

- Click **Save**. The information is added to the **Configure – shipping by weight** window, as follows:

 **Configure - Shipping By Weight** (back to shipping rate computation method list)

---

**Formula to calculate rates:** [additional fixed cost] + ([order total weight] - [lower weight limit]) \* [rate per weight unit] + [order subtotal] \* [charge percentage]

---

Country	State / province	Zip	Shipping method	Data	Edit	Delete
*	*	*	In-Store Pickup	Order weight from: 0.00 Order weight to: 1000000.00 Additional fixed cost: 0.00 Rate per weight unit: 0.00 Lower weight limit: 0.00 Charge percentage (of subtotal): 0.00	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

  1  Displaying items 1 - 1 of 1

Limit shipping methods to configured ones:

You can click **Edit** to update the system with the new shipping rate computation rate method. You can click **Delete** to remove it from the system.

## Fixed Rate Shipping

This section describes how to define the fixed shipping rate.

► **To define fixed rate shipping:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Shipping > Shipping Rate Computation Methods**. The Shipping Rate Computation window is displayed.

🔗 **Shipping Rate Computation Methods**

Friendly name	System name	Display order	Is active	Configure	Edit
Australia Post	Shipping.AustraliaPost	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Canada Post	Shipping.CanadaPost	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
FedEx	Shipping.FedEx	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Fixed Rate Shipping	Shipping.FixedRate	1	✓	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Shipping by weight	Shipping.ByWeight	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
UPS (United Parcel Service)	Shipping.UPS	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
USPS (US Postal Service)	Shipping.USPS	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

- 2 Enable this method, as follows:

- In the Fixed Rate Shipping row, click the Edit button
- In the **Is active** column, check the checkmark
- Click **Update**. The false option becomes true.

- 3 Click **Configure** beside the **Fixed Rate Shipping** option in the list. The **Edit Shipping Rate Computation Rate Method** window is displayed, as follows:

🔗 **Configure - Fixed Rate Shipping** (back to shipping rate computation method list)

Shipping method	Rate	Edit
In-Store Pickup	0.00	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
By Ground	0.00	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
By Air	0.00	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

- 4 Click **Edit** and enter a fixed rate for each of the existing shipping methods as follows:

- In-Store Pickup
- By Ground
- By Air

*Note: These options are not hard-coded and can be configured by the store owner in the Administration area, by selecting **Shipping > Shipping Methods** from the **Configuration** menu.*

- 5 Click Update.

# Real Time Shipping Rate Computation Providers

This section displays the real-time (on line) shipping methods, as follows:

- USPS
- UPS
- FedEx
- Canada Post
- Australia Post

## United States Postal Service Real Time Shipping Calculations

In order to use this service you must first go to <http://www.usps.com/> to receive a user ID that is required to test and integrate USPS Web Tools APIs. With this ID, you may begin sending calls to the test server.

▶ **To define the USPS Real Time Shipping Calculations:**

- 1 Create a **USPS** account by going to <http://www.usps.com/> to receive a user ID.
- 2 Depending on the API, go to one of the test servers, as follows:
  - <http://testing.shippingapis.com/ShippingAPITest.dll>
  - <https://secure.shippingapis.com/ShippingAPITest.dll>.
- 3 Using the ID provided send calls to the test server.
- 4 After completing your testing, email the USPS Internet Customer Care Center (ICCC). They will switch your profile to allow you access to the production server and will provide you with the production URLs.

- From the **Configuration** menu, select **Shipping > Shipping Rate Computation Methods**. The Shipping Rate Computation window is displayed.

 **Shipping Rate Computation Methods**

Friendly name	System name	Display order	Is active	Configure	Edit
Australia Post	Shipping.AustraliaPost	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Canada Post	Shipping.CanadaPost	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
FedEx	Shipping.FedEx	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Fixed Rate Shipping	Shipping.FixedRate	1	✓	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Shipping by weight	Shipping.ByWeight	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
UPS (United Parcel Service)	Shipping.UPS	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
USPS (US Postal Service)	Shipping.USPS	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

- Enable this method, as follows:
  - In the **USPS (US Postal Service)** row, click the **Edit** button
  - In the **Is active** column, check the checkmark
  - Click **Update**. The false option becomes true.

- Click **Configure** beside the **USPS (US Postal Service)** option in the list. The **Configure – USPS (US Postal Service)** window is displayed, as follows:

 **Configure - USPS (US Postal Service)** (back to shipping rate computation method list)

URL:

Username:

Password:

Additional handling charge:

Shipped from zip:

**Domestic Carrier Services:**  
-select the services you want to offer to customers.

**International Carrier Services:**  
-select the services you want to offer to customers.

- NONE (disable all domestic services)
- First-Class
- Express Mail Sunday/Holiday Guarantee
- Express Mail Flat-Rate Envelope Sunday/Holiday Guarantee
- Express Mail Hold For Pickup
- Express Mail Flat Rate Envelope Hold For Pickup
- Express Mail
- Express Mail Flat Rate Envelope
- Priority Mail
- Priority Mail Flat Rate Envelope
- Priority Mail Small Flat Rate Box
- Priority Mail Medium Flat Rate Box
- Priority Mail Large Flat Rate Box
- Parcel Post
- NONE (disable all international services)
- Global Express Guaranteed (GXG)
- Global Express Guaranteed Non-Document Rectangular
- Global Express Guaranteed Non-Document Non-Rectangular
- USPS GXG Envelopes
- Express Mail International Flat Rate Envelope
- Priority Mail International
- Priority Mail International Large Flat Rate Box
- Priority Mail International Medium Flat Rate Box
- Priority Mail International Small Flat Rate Box
- First-Class Mail International Large Envelope
- Express Mail International
- Priority Mail International Flat Rate Envelope
- First-Class Mail International Package

- 8 Enter the information obtained from the USPS provider, as follows:
  - In the **URL** field, enter the URL of the USPS provider.
  - In the **Username** field, enter your username obtained from the provider.
  - In the **Password** field, enter your password obtained from the provider.
  - In the **Additional Handling Charge** field, enter the additional handling charge.
  - In the **Shipped from zip** field, enter the zip code from where the order was shipped from.
  - In the **Domestic Carrier Services** area, select the services you want to offer to your customers.
  - In the **Domestic Carrier Services** area, select the required domestic carrier services that you want to offer to your customers.
  - In the **International Carrier Services** area, select the international carrier services that you want to offer to your customers.
- 9 Click **Save**.

## **UPS Real Time shipping calculations**

To access your account at UPS you will be provided with a user name password and an XML license number, which will be given during registration process.

▶ **To define the UPS Real Time Shipping Calculations:**

- 1 Create a **UPS** account by going to [https://www.ups.com/upsdeveloperkit?loc=en\\_US](https://www.ups.com/upsdeveloperkit?loc=en_US) to receive the following:
  - Username ID
  - Password
  - XML access license number

- From the **Configuration** menu, select **Shipping > Shipping Rate Computation Methods**. The Shipping Rate Computation Methods window is displayed.

 Shipping Rate Computation Methods

Friendly name	System name	Display order	Is active	Configure	Edit
Australia Post	Shipping.AustraliaPost	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Canada Post	Shipping.CanadaPost	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
FedEx	Shipping.FedEx	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Fixed Rate Shipping	Shipping.FixedRate	1	✓	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Shipping by weight	Shipping.ByWeight	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
UPS (United Parcel Service)	Shipping.UPS	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
USPS (US Postal Service)	Shipping.USPS	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

- Enable this method, as follows:
  - In the UPS (United Postal Service) row, click the Edit button
  - In the **Is active** column, check the checkmark
  - Click **Update**. The false option becomes true.

- Click **Configure** beside the **UPS (United Parcel Service)** option in the list. The **Configure – UPS (United Parcel Service)** window is displayed, as follows:

 **Configure - UPS (United Parcel Service)** (back to shipping rate computation method list)

URL:

Access Key:

Username:

Password:

UPS Customer Classification:

UPS Pickup Type:

UPS Packaging Type:

Insure package:

Additional handling charge:

Shipped from country:

Shipped from zip:

Carrier Services:  
-select the services you want to offer to customers.

- UPS next Day Air
- UPS 2nd Day Air
- UPS Ground
- UPS Worldwide Express
- UPS Worldwide Expedited
- UPS Standard
- UPS 3 Day Select
- UPS Next Day Air Saver
- UPS Next Day Air Early A.M.
- UPS Worldwide Express Plus
- UPS 2nd Day Air A.M.
- UPS Saver
- UPS Today Standard
- UPS Today Dedicated Courier
- UPS Today Express
- UPS Today Express Saver

- 5 Enter the information obtained from the UPS provider, as follows:
- In the **URL** field, enter the URL of the UPS provider.
  - In the **Access Key** field, enter the access key obtained from the provider.
  - In the **Username** field, enter your username obtained from the provider.
  - In the **Password** field, enter your password obtained from the provider.
  - From the **UPS Customer Classification** dropdown list, select your required customer classification, as follows:
    - Retail
    - Wholesale
    - Occasional
  - From the **UPS Pickup Type** dropdown list, select the required UPS pickup type, as follows:
    - Daily Pickup
    - Customer Counter
    - One Time Pickup
    - On Call Air
    - Suggested Retail Rates
    - Letter Center
    - Air Service Center
  - In the **UPS Packaging Type** field, dropdown list, select the required UPS package type, as follows:
    - Customer Supplied Package
    - Letter
    - Tube
    - P A K
    - Express Box
    - 10 kg Box
    - 25 kg Box
  - Select the **Insure package** checkbox to indicate the package will be insured.
  - In the **Additional Handling Charge** field, enter the additional handling charge.
  - From the **Shipped from country** dropdown list, select the country where the order was shipped from.

- In the **Shipped from zip** field, enter the zip code where the order was shipped from.
  - In the **Carrier Services** area, select the required carrier services you want to offer to your customers.
- 6 Enter your credentials, as follows:
- Access key: Enter the XML access key for your account.
  - UPS User ID: Enter the UPS user ID assigned to your account.
  - UPS password: Enter the password for your account.
  - UPS Customer classification: Retail, Wholesale, Occasional.
  - UPS Pickup type: Determines the type of pickup desired.
  - UPS Packaging type: Determines the type of package desired.
  - Additional shipping charge: Additional shipping charge. This value will be added to shipping rate(for example, it can be handling)
  - Shipped from country: Enter your country from which package will be sent
  - Shipped from zip: Enter your zip from which package will be sent.

## FedEx Real Time Shipping Calculations

To access your account at FedEx you will be provided with a FedEx *meter*, which will be provided after opening a FedEx account, at <http://www.fedex.com>. This FedEx meter will enable you to start tuning Web Tools.

► **To define the FedEx Real Time Shipping Calculations:**

- 1 Sign up at the FedEx Developer Resource Center <http://www.fedex.com/us/developer/> and request a developer test key.
- 2 Fill out the required form, the following credentials will be mailed to you:
  - test Key
  - test Account
  - test Meter Number
  - test Password
- 3 After testing, click here to [apply for a production key](#),
  - In the **Intend to resell software** option, click **No**.
  - Select the **FedEx Web Services for Shipping** option.

- Select the **Corporate Developer** to enable you to self-certify.
- 4 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Shipping> Shipping Rate Computation**. The **Shipping Rate Computation Methods** window is displayed.

 Shipping Rate Computation Methods

Friendly name	System name	Display order	Is active	Configure	Edit
Australia Post	Shipping.AustraliaPost	1	✘	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Canada Post	Shipping.CanadaPost	1	✘	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
FedEx	Shipping.FedEx	1	✘	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Fixed Rate Shipping	Shipping.FixedRate	1	✔	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Shipping by weight	Shipping.ByWeight	1	✘	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
UPS (United Parcel Service)	Shipping.UPS	1	✘	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
USPS (US Postal Service)	Shipping.USPS	1	✘	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

- 5 Enable this method, as follows:

- In the **FedEx** row, click the **Edit** button
- In the **Is active** column, check the checkmark
- Click **Update**. The false option becomes true.

- 6 Click **Configure** beside the **FedEx** option in the list. The **Edit shipping rate computation rate method** window is displayed, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Configure - FedEx' window with the following fields and options:

- URL:
- Key:
- Password:
- Account number:
- Meter number:
- Dropoff Type:
- Use residential rates:
- Use discounted rates:
- Additional handling charge:
- Carrier Services Offered:
  - FedEx express saver
  - FedEx Ground
  - FedEx First Overnight
  - FedEx Ground Home Delivery
  - FedEx International Distribution Freight
  - FedEx International Economy
  - FedEx International Economy Distribution
  - FedEx International Economy Freight
  - FedEx International First
  - FedEx International Priority
  - FedEx International Priority Freight
  - FedEx Priority Overnight
  - FedEx Smart Post
  - FedEx Standard Overnight
  - FedEx Freight
  - FedEx National Freight
- Shipping origin: Street:
- Shipping origin: City:
- Shipping origin: State code (2 characters):
- Shipping origin: Zip:
- Shipping origin: Country code:
- Packing type:
- Pass dimensions:

- 7 Enter the information obtained from the FedEx provider, as follows:
- **URL:** Enter the FedEx URL.
  - **Key:** Enter your key obtained from FedEx.
  - **Password:** Enter your FedEx password
  - **Account number:** Enter your FedEx account number
  - **Meter number:** FedEx meter number.
  - **Dropoff Type:** From the **Dropoff type** drop down list, select the preferred drop off type, as follows:
    - Business Service Center
    - Drop Box
    - Regular Pickup
    - Request Courier
    - Station
  - **Use residential rates:** Select this option to use residential rates.
  - **Use discounted rates (instead of List rates):** Select this option to use discounted FedEx rates.

- **Additional handling charge [USD]:** Enter the additional fee to charge your customers.
- In the **Carrier Services Offered** area, select the required carrier services you want to offer to your customers.
- **Shipping origin:** Enter your street, city, state code, zip, and country code from which package will be sent.
- **Packing Type:** From the **Packing type** drop down list, select the preferred packing of type, as follows:
  - Pack by dimensions
  - Pack by one item per package
  - Pack by volume
- Check **Pass dimensions** if you want to pass package dimensions when requesting FedEx rates.

8 Click **Save**.

*Note: Use your own FedEx account information provided to you by email. When moving to production, make sure you enter the address that is used for your FedEx account; otherwise, you will be unable to get a production key. Contact FedEx to resolve account issues.*

## Canada Post

To access your account at Canada Post you will be provided with a Canada Post Customer ID.

► **To define the Canada Post Shipping Calculations:**

- 1 Sign up at Canada Post.
- 2 From the Configuration menu, select Shipping > Shipping Rate Computation. The Shipping Rate Computation Methods window is displayed.

Shipping Rate Computation Methods

Friendly name	Configure	System name	Display order	Is active	
Australia Post	Configure	Shipping.AustraliaPost	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Canada Post	Configure	Shipping.CanadaPost	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
FedEx	Configure	Shipping.FedEx	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Fixed Rate Shipping	Configure	Shipping.FixedRate	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Shipping by weight	Configure	Shipping.ByWeight	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Edit
UPS (United Parcel Service)	Configure	Shipping.UPS	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Edit
USPS (US Postal Service)	Configure	Shipping.USPS	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit

3 Enable this method, as follows:

- In the **Canada Post** row, click the **Edit** button

- In the **Is active** column, check the checkmark
- Click **Update**. The **False** option becomes **True**.

4 Click **Configure** beside the **Canada Post** option in the list. The **Edit Shipping Rate Computation Rate Method** window is displayed, as follows:

[Configure - Canada Post](#) (back to shipping rate computation method list)

Canada Post URL:	<input type="text" value="sellonline.canadapost.ca"/>
Canada Post Port:	<input type="text" value="30000"/>
Canada Post Customer ID:	<input type="text" value="CPC_DEMO_XML"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

5 Enter the information obtained from the Canada Post provider, as follows:

- **Canada Post URL:** Enter the Canada Post URL.
- **Canada Post Port:** Enter the Canada Post port.
- **Canada post Customer ID:** Enter your Canada Post Customer ID.

6 Click **Save**.

## Australia Post

► **To define the Australia Post Shipping Calculations:**

1 From the Configuration menu, select Shipping > Shipping Rate Computation. The Shipping Rate Computation Methods window is displayed.

[Shipping Rate Computation Methods](#)

Friendly name	Configure	System name	Display order	Is active	
Australia Post	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Shipping.AustraliaPost	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Canada Post	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Shipping.CanadaPost	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
FedEx	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Shipping.FedEx	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Fixed Rate Shipping	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Shipping.FixedRate	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Shipping by weight	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Shipping.ByWeight	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
UPS (United Parcel Service)	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Shipping.UPS	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
USPS (US Postal Service)	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Shipping.USPS	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

- 2 Enable this method, as follows:
  - In the **Australia Post** row, click the **Edit** button
  - In the **Is active** column, check the checkmark
  - Click **Update**. The **False** option becomes **True**.
- 3 Click **Configure** beside the **Australia Post** option in the list. The **Edit shipping rate computation rate method** window is displayed, as follows:



---

Gateway URL:

Additional handling charge:

Shipped from zip:

- 4 Enter the information obtained from the Australian Post provider, as follows:
  - **Gateway URL:** Enter the Australia Post Gateway URL.
  - **Additional Handling Charge:** Enter the additional handling charge required.
  - **Shipped from zip:** Enter the zip code where from products are shipped from.
- 5 Click **Save**.

# Payment Methods

Before going live with your store, you need to define the ways in which you will accept payments from your customers. nopCommerce provides a number of payment methods that you can use. These include, Manual Processing, purchase order, cash on delivery, check or money transfer, PayPal and much more.

## Payments Methods

A payment method is how a customer pays for the order. nopCommerce allows for both online and offline transactions. For the online methods, nopCommerce supports integration with several third party payment gateways, so that customer credit card information will automatically sent through the gateway (as either an authorization, or an authorization and charge) upon completion of an order. You can have multiple payment methods active at one time. The user can select how he wants to pay at checkout

The following transaction modes are supported by the payment methods:

- **Pending:** The transaction is pending.
- **Authorize:** Authorizes the charge, but does not capture or transfer funds. Just verifies the card.
- **Authorize and capture:** Authorizes and captures the transaction.
- **Void:** An order can be voided only when its payment status is **Authorized**.
- **Refunded:** An order can be refunded only when its payment status is **Paid** (meaning, captured).
- **Partially refunded:** An order can be partially refunded only when its payment status is **Paid** (meaning, captured).
- **Capture:** Means the payment status is **Paid**.

If you do not want to charge the customer until you ship, then use **Authorize**. For charges that come in as **Authorized** only, you can later capture them via the **Administration** area using the **Capture** button on the order page.

► **To define payment methods:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Payment Methods**. The **Payment Methods** window is displayed.

 **Payment Methods**

Friendly name	System name	Supports capture	Refund	Partial refund	Void	Recurring support	Display order	Is active	Configure	Edit
Cash On Delivery (COD)	Payments.CashOnDelivery	✗	✗	✗	✗	NotSupported	1	✓	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Check / Money Order	Payments.CheckMoneyOrder	✗	✗	✗	✗	NotSupported	1	✓	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Credit Card	Payments.PayPalDirect	✓	✓	✗	✓	Automatic	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Credit Card	Payments.Manual	✗	✗	✗	✗	Manual	1	✓	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Credit Card	Payments.AuthorizeNet	✓	✗	✗	✗	Manual	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Google Checkout	Payments.GoogleCheckout	✓	✗	✗	✗	NotSupported	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
PayPal Standard	Payments.PayPalStandard	✗	✗	✗	✗	NotSupported	1	✗	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Purchase Order	Payments.PurchaseOrder	✗	✗	✗	✗	NotSupported	1	✓	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

*Note: Any new payment modules can be implemented and installed as a plugin. For further details, developer can click the following. <http://www.nopcommerce.com/>.*

The payment methods and their configuration settings that you can use in nopCommerce are described below:

- **Manual Processing (Credit Card)**, below
- **Authorize.Net**, below
- **PayPal Standard**, page 197
- **Pay Pal Direct**, page 198
- **Cash On Delivery**, page 199
- **Purchase Order**, page 200
- **Google Checkout**, page 200

*Note: To activate a payment method, click the **Edit** button beside the required method, and check the **Is active** checkbox and click **Update**. The **Is active** option changes from **false** to **true**.*

## Manual Processing (Credit Card).

This is a special gateway that allows all orders to be successfully entered on the site, but it does NOT charge the customer or make any calls to any live gateway. Use this payment method if you want to perform one of the following:

- Process all orders offline
- Process them manually via another back-office system
- Test the site end-to-end before going live

## Authorize.Net

You can configure **Authorize.Net**, in the **Authorize.net** payments window, as described below.

▶ **To configure Authorize.Net:**

- 1 **Use Sandbox: Enable** or **disable** the test transactions.
- 2 **Transaction mode:** Select the required transaction mode, as follows:
  - Authorize
  - Capture
- 3 **Transaction Key:** Enter the transaction key defined in your Authorize.Net Account area.
- 4 **Merchant ID:** Enter your Authorize.Net Merchant ID.

## PayPal Standard

In order to use PDT, you must activate PDT and Auto Return in your PayPal account profile. You must also acquire a PDT identity token, which is used in all PDT communication you send to PayPal.

▶ **To configure your account for PDT:**

- 1 Log in to your PayPal account.
- 2 Click the **Profile** tab.
- 3 Click Website Payment Preferences in the Seller Preferences column.
- 4 Under Auto Return for Website Payments, select the **On** radio button.
- 5 For the **Return URL**, enter the **URL** on your site that will receive the transaction ID posted by PayPal after a customer payment.
- 6 Under **Payment Data Transfer**, select the **On** radio button.
- 7 Click **Save**.

- 8 Click Website Payment Preferences in the Seller Preferences column.
- 9 Scroll down to the **Payment Data Transfer** section of the page to view your PDT identity token.

In order to receive IPN messages (optional), you must activate this service, as described below.

▶ **To activate the IPN:**

- 1 Log in to your Premier or Business account.
- 2 Click the **Profile** tab.
- 3 Click Instant Payment Notification in the Selling Preferences column.
- 4 Click the **Edit IPN Settings** button to update your settings.
- 5 Select **Receive IPN messages** (Enabled) and enter the **URL** of your IPN handler.
- 6 Click **Save**. You should get a message that you have successfully activated IPN.

*Note: Instant Payment Notification (IPN) is PayPal's message service that sends a notification when a transaction is affected. Once IPN is integrated, sellers can automate their back office so they are not required to wait for payments to come in to trigger order fulfillment.*

## **PayPal Direct**

In order to use PayPal Direct as a payment method you must sign up to a PayPal business account and then add a bank account to the business account and obtain a digital signature which you will use when contacting PayPal Payments Pro API.

▶ **To configure Pay Pal Direct**

- 1 Sign Up to a PayPal Business account, as follows:
  - Go to <https://www.paypal.com> and click **Sign Up**. Be sure to choose a business account when signing up. After you sign up, you will receive an email with confirmation instructions.
  - Confirm your account, and then continue below.

- 2 Apply for Website Payments Pro, as follows:
  - Navigate to Merchant Tools and select PayPal Website Payments Pro.
  - Enter the required information about you and your business. You will be notified by email when your application review is complete.
- 3 After you receive the approval email from PayPal, you must accept their billing agreement, as follows:
  - Log in to <https://www.paypal.com>
  - In the top left corner, click Accept Billing Agreement
  - Stay logged into PayPal for the next steps.
- 4 You must have a bank account added to your PayPal Business Account. If you do not have one you can add one as follows:
  - Click Profile
  - Under Financial Information, select Bank Accounts
  - Enter your bank account information
  - Obtain a Digital Signature.
- 5 Login to your account, as follows:
  - Login to your PayPal account and go to **My Account >Profile >API Access**.
  - Click API Access.
  - If you already have a certificate, then you must remove the current access. Otherwise, click on the Request API Credentials link.
  - Make sure the API Signature radio button is selected and agree to the Terms of Use and click the Submit button. PayPal will provide you with an API Username, API Password, and Signature.
  - Save or copy the signature and use the signature information in contacting the PayPal Payments Pro API.

## **Cash On Delivery**

With Cash on Delivery orders, products and services are paid for in full in cash or using a certified check, immediately at the time of delivery, or when they are received by the buyer.

## **Purchase Order**

Purchase orders are often used for government agencies or for large businesses. Rather than paying directly through your site, they will request that you send them a Purchase order (PO), and they will send the payment back however you work out. Most of the order processing is handled outside of the software.

## **Google Checkout**

Go to <http://sandbox.google.com/checkout/sell/> to set up test accounts in the Google Checkout Sandbox service. The Sandbox is a development environment that is designed to help you test your Google Checkout implementation. The Sandbox offers the same functionality as the production Google Checkout system with the following exceptions:

- The Sandbox requires you to use test credit card numbers.
- The Sandbox does not actually execute debits and credits.
- The Sandbox user interface displays an overlay that indicates you are working in the Sandbox environment.

► **To configure google checkout:**

- 1 Create two test accounts in the Sandbox, as follows.
  - Buyer Account : Create your buyer account at <http://sandbox.google.com/checkout>
  - Merchant Account. : Create your merchant account at <http://sandbox.google.com/checkout/sell/>

*Note: Google Checkout will not let you use your merchant account to complete an order at your own store. (In other words, the same account cannot function as both the customer and the merchant for the same transaction.) In addition, you need to provide different information to create these two accounts*

- 2 Set up your test accounts, as follows:
  - Skip any sections that ask for your bank account information. Since the Sandbox system does not process billing or payments, this information is not necessary when you are testing your implementation.
  - Enter any name and address as long as the **State** field contains a valid two-letter abbreviation for a U.S. state and the **Zip Code** field contains a five-digit or nine-digit zip code. (You do not need to enter the correct zip code for the address.)
  - Enter any 10-digit phone number for the **Phone Number** field.
  - Enter any value in either the **Federal tax ID** or **Social Security number** fields.
  - Use one of the credit card numbers in the shown in the **Configure – Google Checkout** window.
- 3 Go to <http://checkout.google.com/sell/signup> to sign up for a Google Checkout merchant account.
- 4 Complete the sign-up process and provide valid values for all fields. You will need the federal tax ID number for your business or a credit card and your Social Security number.

*Note: Please note that you will use this account for your production service whereas the accounts you created in the previous step are for testing your Checkout integration. <http://sandbox.google.com/checkout/sell/>*

- 5 Sign in to the accounts that you created in **Step 1** to locate the **Merchant ID** and **Merchant Key** for each account. You will need these values to create Google Checkout buttons and to send API requests to Google Checkout.
- 6 Click on the **Settings** tab.

- 7 Click on the **Integration** link on the left side of the page. Your 10- or 15-digit Merchant ID and your Merchant Key will both be listed under the **Account information** header.

*Note: You should never share your Merchant Key with anyone. Google uses your Merchant Key to authenticate your API requests, and no Google representative will ever ask you for your Merchant Key.*

*The callback method needs to be XML, and make sure that Shopping cart post security is checked. The API callback URL needs to be*

*<http://YourStoreURL/Plugins/PaymentGoogleCheckout/NotificationHandler>*

- 8 Define the following:
  - Select the **Use Sandbox** checkbox to enable using Sandbox.
  - In the **Google Vendor ID** field, enter the **google vendor ID**.
  - In the **Google Merchant key** field, enter the google merchant ID.
  - Select the **Authenticate callback** checkbox to enable callback authentication.
- 9 Click **Save**.

# Content Management

This section describes how to manage the content on your site. This includes:

- **News**, below
- **Blog**, page 206
- **Polls**, page 210
- **Forums**, page 211
- **Topics**, page 213
- **Message Templates**, page 216
- **Widgets**, page 216

## News

The news displayed in the store is any news managed by the store owner. For example, the nopCommerce latest release information. This section describes how to define the news setting in the store. This includes whether or not to enable news and whether to enable customers to add news comments and how many news items to display on a page and more.

## Manage News

This section describes how to add a news items in nopCommerce.

### ► To add news Items:

- 1 From the **Content Management** menu, select **News>News Items**. The **News Items** window is displayed.

**News Items** Add new

Store:

Title	Language	View comments	Start date	End date	Published	Created on	Edit
New online store is open!	English	<a href="#">View comments - 0</a>			✓	4/15/2013 9:30:46 AM	<a href="#">Edit</a>
nopCommerce new release!	English	<a href="#">View comments - 0</a>			✓	4/15/2013 9:30:45 AM	<a href="#">Edit</a>

Displaying items 1 - 2 of 2

2 Click **Add new**. The **Add a New News Item** window is displayed

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Add A New News Item" with a breadcrumb "(back to news item list)" and buttons for "Save" and "Save and Continue Edit". The form has three tabs: "Info", "SEO", and "Stores", with "Info" selected. The "Info" tab contains the following fields and controls:

- Language:** A dropdown menu currently showing "English".
- Title:** A single-line text input field.
- Short description:** A multi-line text area.
- Full description:** A multi-line text area.
- Allow comments:** A checked checkbox.
- Start date:** A text input field with a calendar icon to its right.
- End date:** A text input field with a calendar icon to its right.
- Published:** A checked checkbox.

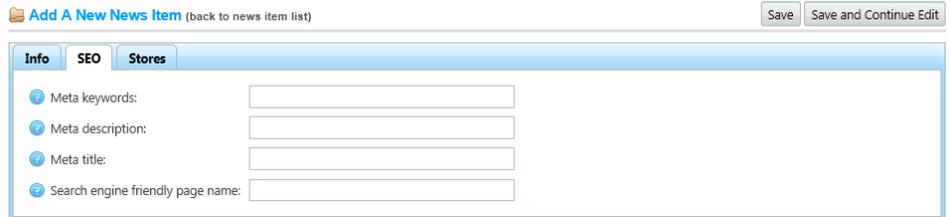
- 3 From the **Language** dropdown list, select the language of this news item. Customer will only see news items for their selected language.
- 4 In the **Title** field, enter the title of this news item. For example: *The Launching of our new nopCommerce Store.*
- 5 In the **Short Description** field, enter an abstract of this news item. This is the text your visitors will see on news item list.
- 6 In the **Full Description** field, enter the body text of this news item.
- 7 Select the **Allow comments** checkbox to enable customers to add comments to news items.
- 8 In the **Start date** field, select the calendar picker to define the starting date of the news item in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

*Note: You can leave this field empty if you do not want to define news item start date.*

- In the **End date** field, select the calendar picker to define the end date of the news item in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

*Note: You can leave this field empty if you do not want to news item end date.*

- Select the **Published** checkbox to publish this news item in your store.
- Select the **SEO** tab, as follows:



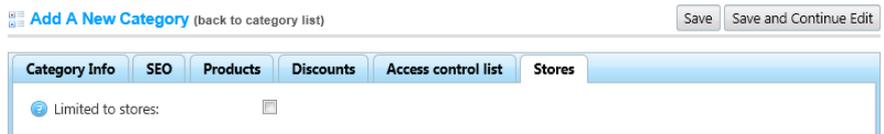
The screenshot shows the 'Add A New News Item' form with the 'SEO' tab selected. The form has a breadcrumb 'Add A New News Item (back to news item list)' and buttons for 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit'. The 'SEO' tab is active, showing four input fields: 'Meta keywords:', 'Meta description:', 'Meta title:', and 'Search engine friendly page name:'.

- In the **Meta keywords** field, enter the meta keywords to be added to the news page header.
- In the **Meta description** field, enter the meta description to be added to the news page header.
- In the **Meta title** field, override the page title. The default is the title of the news.
- In the **Search engine friendly page name** field, define a search engine friendly page name. For example enter "the-best-news" to make your URL <http://yourStore.com/the-best-news>. Leave this field empty to generate it automatically based on the title of the news.
- Select the **Stores** tab, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Add A New News Item' form with the 'Stores' tab selected. The form has a breadcrumb 'Add A New News Item (back to news item list)' and buttons for 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit'. The 'Stores' tab is active, showing a 'Limited to stores:' checkbox.

- Select the **Stores** tab, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Category' form with the 'Stores' tab selected. The form has a breadcrumb 'Add A New Category (back to category list)' and buttons for 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit'. The 'Stores' tab is active, showing a 'Limited to stores:' checkbox.

- 18 Select the **Limited to stores** checkbox, to enable defining the stores where the news item will be available. The window is expanded, as follows:

Limited to stores:  
 Your store name  
 Some second store

*Note: This checkbox is used only when you have several stores configured. For further details refer to [Multi-store Support](#).*

- 19 Click **Save**. The news item will be displayed in the public store.

## News Comments

This section describes how to add a news comments in nopCommerce.

► **To manage news comments:**

- 1 From the **Content Management** menu, select **News>News Comments**. The **News Comments** window is displayed.

Id	News item	Customer	Comment title	Comment text	IP Address	Created on	
2	<a href="#">nopCommerce new release!</a>	<a href="#">View</a>	New release	I really like to the new release of nopCommerce	78.106.107.51	7/8/2011 12:10:30 PM	Delete
3	<a href="#">nopCommerce new release!</a>	<a href="#">View</a>	Amazing new features	I like to the new features of nopCommerce. Well done!	78.106.107.51	7/8/2011 12:10:53 PM	Delete

- 2 You can click **Delete** beside the news comment to delete. The news comment will be removed from the system.

## Blog

A **blog** is usually maintained by an individual with regular entries of commentary, descriptions of events, or other material such as graphics or video. Blogging enables readers to leave comments in an interactive format. This section describes how to define blog settings, such as whether or not to enable blogs and edit them, notify about new Blog comments and more.

## Managing Blogs

This section describes how to manage blog entries in nopCommerce.

► **To manage blog entries:**

- 1 From the **Content Management** menu, select **Blog > Blog Posts**. The **Blog Posts** window is displayed.

Title	Language	View comments	Start date	End date	Created on	Edit
Customer Service - Client Service	English	<a href="#">View comments - 0</a>			6/26/2012 8:29:22 AM	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Online Discount Coupons	English	<a href="#">View comments - 0</a>			6/26/2012 8:29:21 AM	<a href="#">Edit</a>

- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add a blog post** window is displayed.

**Add A New Blog Post** (back to blog post list) Save Save and Continue Edit

**Info** **SEO** **Stores**

Language: English

Title:

Body:

Path: Words:0

Allow comments:

Tags:

Start date:

End date:

- 3 From the **Language** dropdown list, select the language of this blog post. The Customer will only see blog posts for their selected language.
- 4 In the **Title** field, enter the title of this blog post.
- 5 In the **Body** field, enter the body text of this blog post.
- 6 Select the **Allow comments** checkbox to enable customers to add comments about your blog post.

- 7 In the **Tags** field, enter a tag to be displayed on the **Blog** page in the public store. The more blog posts associated with a particular tag, the larger it will show in the **Popular Tags** area, displayed in the side bar on the **Blog** page, as follows:



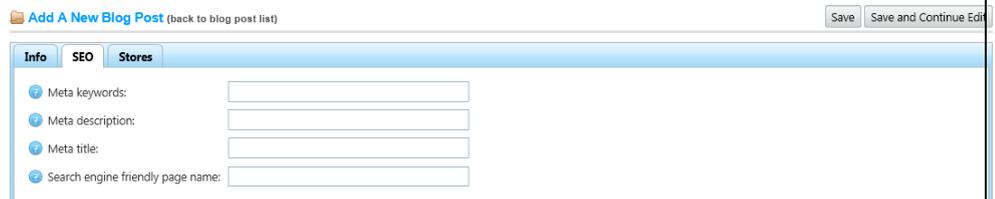
- 8 In the **Start date** field, enter the start date for displaying this blog post in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

*Note: You can leave this field empty if you do not want to define a blog post start date.*

- 9 In the **End date** field, enter the end date for displaying this blog post in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

*Note: You can leave this field empty if you do not want to define a blog post end date.*

- 10 Select the **SEO** tab, as follows:



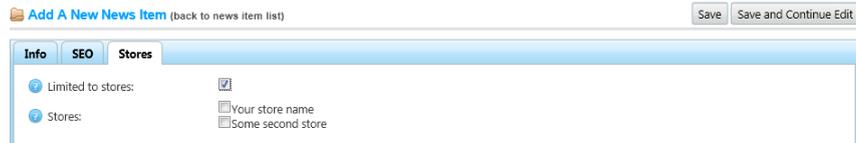
- 11 In the **Meta keywords** field, enter the meta keywords to be added to the blog post header.
- 12 In the **Meta description** field, enter the meta description to be added to the blog post header.
- 13 In the **Meta title** field, override the page title. The default is the title of the blog post.
- 14 In the **Search engine friendly page name** field, define a search engine friendly page name. For example enter "the-best-news" to make your URL `http://yourStore.com/the-best-news`. Leave this field empty to generate it automatically based on the title of the blog post.

- 15 Select the **Stores** tab, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Blog Post' form with the 'Stores' tab selected. The 'Limited to stores' checkbox is currently unchecked. The form has 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit' buttons at the top right.

- 16 Select the **Limited to stores** checkbox, to enable defining the stores where the blog post will be available. The window is expanded, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Add A New News Item' form with the 'Stores' tab selected. The 'Limited to stores' checkbox is checked. Below it, there are two radio buttons: 'Your store name' and 'Some second store', both of which are currently unselected.

*Note: This checkbox is used only when you have several stores configured. For further details refer to [Multi-store Support](#).*

- 17 Click **Save**. The blog post will be displayed in the public store.

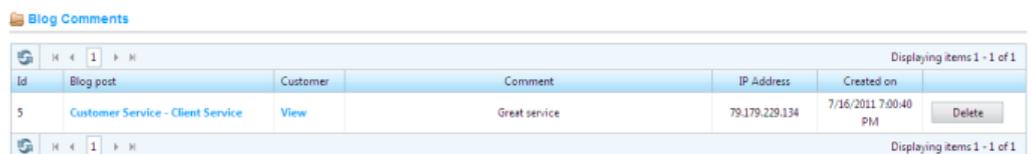
*Note: You can click **Edit** in the **Blog posts** window to display the **Edit Blog Post Details** window and then edit the blog post, as described above.*

## Blog Comments

This section describes how to add a blog comment in nopCommerce.

► **To manage blog comments:**

- 1 From the Content Management menu, select Blog > Blog Comments. The Blog Comments window is displayed.



The screenshot shows the 'Blog Comments' window with a table containing one comment. The table has columns for Id, Blog post, Customer, Comment, IP Address, and Created on. A 'Delete' button is visible next to the comment.

Id	Blog post	Customer	Comment	IP Address	Created on	
5	Customer Service - Client Service	View	Great service	79.179.229.134	7/16/2011 7:00:40 PM	Delete

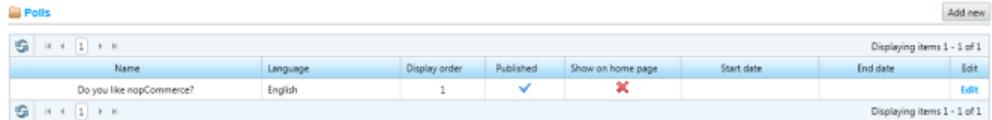
- 2 You can click **Delete** beside the blog comment to delete. The blog comment will be removed from the system.

# Polls

This section describes how to add polls, define their names language and keywords and define whether to display them in the store.

## ▶ Adding polls:

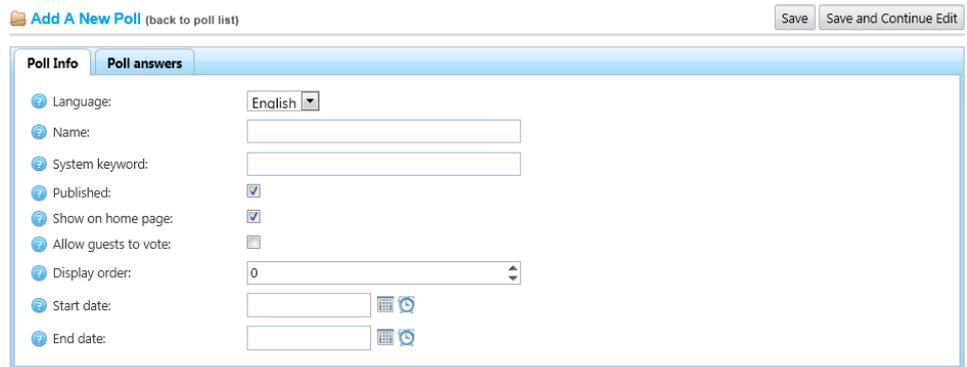
- 1 From the **Content Management** menu, select **Polls**. The **Polls** window is displayed, as shown below.



The screenshot shows a web interface for managing polls. At the top right is an 'Add new' button. Below it is a table with the following columns: Name, Language, Display order, Published, Show on home page, Start date, End date, and Edit. The table contains one row with the following data: Name: 'Do you like nopCommerce?', Language: 'English', Display order: '1', Published: checked (blue checkmark), Show on home page: unchecked (red X), Start date: empty, End date: empty, and Edit: 'Edit' link. Navigation icons and 'Displaying items 1 - 1 of 1' are visible on the left and right sides of the table.

Name	Language	Display order	Published	Show on home page	Start date	End date	Edit
Do you like nopCommerce?	English	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>			Edit

- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add a New Poll** window is displayed.



The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Poll' form. At the top left is a 'back to poll list' link. At the top right are 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit' buttons. The form has two tabs: 'Poll Info' (selected) and 'Poll answers'. Under 'Poll Info', there are several fields: Language (dropdown menu set to 'English'), Name (text input), System keyword (text input), Published (checked checkbox), Show on home page (checked checkbox), Allow guests to vote (unchecked checkbox), Display order (dropdown menu set to '0'), Start date (calendar icon), and End date (calendar icon).

- 3 From the **Language** dropdown list, select the language of the poll. Customers will only see polls for their selected language.
- 4 In the **Name** field, enter the descriptive name of this poll. This is the text the customers will see. For example, *What do you think of our store?*
- 5 In the **System keyword** field, enter a system keyword for this poll. System keyword is a unique name used for internal purposes.
- 6 Select the **Published** checkbox to publish this poll in your store.
- 7 Select the **Show on home page** checkbox to display this poll on your home page.
- 8 Select the **Allow guests to vote** checkbox to enable guests to vote for the poll.
- 9 In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of the poll. A value of **1** represents the top of the list.

- 10 In the **Start date** calendar field, select the poll start date in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

*Note: You can leave this field empty if you do not want to define a poll start date.*

- 11 In the **End date** calendar field, select the poll end date in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

*Note: You can leave this field empty if you do not want to define a poll end date.*

- 12 Click **Save**.
- 13 You can click **Edit** in the **Manage polls** window to display the **Edit poll Details** window and then edit the poll, as described above. You can also edit the poll answers and click **Update**. You can remove a poll answer by clicking **Delete**.
- 14 Select the **Poll answers** tab, as follows:

Edit Poll Details - What Do You Think Of The Store (back to poll list) Save Save and Continue Edit Delete

Poll Info Poll answers

Add new record

Name	Number of votes	Display order	
	0	0	Insert Cancel

- 15 Click **Add new record** to enter a new poll answer and then click **Insert**. You can then click **Edit** to edit the record, if required. Repeat this step if needed.

## Forums

The nopCommerce forums page contains new questions and discussions.

Customers need to register before posting a message to the forum. This section defines the access rights you want to provide to your customers, the editing and deleting rights, the number of posts to display on a page and more, from the **Forums Settings** window, shown below.

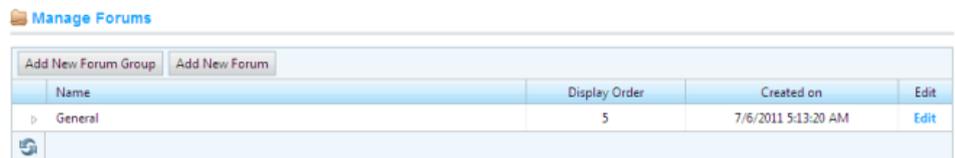
## Managing Forums

To enable customers to create forum topics and posts, store owner have to first enable forums on the **Forums Settings** page, described above then create a forum group and then create at least one forum. After all these steps are completed, the customer can start using forums, as described on page 298.

*Note: From the Forum Settings window, displayed by selecting **Settings>Forum Settings** from the **Configuration** menu. You must ensure the **Forums Enabled** checkbox is checked to enable the store owner to create forums*

### ► To create forums groups:

- 1 From the **Content Management** menu, select **Forums**. The **Manage Forums** window is displayed.



- 2 Click the **Add New Forum Group** button. The **Add A New Forum Group** window is displayed.

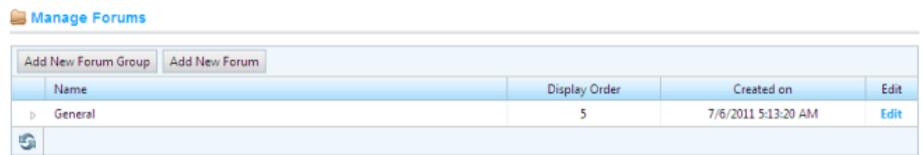


The screenshot shows the 'Add New Forum Group' window. At the top, there is a link '(back to forum group list)' and two buttons: 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit'. Below these are two input fields: 'Name' and 'Display Order'. The 'Name' field is empty, and the 'Display Order' field has the value '1'.

- 3 Define the new forum group details, as follows:
  - In the **Name** field, enter the name of this new forum group that the customer will see.
  - In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of the forum group. A value of **1** represents the top of the list.
- 4 Click **Save**.
- 5 You can click **Edit** in the **Manage forums** window to display the **Edit forum group details** window and then edit the forum group, as described above.

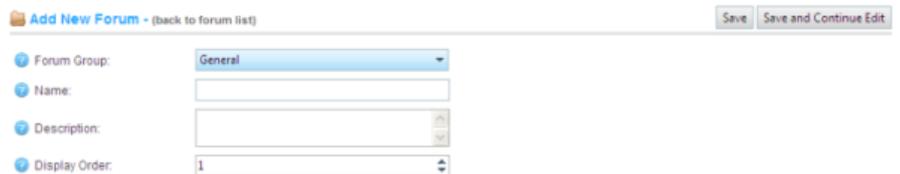
► **To create forums:**

- 1 From the **Content Management** menu, select **Forums**. The **Manage Forums** window is displayed.



*Note: Forums can be added only if you have at least one forum group.*

- 2 Click the **Add New Forum** button. The **Add New Forum** window is displayed.



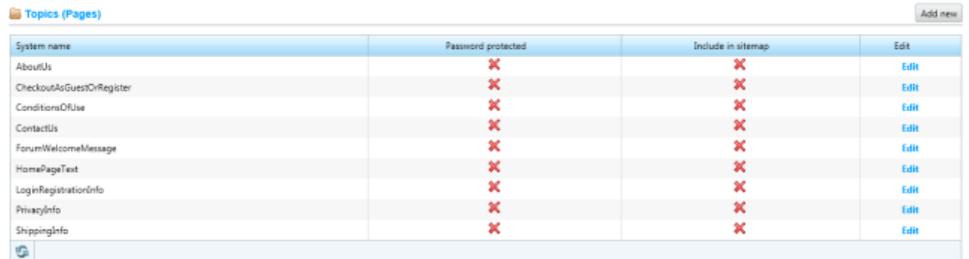
- 3 Define the new forum details, as follows:
  - From the **Forum group** dropdown list, select the required forum group.
  - In the **Name** field, enter the name of the new forum.
  - In the **Description** field, enter a description for the new forum.
  - In the **Display Order** field, enter the display order of the product template
- 4 Click **Save**.
- 5 You can click **Edit** in the **Manage Forums** window to display the **Edit forum details** window and then edit the forum, as described above.

## Topics (pages)

Topics (pages) are free form content blocks that can be displayed on your site, either embedded within other pages, or on a page of their own. These are often used for FAQ pages, policy pages, special instructions, and so on. To create custom pages, you, as the store owner, must create new topics, which you will see in the grid, and you can then enter content for your custom page, which can be written for each language separately. Click Edit topic content and save the content.

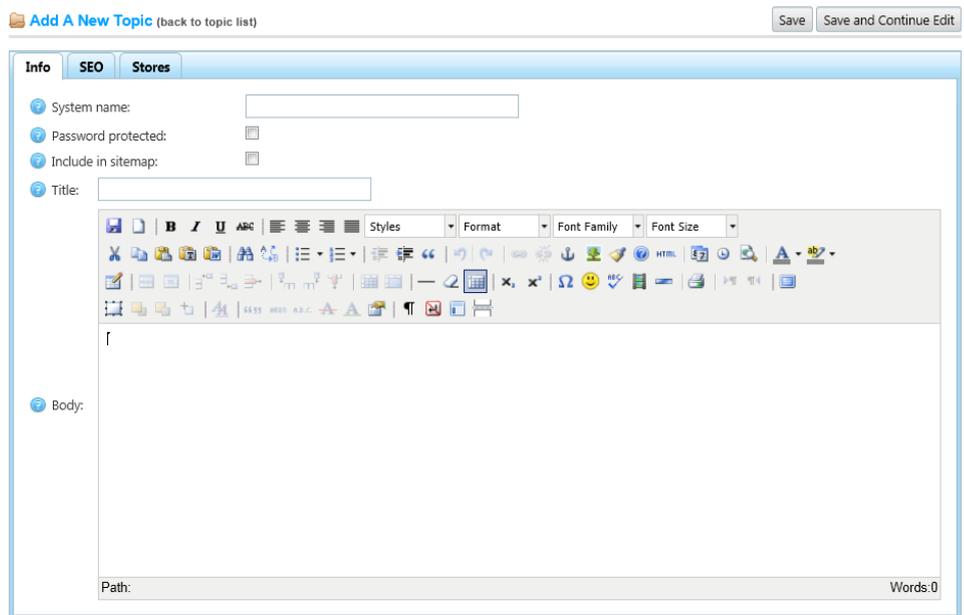
► **To manage topics:**

- 1 From the **Content Management** menu, select **Topics (Pages)**. The **Topics (pages)** window is displayed.



System name	Password protected	Include in sitemap	Edit
AboutUs	✗	✗	Edit
CheckoutAsGuestOrRegister	✗	✗	Edit
ConditionsOfUse	✗	✗	Edit
ContactUs	✗	✗	Edit
ForumWelcomeMessage	✗	✗	Edit
HomePageText	✗	✗	Edit
LoginRegistrationInfo	✗	✗	Edit
PrivacyInfo	✗	✗	Edit
ShippingInfo	✗	✗	Edit

- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add a New Topic** window is displayed, showing the **Topic Info** tab, as follows:



**Add A New Topic** (back to topic list) Save Save and Continue Edit

**Info** **SEO** **Stores**

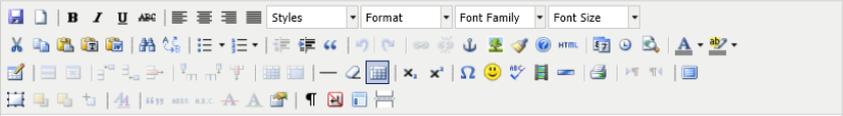
System name:

Password protected:

Include in sitemap:

Title:

Body: 

  
[

Path:  Words: 0

- 3 In the **System name** field, enter the system name of this topic.
- 4 Select the **Is password protected** checkbox, if this topic is password protected. The **Password** field is displayed.
- 5 In the **Password** field, enter the password to access the content of this topic.
- 6 Select the **Include in sitemap** checkbox, to include this topic in the sitemap.

*Note: When in Edit mode, the **URL** property is displayed here, enabling you to click on the **URL** of the topic.*

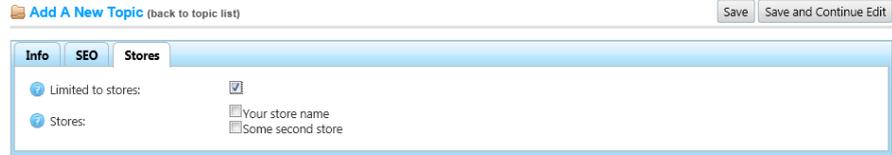
- 7 Select the required language tab. By default, only the **English** language exists.
- 8 Edit the topic information, as follows:
  - In the **Title** field, enter a title for the topic as required.
  - In the **Body** field, edit the topic content using the editor provided.
- 9 Select the **SEO** tab, as follows:

- 10 Define the following SEO parameters:
  - In the **Meta keywords** field, enter the required category meta keywords, which are a brief and concise list of the most important themes of your page. The meta keywords tag takes the following format:
    - `<meta name="keywords" content="keywords, keyword, keyword phrase, etc." >`
  - In the **Meta description** field, enter a description of the category. The meta description tag is a brief and concise summary of your page's content. The meta description tag is in the following format:
    - `<meta name="description" content="Brief description of the contents of your page." >`
  - In the **Meta title** field, enter the required title. The title tag specifies the title of your Web page. It is code which is inserted into the header of your web page and is in the following format :
 

```
<head>
<title> Creating Title Tags for Search Engine Optimization
& Web Usability </title>
</head>
```

- 11 Select the **Stores** tab, as follows:

- 12 Select the **Limited to stores** checkbox, to enable defining the stores where the topic will be available. The window is expanded, as follows:



The screenshot shows a web interface for adding a new topic. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'Add A New Topic (back to topic list)' and two buttons: 'Save' and 'Save and Continue Edit'. Below this is a tabbed interface with three tabs: 'Info', 'SEO', and 'Stores'. The 'Stores' tab is active. Under the 'Stores' tab, there are two sections. The first section is 'Limited to stores:' with a checked checkbox. The second section is 'Stores:' with two unchecked checkboxes: 'Your store name' and 'Some second store'.

*Note: This checkbox is used only when you have several stores configured. For further details refer to [Multi-store Support](#).*

- 13 Click **Save**. The topic will be displayed in the public store.

*Note: You can click **Edit** in the **Manage Topics** window to display the **Edit Topic** window and then edit the topic, as described above. In the **Topic Info** tab, you can click on the URL link at the bottom of the page to view the URL of the topic in the public store.*

# Widgets

A widget (or control) is an element of a graphical user interface (GUI) that displays information that can be changed by the user. nopCommerce has several built-in widget plugins (**Google Analytics** or **Nivo Slider**). A list of available widget plugins are displayed in the grid. When adding a widget you should select a widget zone. The widget zone is a part of UI (user-interface) in the public store where this widget will be displayed or rendered. For example, you can place Live Person chat widget on the left column or on the right column.

This section includes the following:

- **Google Analytics Widget Plugin**, below
- **Nivo Slider Widget Plugin**, page 219

## Google Analytics Widget Plugin

This section describes how to add and integrate the Google Analytics widget plugin in your store.

► **To add the Google Analytics widget plugin:**

- 1 From the **Content Management** menu, select **Widgets**. The **Widgets** window is displayed.

Friendly name	System name	Display order	Is active	Configure	Edit
Google Analytics	Widgets.GoogleAnalytics	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Live person (Chat)	Widgets.LivePersonChat	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

- 2 Besides the **Google Analytics** plugin, click **Edit**. The window is expanded, as follows:

Friendly name	System name	Display order	Is active	Configure	Edit
Google Analytics	Widgets.GoogleAnalytics	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>
Live person (Chat)	Widgets.LivePersonChat	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

- 3 Select the **Is active** checkbox to enable the **Google Analytics** plugin.

4 Click **Configure**. The **Configure – Google Analytics** window is displayed, as follows:

**Configure - Google Analytics** (back to widget list)

Google Analytics is a free website stats tool from Google. It keeps track of statistics about the visitors and ecommerce conversion on your website.

Follow the next steps to enable Google Analytics integration:

- [Create a Google Analytics account](#) and follow the wizard to add your website
- Copy the Google Analytics ID into the ID box below
- Copy the tracking code from Google Analytics into the Tracking Code box below
- Click the 'Save' button below and Google Analytics will be integrated into your store

Widget zone:

ID:

Tracking code with (ECOMMERCE) line:

```
<!-- Google code for Analytics tracking -->
<script type="text/javascript">
var _gaq = _gaq || [];
_gaq.push(['_setAccount', '(GOOGLEID)']);
_gaq.push(['_trackPageview']);
(EMMERCE)
(function() {
var ga = document.createElement('script'); ga.type =
'text/javascript'; ga.async = true;
ga.src = ('https:' == document.location.protocol ? 'https://ssl' :
'http://www') + '.google-analytics.com/ga.js';
var s = document.getElementsByTagName('script')[0];
s.parentNode.insertBefore(ga, s);

_gaq.push(['_addTrans', '(ORDERID)', '(SITE)', '(TOTAL)', '(TAX)',
'(SHIP)', '(CITY)', '(STATEPROVINCE)', '(COUNTRY)']);
(DETAILS)

_gaq.push(['_addItem', '(ORDERID)', '(PRODUCTSKU)', '(PRODUCTNAME)',
'(CATEGORYNAME)', '(UNITPRICE)', '(QUANTITY) ']);

```

Tracking code for (ECOMMERCE) part, with (DETAILS) line:

Tracking code for (DETAILS) part:

5 From the **Widget zone** dropdown list, select the widget zone. Widget zone is a part of UI (user-interface) in the public store where this widget will be displayed or rendered.

6 Perform the following steps to enable Google Analytics integration:

- Create a **Google Analytics** account at the following link <http://www.google.com/analytics/> and follow the wizard to add your website.
- Copy the **Google Analytics ID** into the ID box below
- Click the **Save** button below and **Google Analytics** will be integrated in your store.

*Note: After a widget has been added, you can click **Edit** in the **Widgets** window, beside the required widget to display the **Edit Widget Details** window and then edit the widget details, as described above.*

## Nivo Slider Widget Plugin

This section describes how to add and integrate the Nivo Slider widget plugin. This plugin allows you to display a slider on the home page of your store..

► **To add the Nivo Slider widget plugin:**

- 1 From the **Content Management** menu, select **Widgets**. The **Widgets** window is displayed.

Widgets

Friendly name	System name	Display order	Is active	Configure	Edit
Google Analytics	Widgets.GoogleAnalytics	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Nivo Slider	Widgets.NivoSlider	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

- 2 Besides the **Nivo Slider** plugin, click **Edit**. The window is expanded, as follows:

Widgets

Friendly name	System name	Display order	Is active	Configure	Edit
Google Analytics	Widgets.GoogleAnalytics	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Nivo Slider	Widgets.NivoSlider	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>

- 3 Select the **Is active** checkbox to enable the **Nivo Slider** plugin.
- 4 Click **Configure**. The **Configure – Nivo Slider** window is displayed, as follows

Configure - Nivo Slider (back to widget list)

Picture 1

Picture: 

Comment:

URL:

Picture 2

Picture: 

Comment:

URL:

Picture 3

Picture: 

Comment:

URL:

- 5 Perform the following for each slider you would like to upload:
  - In the **Picture** field, click **Upload a file** to upload the required picture. Click **Remove picture** to remove the existing one.
  - In the **Comment** field, enter a comment for the picture or leave empty to display no text.
  - In the **URL** field, enter the required URL or leave empty if you do not want the picture to be clickable.
- 6 Click the **Save** button below and the **Nivo Slider** will be integrated in your store.

*Note: After a widget has been added, you can click **Edit** in the **Widgets** window, beside the required widget to display the **Edit Widget Details** window and then edit the widget details, as described above.*

# Message Templates

When editing a message template, you must first select the required language of the template since each template is localized for each language and only those users with the selected language will be able to see it.

## ► To edit message templates

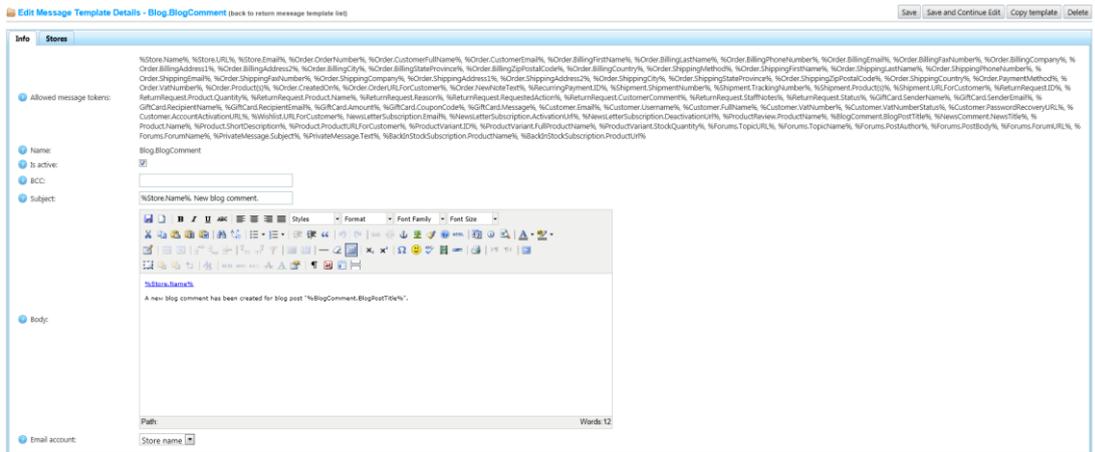
- 1 From the Content Management menu, select Message Templates. The Message Templates window is displayed.

 **Message Templates**

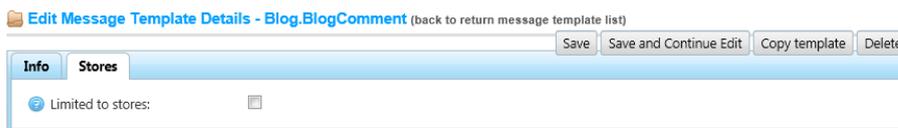
Store:

Name	Subject	Is active	Limited to stores	Edit
Blog.BlogComment	%Store.Name%. New blog comment.	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Customer.BackInStock	%Store.Name%. Back in stock notification	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Customer.EmailValidationMessage	%Store.Name%. Email validation	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Customer.NewOrderNote	%Store.Name%. New order note has been added	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Customer.NewPM	%Store.Name%. You have received a new private message	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Customer.PasswordRecovery	%Store.Name%. Password recovery	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Customer.WelcomeMessage	Welcome to %Store.Name%	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Forums.NewForumPost	%Store.Name%. New Post Notification.	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Forums.NewForumTopic	%Store.Name%. New Topic Notification.	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
GiftCard.Notification	%GiftCard.SenderName% has sent you a gift card for %Store.Name%	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
NewCustomer.Notification	%Store.Name%. New customer registration	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
NewReturnRequest.StoreOwnerNotification	%Store.Name%. New return request.	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
News.NewsComment	%Store.Name%. New news comment.	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
NewsletterSubscription.ActivationMessage	%Store.Name%. Subscription activation message.	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
NewVATSubmitted.StoreOwnerNotification	%Store.Name%. New VAT number is submitted.	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
OrderCancelled.CustomerNotification	%Store.Name%. Your order cancelled	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
OrderCompleted.CustomerNotification	%Store.Name%. Your order completed	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
OrderPlaced.CustomerNotification	Order receipt from %Store.Name%.	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
OrderPlaced.StoreOwnerNotification	%Store.Name%. Purchase Receipt for Order #%Order.OrderNumber%	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
OrderPlaced.VendorNotification	%Store.Name%. Order placed	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Product.ProductReview	%Store.Name%. New product review.	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
QuantityBelow.StoreOwnerNotification	%Store.Name%. Quantity below notification. %Product.Name%	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
RecurringPaymentCancelled.StoreOwnerNotification	%Store.Name%. Recurring payment cancelled	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>
ReturnRequestStatusChanged.CustomerNotification	%Store.Name%. Return request status was changed.	✓	Demo store	<a href="#">Edit</a>

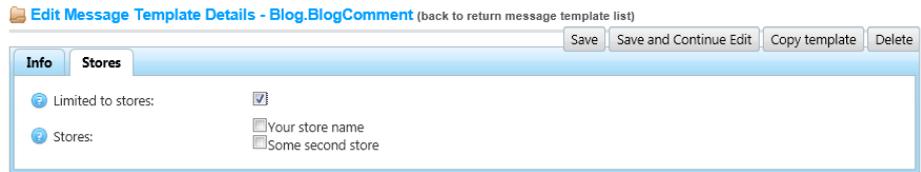
- Click **Edit** beside the message template to edit. The **Edit Message Template Details** window is displayed.



- Select the required language tab. By default, only the **English** language exists.
- Edit the following message details:
  - Select the **Is Active** option to indicate this message template is active and should be sent.
  - In the **BCC** field, enter the blind copy recipients of this e-mail message.
  - In the **Subject** field, edit the subject of the message. You can include tokens in the subject.
  - In the **Body** field, edit the body of the message.
  - From the **Email account** dropdown list, select the email account used to send this message template.  
Emails accounts are configured in the **Administration Area**, by selecting **Email Accounts** from the **Configuration** menu, as described in Email Accounts on page 160.
- Select the **Stores** tab, as follows:



- 6 Select the **Limited to stores** checkbox, to enable defining the stores where the message template will be available. The window is expanded, as follows:



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Edit Message Template Details - Blog.BlogComment" with a link "(back to return message template list)". At the top right are buttons for "Save", "Save and Continue Edit", "Copy template", and "Delete". Below these is a tabbed interface with "Info" and "Stores" tabs. The "Stores" tab is active and contains two sections: "Limited to stores:" with a checked checkbox, and "Stores:" with two unchecked checkboxes labeled "Your store name" and "Some second store".

*Note: This checkbox is used only when you have several stores configured. For further details refer to [Multi-store Support](#).*

- 7 Click **Save**. The message template will be displayed in the public store.

*Note: To create a full copy of the message template, click **Copy template**. This is useful if you have several stores configured and want to create distinct templates for each of your stores.*

# Location

This section describes the configuration menu settings. It includes the following:

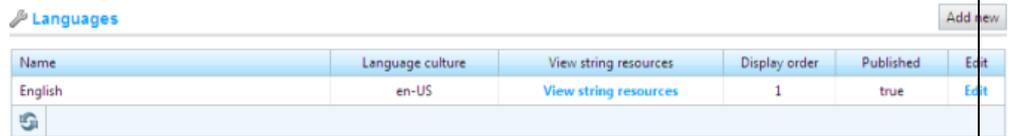
- **Localization**, below
- **Countries and States**, page 225
- **Languages**, page 228
- **Currencies**, page 230

## Localization

This section describes how to manage locale string resources of each store for any published language.

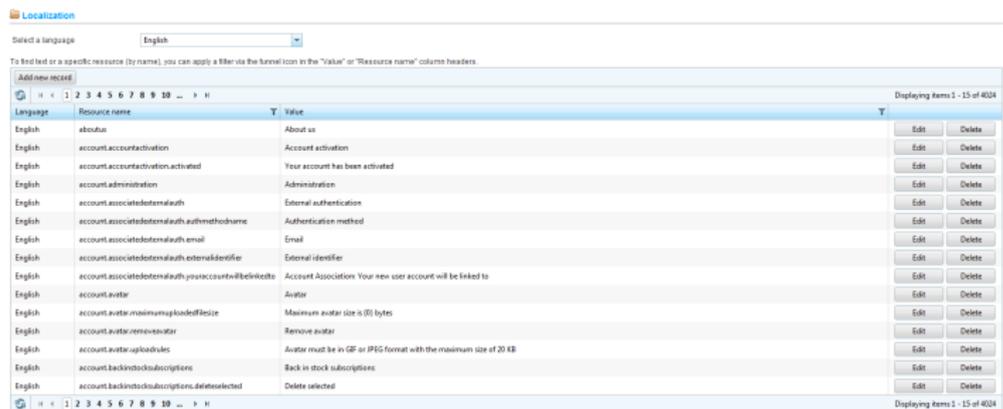
► **To manage string resources:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu select, **Languages**. The **Languages** window is displayed.



Name	Language culture	View string resources	Display order	Published	Edit
English	en-US	<a href="#">View string resources</a>	1	true	<a href="#">Edit</a>

- 2 From the required language row (**English**, in this case), click the **View string resources** link. The **Localization** window is displayed.



Language	Resource name	Value	Edit	Delete
English	aboutus	About us	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.accountactivation	Account activation	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.accountactivation.activated	Your account has been activated	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.administration	Administration	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.associatedotemailauth	External authentication	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.associatedotemailauth.authmethodname	Authentication method	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.associatedotemailauth.email	Email	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.associatedotemailauth.externalIdentifier	External identifier	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.associatedotemailauth.youraccountwillbelinkedto	Account Association: Your new user account will be linked to	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.avatar	Avatar	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.avatar.maximumuploadfilesize	Maximum avatar size is (S) bytes	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.avatar.removeavatar	Remove avatar	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.avatar.uploadrules	Avatar must be in GIF or JPEG format with the maximum size of 20 KB	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.backintocksubscriptions	Back in stock subscriptions	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
English	account.backintocksubscriptions.deleteselected	Delete selected	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>

- 3 From the **Select language** dropdown list, filter your results by language.

- Click the **Add new record** button. The window is expanded enabling you to add a new record to the grid, as follows:

Language	Resource name	Value	
English	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Insert Cancel
English	AboutUs	About us	Edit Delete
English	Account.AccountActivation	Account activation	Edit Delete
English	Account.AccountActivation.Activated	Your account has been activated	Edit Delete
English	Account.Administration	Administration	Edit Delete
English	Account.Avatar	Avatar	Edit Delete

- In the **Resource name** field, enter the resource string identifier.
- In the **Resource value** field, enter a value for this resource string identifier.
- Click **Save**.

## Countries and States

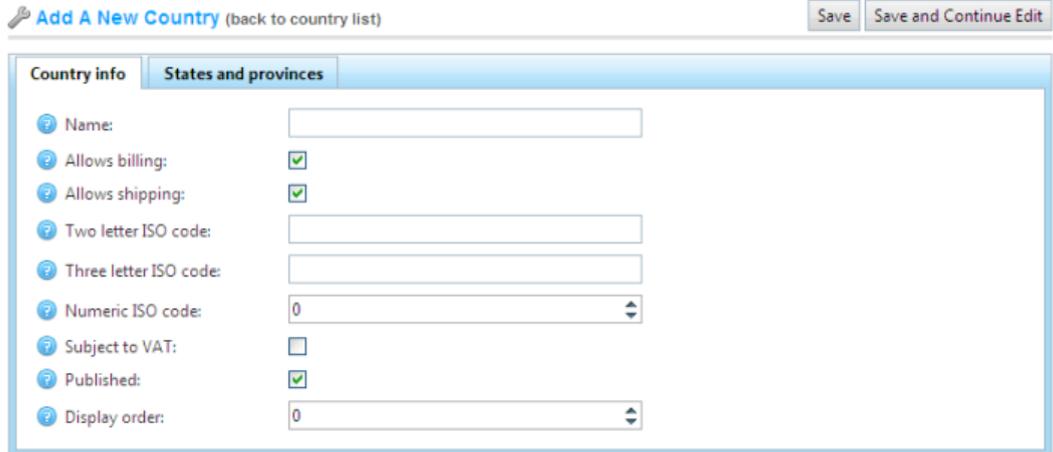
This section describes how to define the settings for the country where your customers are located. These settings are used in the registration information window, the billing and shipping address information window and more.

### ► To define the country settings:

- From the **Configuration** menu, select **Countries**. The **Countries** window is displayed.

Name	Allows billing	Allows shipping	Two letter ISO code	Three letter ISO code	Numeric ISO code	Subject to VAT	Number of states	Display order	Published	Edit
United States	✓	✓	US	USA	840	✗	52	1	✓	Edit
Canada	✓	✓	CA	CAN	124	✗	13	2	✓	Edit
Afghanistan	✓	✓	AF	AFG	4	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Albania	✓	✓	AL	ALB	8	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Algeria	✓	✓	DZ	DZA	12	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
American Samoa	✓	✓	AS	ASM	16	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Andorra	✓	✓	AD	AND	20	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Angola	✓	✓	AO	AGO	24	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Anguilla	✓	✓	AI	AIA	660	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Antarctica	✓	✓	AQ	ATA	10	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Antigua and Barbuda	✓	✓	AG	ATG	28	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Argentina	✓	✓	AR	ARG	32	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Armenia	✓	✓	AM	ARM	51	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Aruba	✓	✓	AW	ABW	533	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Australia	✓	✓	AU	AUS	36	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Austria	✓	✓	AT	AUT	40	✓	0	100	✓	Edit
Azerbaijan	✓	✓	AZ	AZE	31	✗	0	100	✓	Edit
Bahamas	✓	✓	BS	BHS	44	✗	0	100	✓	Edit

- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add a New Country** window is displayed showing the **Country Info** tab.



- 3 Define the country settings, as follows:
  - In the **Name** field, enter the name of the country.
  - Select the **Allows registration** checkbox to enable customers located in this country to register for a store account. By default, all the countries are active. If you need to limit the number of countries from which profile registrations will be welcome, deactivate all the countries that you do not want to be included,
  - Select the **Allows billing** checkbox to enable billing to customers located in this country.
  - Select the **Allows shipping** checkbox to enable shipping to customers located in this country.
  - In the **Two letter ISO code** field, enter the two letter ISO code for this country.
  - In the **Three letter ISO code** field, enter the two letter ISO code for this country.
  - In the **Numeric letter ISO code** field, enter the numeric ISO code for this country.
  - Select the **Subject to VAT** checkbox, to indicate customers in this country are charged EU VAT (the European Union Value Added Tax).

*Note: This field is used only when the **EU VAT** option is enabled on the **Tax Settings** page, that is accessed in the **Administration Area** by selecting **Tax>Tax Settings** from the **Configuration** menu.*

- Select the **Published** checkbox to enable this country to be visible for new account registrations and for the creation of shipping and billing addresses.
  - In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of this country. A value of 1 represents the top of the list.
- 4 Click **Save**.
- 5 Select the **State and Provinces** tab, as follows:

- 6 Click the **Add new record** button to add a new state or province. The window is expanded, as follows:

- 7 Define the state/province details, as follows:
- In the **Name** field, enter then name of the state or province.
  - In the **Abbreviation** field, enter an abbreviation for the province or state.
  - Select the **Published** checkbox to publish the state or province on the website.
  - In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of this province or state. A value of **1** represents the top of the list.
- 8 Click **Save**

*Note: You can click **Edit** in the **Countries** window to display the **Edit country details** window and then edit the country details, as described above.*

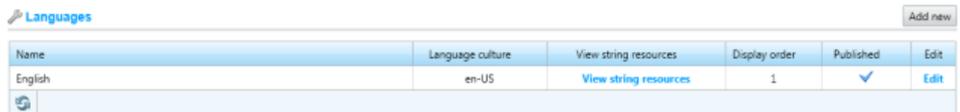
# Languages

In nopCommerce, your store can have several languages installed. However, the customers will only see the data that has been defined in their selected language. After adding a new language, the **Import resources from XML** button appears enabling you to import all resources for new language. After adding a new language, the **Export to XML** button appears enabling you to export all resources (including message templates).

*Note: You can download new language packs on [www.nopCommerce.com](http://www.nopCommerce.com) from the [Extensions section](#)*

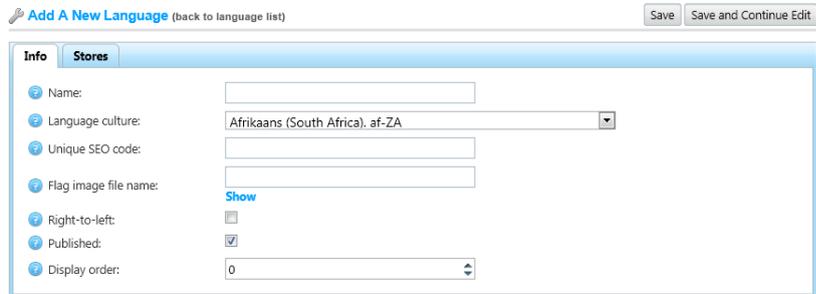
► **To add a new language:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Languages**. The **Languages** window is displayed:



Name	Language culture	View string resources	Display order	Published	Edit
English	en-US	<a href="#">View string resources</a>	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a>

- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add A New Language** window is displayed.



**Add A New Language** (back to language list) Save Save and Continue Edit

**Info** **Stores**

Name:

Language culture: Afrikaans (South Africa). af-ZA

Unique SEO code:

Flag image file name:  [Show](#)

Right-to-left:

Published:

Display order: 0

- 3 Define the language settings, as follows:

- In the **Name** field, enter the language name.
- From the **Language culture** dropdown list, select the language specific culture code.
- In the **Unique SEO code** field, enter the unique two letter SEO code. This code used to generate URLs such as: <http://www.yourStore.com/en/> when you have more than one published language.

*Note: You should also enable the **SEO friendly URLs with multiple languages** option by selecting **Configuration > Settings > General And Miscellaneous Settings** and then select the **Localization settings** tab*

- In the **Flag image file name** field, enter the flag image file name. The image should be saved under the `.../images/flags` directory.
- Select the **Right-to-left** checkbox to enable right to left support for this language, where writing starts from the right of the page, and continues to the left (for example, Arabic, Hebrew, etc). The active theme should support RTL (have the appropriate CSS style file). This option affects the public store only.
- Select the **Published** checkbox to enable this language to be visible and selected by visitors in your store.
- In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of this language. A value of 1 represents the top of the list.

4 Select the **Stores** tab, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Language' form with the 'Stores' tab selected. The 'Limited to stores' checkbox is unchecked. The form includes a 'Save' button and a 'Save and Continue Edit' button.

5 Select the **Limited to stores** checkbox, to enable defining the stores where the language will be available. The window is expanded, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Language' form with the 'Stores' tab selected. The 'Limited to stores' checkbox is checked, and the 'Stores' field is expanded to show 'Your store name' and 'Some second store' options. The form includes a 'Save' button and a 'Save and Continue Edit' button.

*Note: This checkbox is used only when you have several stores configured. For further details refer to [Multi-store Support](#).*

6 Click **Save**.

## Currencies

In nopCommerce, only primary store currency is used, which is the currency against which all other allowed currencies will be configured. Although nopCommerce allows having multiple currencies for displaying your product prices, the primary currency is used for payment transactions with online payment gateways.

If you are using an online payment gateway (such as, PayPal, Google Checkout) the amount is sent to the payment gateway and will be the price you entered in primary store currency.

Primary store currency is used by the store administrators only. It is used for setting product prices and does not have to be the same as the published currencies.

If you have only one published currency, the store will not display a currency selector, or any currency symbol with prices. If more than one currency is published, all prices are marked with the currently selected currency.

nopCommerce recommends removing any currency that is not required.

nopCommerce uses an exchange rate to calculate the amounts for published currencies. The exchange rate is entered when a currency is added or edited. Or you can use a real-time exchange rate service to calculate the amount, and the price of the product is multiplied by the exchange rate provided.

Exchange rates fluctuate on a daily basis. Therefore, you can edit the exchange rate as often as you need in order to stay current. Actual transactions are only handled in your store's primary currency. On credit card transactions, banks will usually make exchanges automatically based on the most current currency values.

► To define currency settings:

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Currencies**. The **Currencies** window is displayed.

 **Currencies** Save Get live rates Add new

Current exchange rate provider:  

Auto update enabled:

Name	Currency code	Rate	Is primary exchange rate currency	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	Is primary store currency	Mark as primary store currency	Published	Edit
US Dollar	USD	1	✓	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✓	Mark as primary store currency	✓	Edit
Australian Dollar	AUD	0.94	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
British Pound	GBP	0.61	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Canadian Dollar	CAD	0.98	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Chinese Yuan Renminbi	CNY	6.48	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Euro	EUR	0.79	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✓	Edit
Hong Kong Dollar	HKD	7.75	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Japanese Yen	JPY	80.07	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Russian Rouble	RUB	27.7	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Swedish Krona	SEK	6.19	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Romanian Leu	RON	2.85	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit

- 2 From the **Current exchange rate provider** dropdown list, select the exchange rate provider that will be used to get live rates:
- 3 Select the **Auto update enabled** checkbox, to enable receiving an automatic update of currency rates every hour.
- 4 Click **Save**.

► **To add a new currency:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Currencies**. The **Currencies** window is displayed.

Currencies

Current exchange rate provider: Money converter exchange rate provider

Auto update enabled:

Name	Currency code	Rate	Is primary exchange rate currency	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	Is primary store currency	Mark as primary store currency	Published	Edit
US Dollar	USD	1	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✓	Mark as primary store currency	✓	Edit
Australian Dollar	AUD	0.94	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
British Pound	GBP	0.61	✓	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Canadian Dollar	CAD	0.98	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Chinese Yuan Renminbi	CNY	6.48	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Euro	EUR	0.79	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✓	Edit
Hong Kong Dollar	HKD	7.75	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Japanese Yen	JPY	80.07	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Russian Rouble	RUB	27.7	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Swedish Krona	SEK	6.19	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit
Romanian Leu	RON	2.85	✗	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	✗	Mark as primary store currency	✗	Edit

- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add A New Currency** window is displayed.

Add A New Currency (back to currency list)

Save Save and Continue Edit

Info Stores

Name:

Currency code:

Rate:

Display locale: Afrikaans (South Africa), af-ZA

Custom formatting:

Published:

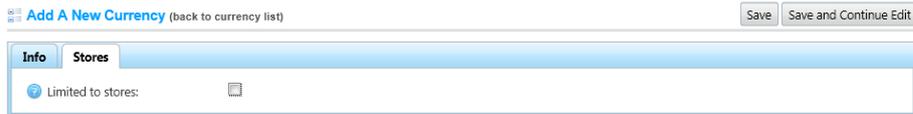
Display order:

- 3 Define the currency settings, as follows:

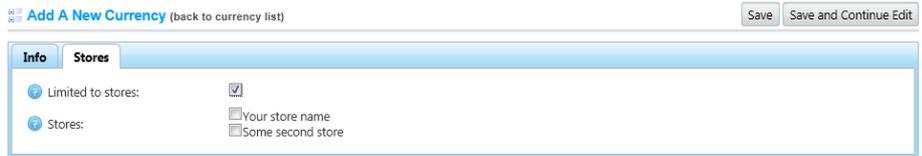
- In the **Name** field, enter the name of the currency.
- In the **Currency code** field, enter the currency code.
- In the **Rate** field, enter the exchange rate against the primary exchange rate of the currency.
- From the **Display locale** dropdown list, select the display locale for currency values.
- In the **Custom Formatting** field, enter the custom formatting to be applied to the currency values.

- Select the **Published** checkbox to enable this currency to be visible and selected by visitors in your store. nopCommerce supports a multi-currency pricing display. If you have several published currencies, customers will be able select the currency they want.
- In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of this currency. A value of 1 represents the top of the list.

4 Select the **Stores** tab, as follows:



5 Select the **Limited to stores** checkbox, to enable defining the stores where the currency will be available. The window is expanded, as follows:



*Note: This checkbox is used only when you have several stores configured. For further details refer to [Multi-store Support](#).*

6 Click **Save**.

*Note: You can click **Edit** in the **Currencies** window to display the **Edit currency details** window and then edit the currency details, as described above.*

► To get live rates:

- 1 From the **Currencies** window, shown on page 232. Click **Get live rates**. The window is expanded as follows:

**Currencies** Save Get live rates Add new

Current exchange rate provider: Money converter exchange rate provider

Auto update enabled:

Name	Currency code	Display locale	Rate	Display order	Is primary exchange rate currency	Mark as primary exchange rate currency	Is primary store currency	Mark as primary store currency	Published	Edit
US Dollar	USD	en-US	1.00	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Australian Dollar	AUD	en-AU	0.94	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
British Pound	GBP	en-GB	0.81	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Canadian Dollar	CAD	en-CA	0.98	4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Chinese Yuan Renminbi	CNY	zh-CN	6.48	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Euro	EUR		0.88	6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Hong Kong Dollar	HKD	zh-HK	7.75	7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Japanese Yen	JPY	ja-JP	80.07	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Russian Ruble	RUR	ru-RU	27.70	9	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Swedish Krona	SEK	sv-SE	6.29	10	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit
Romanian Leu	RON	ro-RO	2.85	11	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Select	<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit

**Live currency rates**

Currency Code	Rate	Apply rate
AED	3.67	Apply rate
ARS	4.13	Apply rate
AUD	0.92	Apply rate
BBD	2.00	Apply rate
BHD	0.38	Apply rate
BOB	7.01	Apply rate
BRL	1.55	Apply rate
CAD	0.95	Apply rate
CHF	0.82	Apply rate
CLP	482.50	Apply rate
CNY	6.45	Apply rate
COP	1700.87	Apply rate
CZK	16.96	Apply rate
DKK	5.20	Apply rate
EGP	5.06	Apply rate
EUR	0.70	Apply rate

- 2 Click **Apply rate** beside the required currency to apply.
- 3 Click **Edit** beside the required currency to edit. The **Edit Currency Details** window is displayed:

**Edit Currency Details - US Dollar** (back to currency list) Save Save and Continue Edit Delete

1 Name:   
 2 Currency code:   
 3 Rate:   
 4 Display locale:   
 5 Custom formatting:   
 6 Published:   
 7 Display order:   
 8 Created on: 7/6/2011 5:12:17 AM

- 4 Edit the currency details, as follows:
  - In the **Name** field, enter the name of the currency.
  - In the **Currency code** field, enter the currency code.
  - In the **Rate** field, enter the exchange rate against the primary exchange rate of the currency.
  - From the **Display locale** dropdown list, select the display locale for currency values.
  - In the **Custom Formatting** field, enter the custom formatting to be applied to the currency values.
  - Select the **Published** checkbox to enable this currency to be visible and selected by visitors in your store. nopCommerce supports a multi-currency pricing display. If you have several published currencies, customers will be able select the currency they want.
  - In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of this currency. A value of 1 represents the top of the list.
- 5 Click **Save**.

# Measures

This section describes how to add and edit the weights and dimensions in the system as well as setting the primary weight and dimension used in nopCommerce.

This section describes how to add weights and dimensions as described in the procedures below.

► **To add dimensions:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Measures > Dimensions**. The **Dimensions** window is displayed, as follows:

**Dimensions**

NOTE: If you change your primary dimension, then do not forget to update the appropriate ratios of the units

Name	System keyword	Ratio to primary dimension	Display order	Is primary dimension	Mark as primary dimension	
inch(es)	inches	1	1	✓	<input type="button" value="Mark as primary dimension"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
feet	feet	0.08333333	2	✗	<input type="button" value="Mark as primary dimension"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
meter(s)	meters	0.0254	3	✗	<input type="button" value="Mark as primary dimension"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
millimetre(s)	millimetres	25.4	4	✗	<input type="button" value="Mark as primary dimension"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>

*Note: You can set the primary dimension by clicking **Mark as primary dimension**.*

- 2 Click **Add new record**. The window is expanded, as follows:

**Dimensions**

NOTE: if you change your primary dimension, then do not forget to update the appropriate ratios of the units

Name	System keyword	Ratio to primary dimension	Display order	Is primary dimension	Mark as primary dimension	
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="0.00000000"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Mark as primary dimension"/>	<input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
inch(es)	inches	1	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Mark as primary dimension"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
feet	feet	0.08333333	2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Mark as primary dimension"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
meter(s)	meters	0.0254	3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Mark as primary dimension"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
millimetre(s)	millimetres	25.4	4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Mark as primary dimension"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>

- 3 Define the new dimension details, as follows:

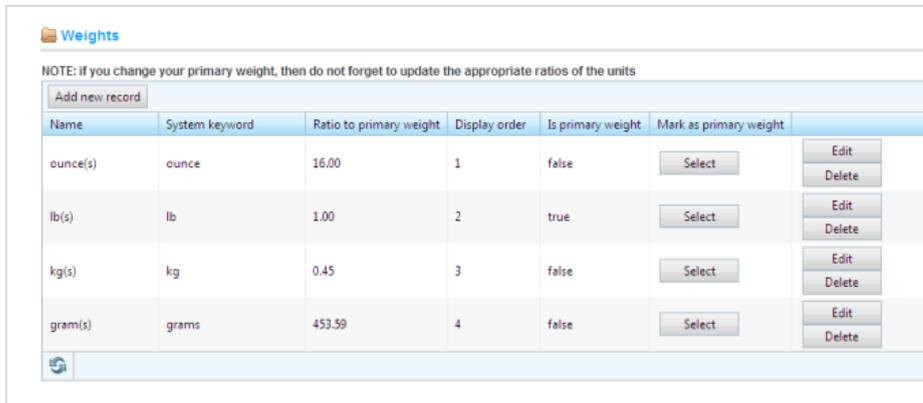
- In the **Name** field, enter the name of the new dimension.
- In the **System keyword** field, enter a system keyword for this dimension.
- In the **Ratio to primary dimension** field, enter the ratio against the primary dimension.
- In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of the dimension in the list. A value of 1 represents the top of the list.

- 4 Click **Save**. The new dimension is added to the **Dimensions** tab.

*Note: You can click **Edit** in the **Dimensions** window, beside the dimension to edit and then edit the dimension details, as described above.*

► **To add weights:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Measures>Weights**. The **Weights** window is displayed, as follows:

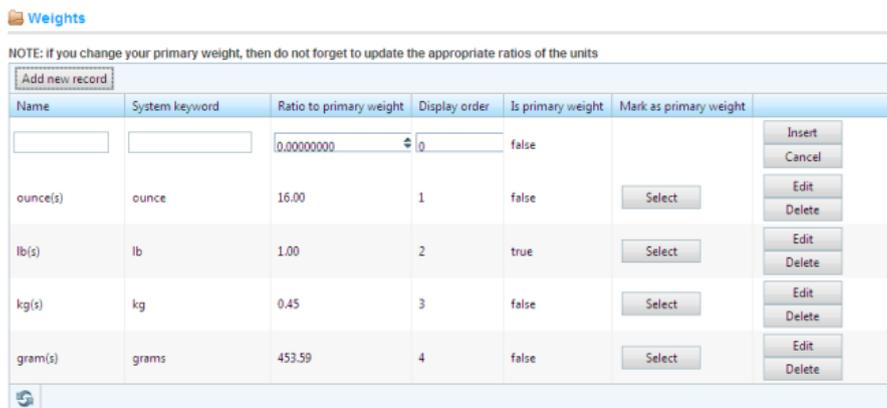


The screenshot shows the 'Weights' window with a table of existing weights. The table has columns for Name, System keyword, Ratio to primary weight, Display order, Is primary weight, Mark as primary weight, and Edit/Delete buttons. The 'Add new record' button is visible at the top left.

Name	System keyword	Ratio to primary weight	Display order	Is primary weight	Mark as primary weight	
ounce(s)	ounce	16.00	1	false	Select	Edit Delete
lb(s)	lb	1.00	2	true	Select	Edit Delete
kg(s)	kg	0.45	3	false	Select	Edit Delete
gram(s)	grams	453.59	4	false	Select	Edit Delete

*Note: You can set the primary weight by clicking **Select** in the **Mark as primary weight** column, of the required weight.*

- 2 Click **Add new record**. The window is expanded, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Weights' window with the 'Add new record' button expanded. The table now includes a new row for adding a weight, with fields for Name, System keyword, Ratio to primary weight, Display order, Is primary weight, Mark as primary weight, and Insert/Cancel buttons. The existing weights are still visible below.

Name	System keyword	Ratio to primary weight	Display order	Is primary weight	Mark as primary weight	
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	0.00000000	0	false		Insert Cancel
ounce(s)	ounce	16.00	1	false	Select	Edit Delete
lb(s)	lb	1.00	2	true	Select	Edit Delete
kg(s)	kg	0.45	3	false	Select	Edit Delete
gram(s)	grams	453.59	4	false	Select	Edit Delete

- 3 Define the new weight details, as follows:

- In the **Name** field, enter the name of the new dimension.
- In the **System keyword** field, enter a system keyword for this weight.
- In the **Ratio to primary weight** field, enter the ratio against the primary weight.
- In the **Display order** field, enter the display order of the weight in the list. A value of 1 represents the top of the list.

- 4 Click **Save**. The new dimension is added to the **Weight** tab.

*Note: You can click **Edit** in the **Weights** window, beside the weight to edit and then edit the weight details, as described above*

# SMS Providers

The **SMS Providers** window, accessed by selecting **Plugins** from the **Configuration** menu in the **Administration Area**, enables the store owner to configure several SMS providers.

*Note. The store owner can activate several SMS providers simultaneously.*

## ► To configure the Verizon SMS Provider:

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Plugins**. The **Plugins** window is displayed.
- 2 Navigate to the **Verizon SMS provider** in the displayed window:

Promotion feeds	Google Product Search	PromotionFeed.Pricing	1.23	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Promotion feeds	PriceGrabber / Yahoo Shopping	PromotionFeed.PriceGrabber	1.04	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Shipping rate computation	Australia Post	Shipping.AustraliaPost	1.03	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Shipping rate computation	Feefo	Shipping.Feefo	1.07	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Shipping rate computation	Fixed Rate Shipping	Shipping.FixedRate	1.06	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Shipping rate computation	Shipping by weight	Shipping.ByWeight	1.11	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Shipping rate computation	UPS (United Parcel Service)	Shipping.UPS	1.06	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Shipping rate computation	USPS (US Postal Service)	Shipping.USPS	1.08	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Shipping rate computation	Canada Post	Shipping.CanadaPost	1.03	noCommerce team	3	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
SMS providers	Clickatell SMS Provider	Mobile.SMS.Clickatell	1.03	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
SMS providers	Verizon SMS Provider	Mobile.SMS.Verizon	1.04	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Tax providers	Fixed tax rate provider	Tax.FixedRate	1.03	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Tax providers	Free tax rate provider	Tax.FreeTaxRate	1.00	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Tax providers	Strikodon Basic (US and CA Only)	Tax.Strikodon.Basic	1.02	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit
Tax providers	Tax By Country & State & Zip	Tax.Country/State/Zip	1.15	noCommerce team	1	true	Configure	Uninstall	Edit

Click the **Configure** link beside the **Verizon SMS Provider**. The **Configure – Verizon SMS Provider** window is displayed, as follows:

Configure - Verizon SMS Provider (back to plugin list)

Enabled:

Email:

Save

---

Send test message

Message text:

Send

- 3 Select the **Enabled** checkbox to enable the SMS provider.

- 4 In the **Email** field, enter the Verizon email address, for example, [phonenumber@vtext.com](mailto:phonenumber@vtext.com).

This service is used to remind you by SMS not only by email. Meaning, you can also send these messages to your cellular phone. The most popular email carriers are displayed below for your information:

- T-Mobile: [phonenumber@tmomail.net](mailto:phonenumber@tmomail.net)
- Virgin Mobile: [phonenumber@vmobl.com](mailto:phonenumber@vmobl.com)
- Cingular: [phonenumber@cingularme.com](mailto:phonenumber@cingularme.com)
- Sprint: [phonenumber@messaging.sprintpcs.com](mailto:phonenumber@messaging.sprintpcs.com)
- Verizon: [phonenumber@vtext.com](mailto:phonenumber@vtext.com)
- Nextel: [phonenumber@messaging.nextel.com](mailto:phonenumber@messaging.nextel.com)

*Note: phone number is your 10 digit phone number.*

- 5 Click **Save**. When you receive a new order, an SMS text message will be sent to the mobile phone number you entered in the **Phone number** field.
- 6 In the **Send test message** area, enter the message text in the **Message text** field and click **Send**.

# External Authentication Methods

These methods allow users to login to nopCommerce site without entering their credentials (email and password). Users can be authenticated using an external site (such as, Facebook, Google, and so on). nopCommerce has three built-in external authentication methods.

After an external authentication method is configured and marked as active, users will have new authentication options on the login page.

You can enable logged-in users using external methods to be registered automatically by selecting **Configuration>Settings>Customer Settings** to display the **Customer Settings** page, and then select the **External authentication settings** tab and select the **Auto register enabled** checkbox. For further details refer to page 144.

► **To display the External Authentication Methods window:**

- From the **Configuration** menu, select **External Authentication Methods**. The **External Authentication Methods** window is displayed.

 **External Authentication Methods**

Friendly name	System name	Display order	Is active	Configure	Edit
OpenID	ExternalAuth.OpenId	1		<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Facebook	ExternalAuth.Facebook	5		<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

The external authentication methods and their configuration settings that you can use in nopCommerce are described below:

- **OpenId**, below
- **Facebook**, page 242

***Note:** To activate an external authentication method, Click the **Edit** button beside the required external authentication method, and check the **Is active checkbox** and click **Update**. The **Is active** option changes from *false* to *true*.*

## OpenId

Configuration is not required for OpenId. The store owner is only required to mark this method as active in order in enabled it. OpenID is an open standard that describes how users can be authenticated in a decentralized manner, removing the need for services to provide their own Ad Hoc systems and allowing users to consolidate their digital identities. After it is enabled users will be able to login using the following providers: Google, Yahoo, AOL, myOpenID, OpenID, LiveJournal, WordPress, Blogger, and more.

▶ **To activate OpenId:**

- Activate OpenId by clicking the **Edit** button beside the **OpenId** external authentication method, and check the **Is active** checkbox and click **Update**. The **Is active** option changes from false to true.

## Facebook

You can configure **Facebook**, in the **Configure Facebook** window, as described below.

▶ **To configure facebook:**

- 1 Activate **Facebook** by clicking the **Edit** button beside the **Facebook** external authentication method, and check the **Is active** checkbox and click **Update**. The **Is active** option changes from false to true.
- 2 Click **Configure**. The **Configure - Facebook** window is displayed.

 [Configure - Facebook](#) (back to authentication method list)

App ID/API Key:	<input type="text"/>
App Secret:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

- 3 In the **App ID/API Key** field, enter your Facebook client key identifier.
- 4 In the **App secret** field, enter your Facebook application secret.
- 5 Click **Save**.

# Plugins

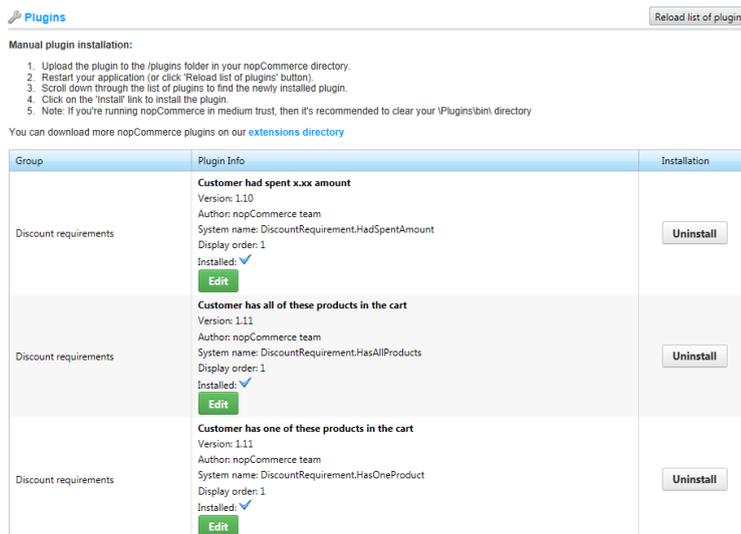
The **Plugins** window is accessed by selecting **Plugins** from the **Configuration** menu in the **Administration Area**. Plugins are a set of components adding specific capabilities to nopCommerce. Examples of plugins are Payment modules, Shipping Rate Computation Methods and so on. Additional plugins can be downloaded from [www.nopCommerce.com](http://www.nopCommerce.com). This section describes how to install plugins manually.

## ► To install plugins:

- 1 Upload the plugin to the /plugins folder in your nopCommerce directory.
- 2 Restart your application (or click 'Reload list of plugins' button).
- 3 Scroll down through the list of plugins to find the newly installed plugin.
- 4 Click on the **Install link** to install the plugin.
- 5 The plugins is displayed in the **Plugins** windows. This can be accessed from the Configuration menu by selecting **Plugins**.

## ► To uninstall plugins:

- 1 Select **Plugins** from the **Configuration** menu in the **Administration Area**. The **Plugins** window is displayed:



The screenshot shows the 'Plugins' window in the nopCommerce administration interface. At the top right, there is a 'Reload list of plugins' button. Below the header, there is a section for 'Manual plugin installation' with five numbered instructions. Below that, a link points to the 'extensions directory'. The main part of the window is a table with three columns: 'Group', 'Plugin Info', and 'Installation'. Three plugins are listed, all from the 'Discount requirements' group. Each plugin entry includes its name, version, author, system name, display order, and an 'Installed' status with a checkmark. An 'Edit' button is present for each plugin, and an 'Uninstall' button is in the 'Installation' column.

Group	Plugin Info	Installation
Discount requirements	<b>Customer had spent x.xx amount</b> Version: 1.10 Author: nopCommerce team System name: DiscountRequirement.HadSpentAmount Display order: 1 Installed: ✓ <a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Uninstall</a>
Discount requirements	<b>Customer has all of these products in the cart</b> Version: 1.11 Author: nopCommerce team System name: DiscountRequirement.HasAllProducts Display order: 1 Installed: ✓ <a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Uninstall</a>
Discount requirements	<b>Customer has one of these products in the cart</b> Version: 1.11 Author: nopCommerce team System name: DiscountRequirement.HasOneProduct Display order: 1 Installed: ✓ <a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Uninstall</a>

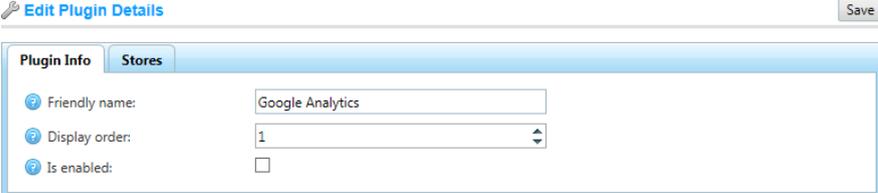
- 2 Click the **Configure** link beside the plugin to go to the plugin configuration page. If the **Configure** link does not exist beside a plugin, this indicates the plugin does not require any configuration.

- 3 Click the **Uninstall** link beside the plugin to uninstall. The plugin is uninstalled. The link in the **Installation column** changes to **Install** enabling you to reinstall the plugin at any time.

*Note: you can click the **Reload list of plugins** button to reload the plugins to the system.*

► **To change plugin friendly name and display order:**

- 1 Select **Plugins** from the **Configuration** menu in the **Administration Area**. The **Plugins** window is displayed, as shown on the previous page.
- 2 Click **Edit** besides the plugin. The **Edit Plugin details** window is displayed for the selected plugin, showing the **Plugin Info** tab, as shown in the following example:



**Edit Plugin Details** Save

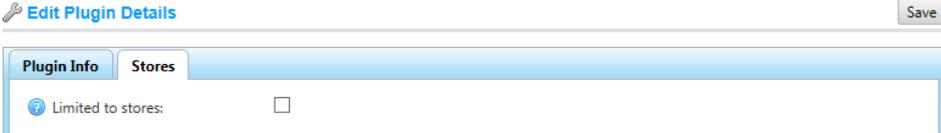
**Plugin Info** **Stores**

ⓘ Friendly name:

ⓘ Display order:

ⓘ Is enabled:

- 3 In the **Friendly name** field enter the required information.
- 4 In the **Display order** field, define the required location to display this plugin. **1** represents the top of the list.
- 5 Select the **Is enabled** field to enable this plugin.
- 6 Select the **Stores** tab, as follows:



**Edit Plugin Details** Save

**Plugin Info** **Stores**

ⓘ Limited to stores:

- 7 Select the **Limited to stores** checkbox to determine whether the plugin is limited to certain stores.
- 8 Click the **Save** button located at the top of the page.

# 6 Promotions

This section describes how to define additional options for site promotion and how to use them in nopCommerce. This includes:

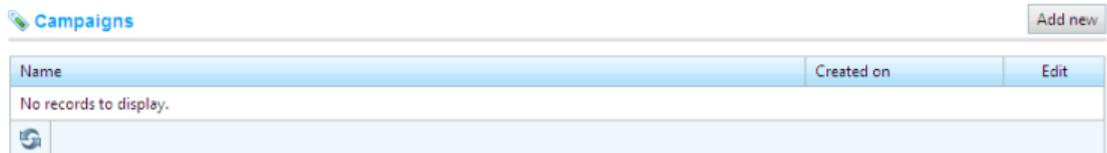
- **Campaigns**, below
- **Newsletter Subscribers**, page 248
- **Discounts**, page 249
- **Promotion Feeds**, page 253
- **Affiliates**, page 254

## Campaigns

During customer registration a customer can select the **Newsletters** option to receive nopCommerce newsletters. The store owner can send emails to customers subscribed to newsletters.

► **To add campaigns:**

- 1 From the **Promotions** menu, select **Campaigns**. The **Campaigns** window is displayed.



2 Click **Add new**. The **Add a new campaign** window is displayed.

**Add A New Campaign** (back to campaign list) Save Save and Continue Edit

Name:

Subject:

Body: 

Rich text editor toolbar with options for Bold, Italic, Underline, Font Family, Font Size, Text Color, Background Color, Bulleted List, Numbered List, Indent, Outdent, Link, Unlink, Image, Video, Table, and other formatting options.

Path:

Allowed message tokens: %Store.Name%, %Store.URL%, %Store.Email%, %NewsLetterSubscription.Email%, %NewsLetterSubscription.ActivationUrl%, %NewsLetterSubscription.DeactivationUrl%

3 Define the campaign details, as follows:

- In the **Name** field, enter the campaign name.
- In the **Subject** field, enter the subject of the campaign.
- In the **Body** field, enter the body text of the campaign.

4 Click **Save**. The **Campaigns** window is displayed, as follows:

**Campaigns** Add new

Name	Created on	Edit
Campaign 1	7/20/2011 5:15:13 AM	Edit

- 5 Click **Edit** besides the campaign to edit. The **Edit Campaign** window is displayed.

**Edit Campaign - Campaign 1** (back to campaign list) Save Save and Continue Edit Delete

Make sure you've tested the campaign before sending it out to multiple customers. Save your campaign first by clicking "Save" button.

Send test email to:  Send test email  
Send mass email

Name:   
Subject:

Body: 

A great campaign

Path: Words: 3

Allowed message tokens: %Store Name%, %Store URL%, %Store Email%, %NewsLetterSubscription.Email%, %NewsLetterSubscription.ActivationUrl%, %NewsLetterSubscription.DeactivationUrl%

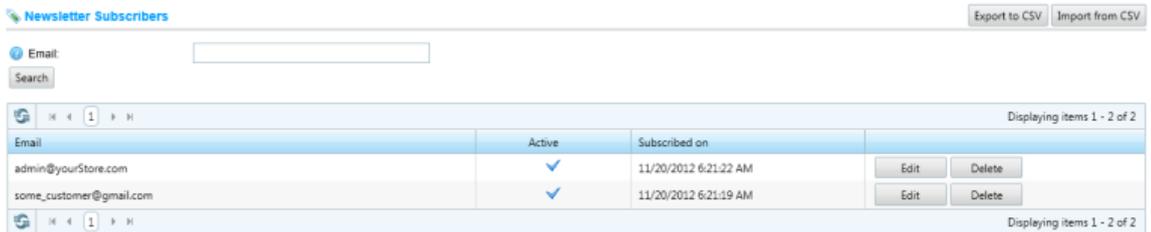
- 6 In the **Sent test email to** field, enter the required test email to send and click the **Send test email** button. The test email is sent for testing purposes.
- 7 Click the **Send mass email**, to send this campaign email to ALL customers subscribed to newsletters.
- 8 Edit the campaign details as described in **Adding a New Campaign**, on the previous page.
- 9 In the **Allowed message tokens** field, enter the allowed list of message tokens you can use in your campaign email.
- 10 Click **Save**.

# Newsletter Subscribers

NopCommerce enables shop owner to manage and display the users that are subscribed to the newsletter. In addition, you can export the list of subscribers to an external CSV file as well import list of subscribers from an external CSV file into nopCommerce.

## ► To load Newsletter subscribers:

- 1 From the Promotions menu, select Newsletter Subscribers. The **Newsletter Subscribers** window is displayed.



- 2 In the **Email** enter the email of the subscriber to find, or leave this field empty and click **Search** to load the all the newsletter subscribers in the system.

*Note: You can click **Import from CSV** to import subscriber lists in CSV format. Ensure that each line of the CSV file is in the following format: `email_address,is_active`.*

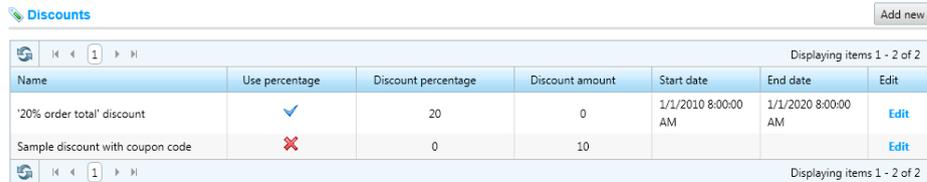
*For example, `test@test.com,true`. In addition you can click **Export to CSV** to export subscriber lists.*

# Discounts

In nopCommerce you can use discounts to enable access to great offers. The online coupons allow access to massive discounts on a variety of products. The coupon code option is most commonly used when using a shopping cart. The coupon code is entered on the order page just before checking out. Every online shopping resource has a discount coupon submission option to confirm the coupon code. Products in nopCommerce can have any number of discounts attached. In these situations, nopCommerce will automatically calculate the best possible price for the customer based on all the available discounts and group memberships.

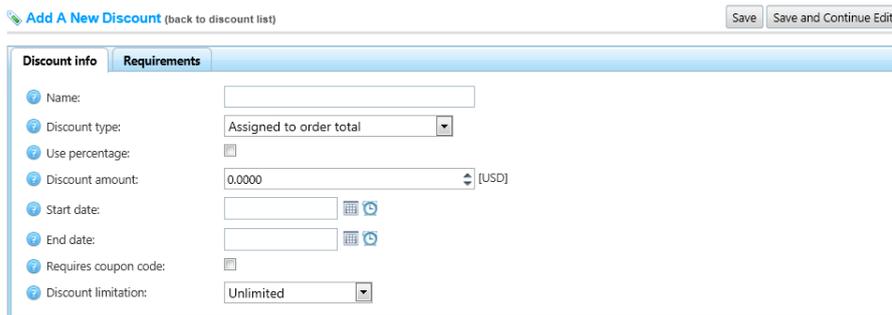
## ► To add discounts:

- 1 From the **Promotions** menu, select **Discounts**. The **Discounts** window is displayed.



Name	Use percentage	Discount percentage	Discount amount	Start date	End date	Edit
'20% order total' discount	✓	20	0	1/1/2010 8:00:00 AM	1/1/2020 8:00:00 AM	Edit
Sample discount with coupon code	✗	0	10			Edit

- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add A New Discount** window is displayed, showing the **Discount Info** tab.



**Add A New Discount** (back to discount list) Save Save and Continue Edit

**Discount info** **Requirements**

Name:

Discount type:

Use percentage:

Discount amount:  [USD]

Start date:

End date:

Requires coupon code:

Discount limitation:

- 3 Define the discount details, as follows:

- In the **Name** field, enter the name of the discount.
- From the **Discount type** dropdown list, assign the discount to the required option, as follows:
  - **Assigned to order total**: These discounts are applied to the entire customer order (order total).

- **Assigned to products:** After this discount is created, the store owner has to assign this discount to a product (on the product details page).
  - **Assigned to categories:** After this discount is created, the store owner has to assign this discount to a category appearing in the Discount applied to the category tab (category details page). This enables the discount to be applied to all products in this category.
  - **Assigned to shipping:** These discounts are applied to the shipping fee.
  - **Assigned to order total:** These discounts are applied to the order sub-total value.
- Select the **Use percentage** checkbox to apply a percentage discount to the order or SKU. Otherwise, a set value is discounted.
  - In the **Discount amount** field, enter the discount amount to apply to the order or SKU.
  - In the **Start date calendar** field, select the beginning of the discount period in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).
  - In the **End date calendar** field, select the end of the discount period in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).
  - Select the **Requires coupon code** checkbox to enable a customer to supply a coupon code for the discount to be applied.

The **Coupon code** option appears. The store owner enters the required coupon code in this field. This enables customers to enter this provided coupon code provided during checkout to apply the discount.

- From the **Discount limitation** dropdown list, select the required limitation regarding the discount, as follows:
  - **Unlimited:** Select this option to enable the discount to be used for an unlimited number of times.
  - **N Times only:** Select this option to enable the discount to be used N times only (no matter by whom). The **N Times** field is displayed.
  - **N Times per Customer:** Select this option to enable the discount to be used N times per customer. The **N Times** field is displayed.

4 Click **Save**.

5 Select the **Requirements** tab, as follows:

The screenshot shows a web interface for editing discount details. At the top, a green message states 'The new discount has been added successfully.' Below this, the title is 'Edit Discount Details - 50% Discount' with a link to 'back to discount list'. There are three buttons: 'Save', 'Save and Continue Edit', and 'Delete'. The interface has three tabs: 'Discount info', 'Requirements', and 'Usage history'. The 'Requirements' tab is active. Underneath, there is a section 'Add a new discount requirement' with a dropdown menu for 'Discount requirement type' that is currently set to 'Select requirement type'.

6 From the **Discount requirement type** dropdown list, select the requirements for the discount to be applied, as follows:

- None
- **Must be assigned to customer role:** when this option is selected, a new tab named Customer Roles will appear. The store owner must then define the customer roles enabling the customer to be in one of selected customer roles, if a discount should be applied
- **Customer has all of these products in the cart:** This requirement is identical to the Had purchased all of these products requirement described below with the difference that the entered product(s) are in the current cart.
- **Customer has one of these products in the cart:** This requirement is identical to the Had purchased one of these products requirement described below with the difference that the entered product(s) are in the current cart
- **Had spent x.xx amount:** This discount is applied if a customer has previously spent a certain amount. The window is expanded to display the **Required spent amount** field. The store owner must then enter a required **x.xx** amount.

*Note: You can click **Edit** in the **Manage discounts** window to display the **Edit discount details** window and then edit the discount details, as described above.*

## Discount Usage History

This tab enables you to view the discount history, meaning which customer used it, with which order and the date it was used.

► **To view discount usage history:**

- 1 From the **Promotions** menu, select **Discounts**. The **Discounts** window is displayed.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Discounts" with an "Add new" button in the top right corner. Below the title bar is a table with the following columns: Name, Use percentage, Discount percentage, Discount amount, Start date, End date, and Edit. The table contains four rows of data. The first two rows are for "50% discount" with "Use percentage" set to "true" and "Discount amount" set to "0.00". The third row is for "'20% order total' discount" with "Use percentage" set to "true", "Discount percentage" set to "20.00", "Discount amount" set to "0.00", "Start date" set to "1/1/2010 12:00:00 AM", and "End date" set to "1/1/2020 12:00:00 AM". The fourth row is for "Sample discount with coupon code" with "Use percentage" set to "false" and "Discount amount" set to "10.00". Each row has an "Edit" link in the rightmost column. At the bottom left of the table, there is a refresh icon.

Name	Use percentage	Discount percentage	Discount amount	Start date	End date	Edit
50% discount	true	0.00	0.00			Edit
50% discount	true	0.00	0.00			Edit
'20% order total' discount	true	20.00	0.00	1/1/2010 12:00:00 AM	1/1/2020 12:00:00 AM	Edit
Sample discount with coupon code	false	0.00	10.00			Edit

- 2 Click **Edit** in the required discount. The **Edit Discount Details** window is displayed showing the **Discount Info** tab, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Discount Details' window for a '20% Order Total' discount. The 'Discount Info' tab is active, displaying the following details:

- Name: 20% order total discount
- Discount type: assigned to order total
- Use percentage:
- Discount percentage: 20.0000
- Start date: 3/3/2010
- End date: 5/3/2020
- Requires coupon code:
- Coupon code: 456
- Discount limitation: Unlimited

- 3 Select the **Usage History** tab, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Usage History' tab of the 'Edit Discount Details' window. It displays a table with the following data:

Order	Used	Admin, Common, Delete
View	7/8/2011 5:42:50 PM	Delete

- 4 In the **Order** column, click **View** to display the **Order Details** page for the order the discount was used for.
- 5 You can click **Delete** to remove this entry from the list.

## Promotion Feeds

This section describes the promotion providers that nopCommerce supports out of the box. These include:

### Google Product Search

The first promotion provider is the *Google product search* also known as *Google Product Search*. nopCommerce supports exporting products to the Google Product Search XML format. This enables you to promote your products and services and get more visibility

You can increase traffic to your store using *Google Product Search (Froogle)*, which helps shoppers find and buy products across the web. As a seller, you can submit your products to Google Product Search, allowing shoppers to quickly and easily find your site.

To learn more about Google Product Search, refer to the following:

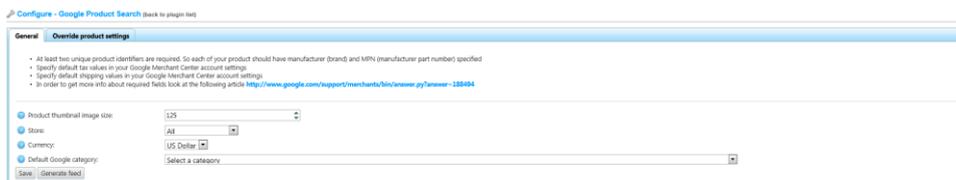
<http://www.google.com/products>

[http://www.google.com/products/intl/en\\_us/about.html](http://www.google.com/products/intl/en_us/about.html)

[http://www.google.com/intl/en\\_us/products/submit.html](http://www.google.com/intl/en_us/products/submit.html)

► **To generate the Google Product Search feed:**

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Plugins**. The **Plugins** window is displayed.
- 2 Click **Configure** beside the **Promotion Feeds - Google Product Search** feed. The **Configure – Google Product Search** window is displayed.



- 3 Click the **Generate feed** button.
- 4 Click on the **Generated file path (static)** link to download generated product feed.
- 5 Upload your product data to Google and make it available to Google Product Search and other Google services.

## Affiliates

Affiliate Marketing is an Internet-based marketing practice in which a business rewards one or more affiliates for each visitor or customer. It is basically a web-based pay-for-performance program designed to compensate affiliate partner web sites for driving qualified leads or sales to a merchant web site.

Affiliates are third parties who refer customers to your site. The nopCommerce software can track those referrals so that the store administrator can determine what commission to pay them. Once a customer is assigned an affiliate ID, every order they place is also tagged with that ID.

In nopCommerce, an affiliate partner URL is as follows:

(<http://www.yourstore.com/?AffiliateID=N> (where N is an affiliate ID)).

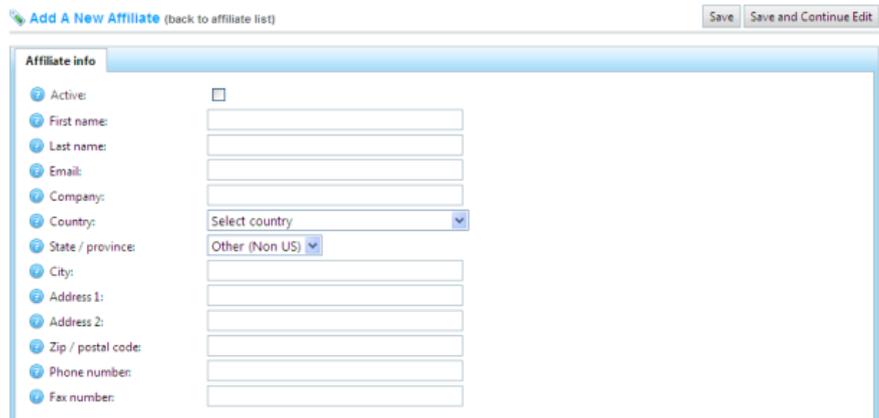
This URL is displayed when you visit the affiliate details page, after it has been added: When this hyperlink is clicked from the affiliate site, the default.aspx looks for an **Affiliate ID** query string parameter. If one exists, the customer is tagged with that affiliate. The store owner can see a list of all affiliated customers on the affiliate details page, which is the **Affiliated Customers** in nopCommerce. When an affiliated customer places an order, you can see this order on the affiliate details page under the **Affiliate orders** tab.

► **To add an affiliate**

- 1 From the **Promotions** menu, select **Affiliates**. The **Manage Affiliates** window is displayed.



- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add A New Affiliate** window is displayed.



- 3 Define the affiliate details, as follows:
  - Select the **Active** checkbox to activate the affiliate.
  - In the **First Name** field, enter the affiliate's first name.
  - In the **Last Name** field, enter the affiliate's last name.
  - In the **Email** field, enter the affiliate's email
  - In the **Company** field, enter the company name.
  - From the **Country** dropdown list, select the country where the affiliate is located.
  - In the **State/province** field, enter the state/province where the affiliate is located.
  - In the **City** field, enter the city where the affiliate is located.
  - In the **Address 1** and **Address 2** fields, enter the address(es) of the affiliate.
  - In the **Zip/ Postal code** field, enter the zip/postal code of the affiliate
  - In the **Phone number** field, enter the affiliate's phone number.
  - In the **Fax number** field, enter the affiliate's fax number.
- 4 Click **Save**. The affiliate is added to the system.

*Note: You can click **Edit** in the **Affiliates** window to display the **Edit Affiliate Details** window and then edit the affiliate details, as described above.*

# 7 Managing Orders and Customers

This section describes how to manage your orders and customers. It includes the following:

- **Managing Customers**, page 258
- **Customer Roles**, page 266
- **Online Customers**, page 267
- **Managing Orders**, page 268
- **Managing Shipments**, page 281
- **Recurring Payments**, page 283
- **Gift Cards**, page 285
- **Current Shopping Carts**, page 288
- **Current Wishlists**, page 289
- **Return Requests**, page 290

# Managing Customers

This section describes the how to search for existing customers, add new customers and edit customers details, each of which is described below.

## Searching for Customers

This section describes how to define the search criteria required to search for customers, by email, by registration date and more.

### ► To search for customers:

- 1 From the **Customers** menu, select **Customers**. The **Customers** window is displayed.

**Customers** [Add new] [Export to XML (all)] [Export to XML (selected)] [Export to Excel (all)] [Export to Excel (selected)]

Customer roles:  Administrators  Forum Moderators  Guests  Registered

Email:

First name:

Last name:

Date of birth:  Month  Day

Company:

[Search]

Id	Email	Name	Customer roles	Company name	Active	Created on	Last activity	Edit
4	<a href="mailto:some_customer@gmail.com">some_customer@gmail.com</a>	Alex Smith	Registered		✓	11/20/2012 6:15:28 AM	11/20/2012 6:26:59 AM	<a href="#">Edit</a>
1	<a href="mailto:admin@yourStore.com">admin@yourStore.com</a>	John Smith	Administrators, Forum Moderators, Registered		✓	11/20/2012 6:08:58 AM	11/27/2012 9:35:46 AM	<a href="#">Edit</a>

- 2 Enter one or more of the following information to search for a customer:

- From the **Customer roles** checkboxes, select one or more of the following customer roles to display:
  - Administrators
  - Forum Moderators
  - Guests
  - Registered
  - Vendors

*Note: These customer roles are not hard-coded and can be configured in the Administration area, by selecting **Customer Roles** from the **Customers** menu*

- In the **Email** field, enter the customer's email to search according to the customer's email.
- In the **First name** field, enter the customer's first name to search according to the customer's first name.

- In the **Last name** field, enter the customer's last name to search according to the customer's last name.
  - From the **Date of Birth** fields, Select the customer's date of birth from the **Month and Day** dropdown lists. This option is visible when the **Date of Birth form** field is enabled in the **Customer Settings** tab that is accessed by selecting the **Customer Settings** from the **Configuration** menu in the **Administration** area.
  - In the **Company** field, enter the customer's company name to search according to the customer's company name. This option is visible when the **Company form** field is enabled in the **Customer Settings** tab that is accessed by selecting the **Customer Settings** from the **Configuration** menu in the **Administration** area.
  - In the **Phone** field, enter the customer's phone number name to search according to the customer's phone number. This option is visible when the **Phone form** field is enabled in the **Customer Settings** tab that is accessed by selecting the **Customer Settings** from the **Configuration** menu in the **Administration** area.
  - In the **Zip code** field, enter the customer's zip code to search according to the customer's zip code number. This option is visible when the **Zip code form** field is enabled in the **Customer Settings** tab that is accessed by selecting the **Customer Settings** from the **Configuration** menu in the **Administration** area.
- 3 Click **Search**. The customers matching the criteria will be displayed in a list. You can click **Edit** beside the customer to display the **Edit customer details** window, as described in **Editing customer details**, on page 263.

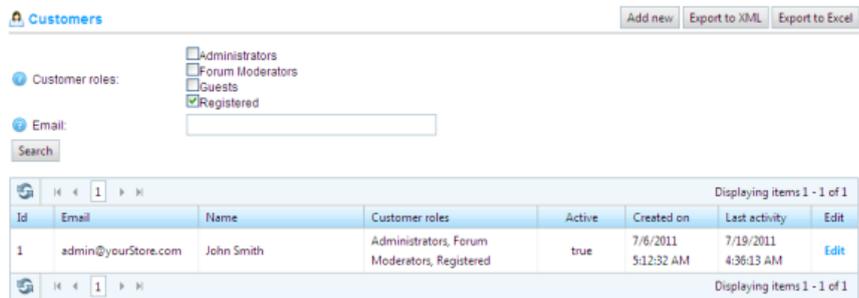
*Note: You can export the customer data to an external file by clicking **Export to XML(all)** or **Export to Excel (all)**. You can export selected customer data to an external file by clicking **Export to XML(selected)** or **Export to Excel (selected)**.*

# Adding Customers

This section describes how to add new customers and define their customer details such as email, phone, and address and so on. When indicating the customer has an administrator account, will allow access to the administration section of your store.

► **To add customers:**

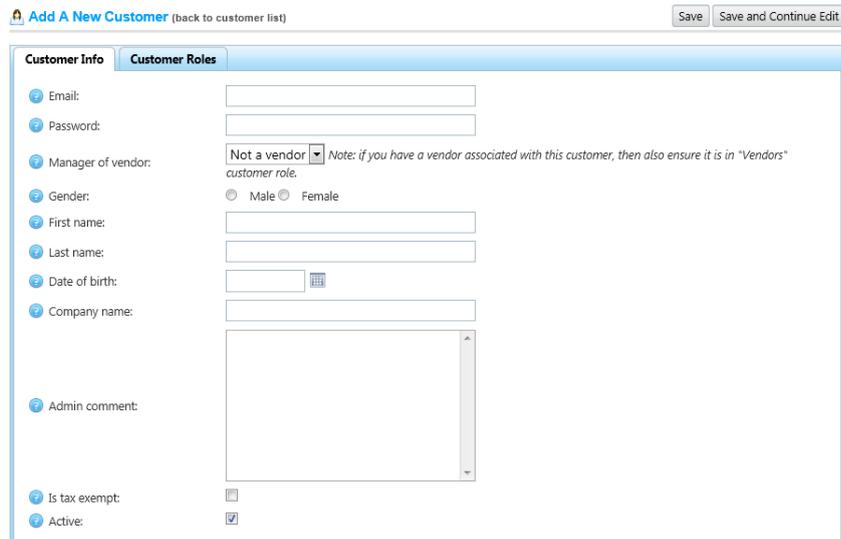
- 1 From the **Customers** menu, select **Customers**. The **Customers** window is displayed.



The screenshot shows the 'Customers' management page. At the top right, there are buttons for 'Add new', 'Export to XML', and 'Export to Excel'. Below these, there are checkboxes for 'Customer roles': Administrators, Forum Moderators, Guests, and Registered. The 'Registered' checkbox is checked. There is an 'Email:' search field with a 'Search' button. Below the search is a table with the following data:

Id	Email	Name	Customer roles	Active	Created on	Last activity	Edit
1	admin@yourStore.com	John Smith	Administrators, Forum Moderators, Registered	true	7/6/2011 5:12:32 AM	7/19/2011 4:36:13 AM	Edit

- 2 Click **Add New**. The **Add A New Customer** window, showing the **Customer Info** tab, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Add A New Customer' form with the 'Customer Info' tab selected. The form includes the following fields and options:

- Email: [Text input]
- Password: [Text input]
- Manager of vendor: [Dropdown menu: Not a vendor] *Note: if you have a vendor associated with this customer, then also ensure it is in "Vendors" customer role.*
- Gender:  Male  Female
- First name: [Text input]
- Last name: [Text input]
- Date of birth: [Text input] [Calendar icon]
- Company name: [Text input]
- Admin comment: [Text area]
- Is tax exempt:
- Active:

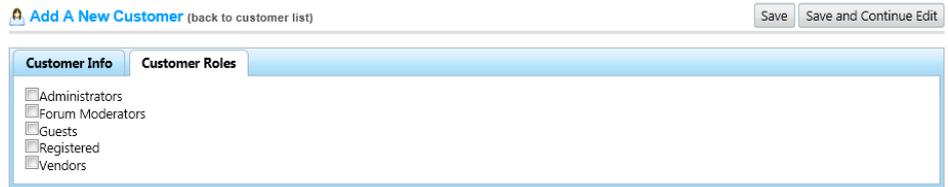
3 Define the customer details, as follows:

- In the **Email address** field, enter the customer's email address.
- In the **Password** field, enter the customer's login password.
- From the **Manager of vendor** drop down list, if required, select a vendor associated with this customer account. When associated, this customer will be able to login to the selected vendor portal and manage their products and orders. Select the required vendor.
- For further details, refer to [Multi-vendor Support](#).

*Note: If you have a vendor associated with this customer, ensure this customer record is in the **Vendors** customer role*

- In the **Gender** checkbox, select the required gender.
- In the **First Name** field, enter the customer's first name.
- In the **Last Name** field, enter the customer's last name.
- From the **Date of birth selection calendar** field, select the customer's date of birth.
- In the **Company name** field, enter the name of the customer's company.
- In the **Admin comment** field, enter administrator comments, if required, for internal information use.
- Select the **Is tax exempt** checkbox, to indicate the customer is exempted from tax.
- Select the **Active** checkbox to activate the customer.

4 Select the **Customer Roles** tab, as follows:



The screenshot shows a web interface for adding a new customer. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: "Add A New Customer (back to customer list)". To the right of the breadcrumb are two buttons: "Save" and "Save and Continue Edit". Below the breadcrumb is a tabbed interface with two tabs: "Customer Info" and "Customer Roles". The "Customer Roles" tab is currently selected and highlighted in blue. Underneath the "Customer Roles" tab, there is a list of five role types, each with an unchecked checkbox: Administrators, Forum Moderators, Guests, Registered, and Vendors.

5 Define the customer roles by selecting the required role type checkbox, as follows:

- Administrators
- Forum Moderators
- Guests
- Registered
- Vendors

*Note: These customer roles are not hard-coded and can be configured in the **Administration** area, by selecting **Customer Roles** from the **Customers** menu.*

6 Click **Save**.

# Editing Customer Details

This section describes how to edit the customer's billing and shipping address details and more.

## ► To edit customer details

- 1 From the **Customers** menu, select **Customers**. The **Customers** window is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Customers' management interface. At the top right, there are buttons for 'Add new', 'Export to XML (all)', 'Export to XML (selected)', 'Export to Excel (all)', and 'Export to Excel (selected)'. Below these are checkboxes for 'Customer roles': Administrators, Forum Moderators, Guests, and Registered. There are input fields for 'Email', 'First name', 'Last name', 'Date of birth' (with 'Month' and 'Day' dropdowns), and 'Company'. A 'Search' button is located below the input fields. The table below displays two customers:

	<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>ID</b>	<b>Email</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Customer roles</b>	<b>Company name</b>	<b>Active</b>	<b>Created on</b>	<b>Last activity</b>	<b>Edit</b>
	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	suzanne_bond@gmail.com	Suzanne Bond	Registered		true	6/26/2012 8:38:54 AM	6/26/2012 8:40:34 AM	Edit
	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	admin@yourStore.com	John Smith	Administrators, Forum Moderators, Registered		true	6/26/2012 8:28:50 AM	6/30/2012 5:52:18 PM	Edit

- 2 Enter the required search criteria and click **Search**. The **Manage Customers** window is expanded, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Customers' management interface with the search filters expanded. The 'Customer roles' checkboxes are now checked for 'Guests' and 'Registered'. The table below displays three customers:

	<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>ID</b>	<b>Email</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Customer roles</b>	<b>Company name</b>	<b>Active</b>	<b>Created on</b>	<b>Last activity</b>	<b>Edit</b>
	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	suzanne_bond@gmail.com	Suzanne Bond	Registered		true	6/26/2012 4:38:54 PM	6/26/2012 4:40:34 PM	Edit
	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	haultin@search_engine_recode.com		Guests		true	6/26/2012 4:28:50 PM	6/26/2012 4:28:50 PM	Edit
	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	admin@yourStore.com	John Smith	Administrators, Forum Moderators, Registered		true	6/26/2012 4:28:50 PM	7/3/2012 1:53:47 AM	Edit

- 3 Click **Edit** beside the customer to edit. The **Edit Customer Details** window is displayed, showing the **Customer Info** tab, follows:

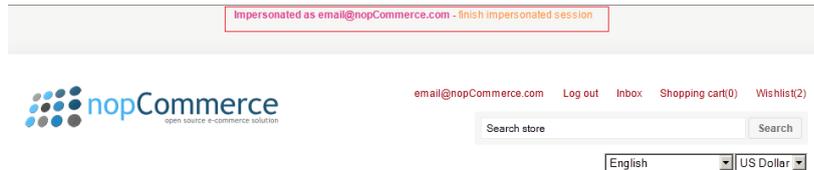
The screenshot shows the 'Edit Customer Details' window for a customer named Bond. The window has a navigation bar with tabs: Customer Info, Customer Roles, Orders, Addresses, Current shopping cart, Current wishlist, Activity log, and Place order (In Progress). The 'Customer Info' tab is selected. On the left, there are several expandable sections: Email, Password, Gender, First name, Last name, Date of birth, Company name, Address comment, Is the account active, and IP Address. The main content area displays the following details: Email: customer\_bond@gmail.com, Password: [Change password], Gender: Male, First name: Sushant, Last name: Bond, Date of birth: [Date picker], Company name: [Text area], Address comment: [Text area], Is the account active: [checked], and IP Address: 99.28.239.239. At the bottom, there are additional details: Created on: 6/30/2012 8:28:54 AM, Last activity: 6/30/2012 8:40:28 AM, and Last visited page: http://gnaf.com/guest.phpcommerce.com/checkout/completed/.

- 4 Select the **Customer Roles** tab to view and edit the customer roles details, as described in the next section.
- 5 Select the **Orders** tab to view the customer order details, as described in **Customer Account Pages, Customer orders**, in **Introducing the Frond End**, on page 16.
- 6 Select the **Reward Points** tab to enable store owners to add reward points to a customer or to view the reward points usage history.

*Note: This tab is enabled when reward points program is enabled, in the Administration area, by selecting the Configuration menu, then Settings and then the Reward Points.*

- 7 Select the **Addresses** tab and click **Add new address**. In the **Add new address** window, enter the details of the customer's new address, as described in **Customer Account Pages, Customer Addresses**, in **Introducing the Frond End** chapter.
- 8 Select the **Current Shopping Cart** tab to view the customer shopping cart, which is described in the **Introducing the Frond End**, on page 16.
- 9 Select the **Current Wishlist** tab to view the customer wish list, which is described in the **Introducing the Frond End**, on page 16

- 10 Select the **Activity Log** tab to view the customer's activity log. You can manage activity types under **Security > Activity Log**, as described on page 305.
- 11 Select the **Place Order (Impersonate)** tab to enable store owners to create orders for their customers without having to have password information. This is useful for customers who do not want to register, or for large sites using CSRs to place orders over the phone. The tab contains one **Place order** button. When selecting **Place order**, the public store is displayed with the following text in the header:



The store owner can navigate to the products the customer wants, add them to the cart exactly as the customer would, then use the **Checkout** button to proceed through the usual checkout process and then click the **Finish session** link in the header to finish this session.

- 12 Click **Save**.

*Note: Clicking the **Send email** button displays the Send email window enabling you to send an email to the customer. Clicking the **Send private message** button displays the Send private message window enabling you to send a message to the customer.*

# Customer Roles

The customer roles option in nopCommerce, enables you to place your customers in groups for granting them discounted pricing or other special statuses (such as, tax exemption free, free shipping, and more).

► **To add customer roles:**

- 1 From the **Customers** menu, select **Customer Roles**. The **Customer Roles** window is displayed.

Name	Free shipping	Tax exempt	Active	Is system role	Edit
Administrators	✗	✗	✓	✓	Edit
Forum Moderators	✗	✗	✓	✓	Edit
Guests	✗	✗	✓	✓	Edit
Registered	✗	✗	✓	✓	Edit

- 2 Click **Add new**. The **Add A New Customer Role** window is displayed.

**Add A New Customer Role** (back to customer role list) Save Save and Continue Edit

1 Name

2 System name

3 Free shipping:

4 Tax exempt:

5 Active:

6 Is system role: False

- 3 In the **Name** field, enter the name of the customer role.
- 4 In the **System Name** field, enter the system name of the customer role
- 5 Select the **Free shipping** checkbox to enable customers with this role to get free shipping on their orders.
- 6 Select the **Tax exempt** checkbox to enable customers with this role to make tax-free purchases.
- 7 Select the **Active** checkbox to make this role active.
- 8 Click **Save**.

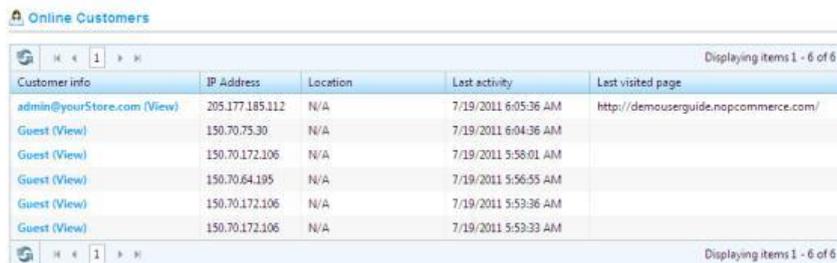
*Note: You can click **Edit** in the **Customer Roles** window to display the **Edit CustomerRole** window and then edit the customer roles, as described above.*

# Online Customers

The **Online Customers** window enables store owners to view all online line customers from the last 20 minutes. This window is accessed in the **Administration Area** and is displayed by selecting **Online Customers** from the **Customers** menu.

► **To view online customers:**

- 1 From the **Customers** menu, select **Online Customers**. The **Online Customers** window is displayed, as follows.



Customer info	IP Address	Location	Last activity	Last visited page
<a href="#">admin@yourStore.com (View)</a>	205.177.185.112	N/A	7/19/2011 6:05:36 AM	<a href="http://demouserguide.nopcommerce.com/">http://demouserguide.nopcommerce.com/</a>
<a href="#">Guest (View)</a>	150.70.75.30	N/A	7/19/2011 6:04:36 AM	
<a href="#">Guest (View)</a>	150.70.172.106	N/A	7/19/2011 5:58:01 AM	
<a href="#">Guest (View)</a>	150.70.64.195	N/A	7/19/2011 5:56:55 AM	
<a href="#">Guest (View)</a>	150.70.172.106	N/A	7/19/2011 5:53:36 AM	
<a href="#">Guest (View)</a>	150.70.172.106	N/A	7/19/2011 5:53:33 AM	

The **Online Customers** window includes the following columns:

- **Customer Info:** Includes one of the customer types described above. You can click on the link to view and edit the online customer's information.
- **IP Address:** The IP address of the online customer.
- **Location:** The online customer's location.
- **Last Activity:** The date and time the online customer last logged in.
- **Last Visited Page:** The last visited page of the online customer.

# Managing Orders

Orders are controlled in the Administration area from the **Orders** details window. The Order Details page displays all information necessary to fulfill the customer's order (the billing address, shipping address, product list and more).

## Searching for Orders

Orders are controlled in the Administration area from the **Orders** window. The top area of the page enables you to search for your orders. You can enter specific search criteria and use a variety of filters to find any order placed in your store. When any search is performed, the results of the search are displayed on the lower half of the screen. After a customer completes transaction, a new order appears in the orders page. You can click **View** to view the order details.

After an order is placed, it is saved into the database. The order details can then be viewed by the store owner.

### ► To search for orders:

- 1 From the **Sales** menu, select **Orders**. The **Orders** window is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Orders' management interface. At the top right, there are export options: 'Export to XML (all)', 'Export to XML (selected)', 'Export to Excel (all)', and 'Export to Excel (selected)'. On the left, there are search filters for: Start date, End date, Billing email address, Order status, Payment status, Shipping status, Store, Vendor, Order GUID, and Go directly to order #. Below the filters is a search button. The main area displays a table of orders with columns: Order ID, Order status, Payment status, Shipping status, Email, Store, Created on, Order total, and View. The table contains 5 rows of data. At the bottom right, there is a summary section showing Profit: \$4,935.80, Tax: \$5.00, and Total: \$4,935.80.

Order ID	Order status	Payment status	Shipping status	Email	Store	Created on	Order total	View
5	Pending	Pending	Not yet shipped	admin@yourstore.com	Your store name	4/15/2011 9:38:10 AM	\$1,365.80	View
4	Processing	Paid	Partially shipped	admin@yourstore.com	Your store name	4/15/2011 9:38:32 AM	\$345.00	View
3	Pending	Pending	Not yet shipped	admin@yourstore.com	Your store name	4/15/2011 9:37:59 AM	\$345.00	View
2	Pending	Pending	Shipping not required	admin@yourstore.com	Your store name	4/15/2011 9:37:04 AM	\$25.00	View
1	Pending	Pending	Not yet shipped	admin@yourstore.com	Your store name	4/15/2011 9:35:19 AM	\$2,850.00	View

**Summary:**  
Profit: \$4,935.80  
Tax: \$5.00  
Total: \$4,935.80

- 2 Enter one or more of the following information to search for an order:

- From the **Start date** field select the start date for the order search.
- From the **End date** field select the end date for the order search.
- In the **Billing email address** field, enter the customer's email address.

- From the **Order status** dropdown list, select the specific order status to search by, as follows:
  - All
  - Pending
  - Processing
  - Complete
  - Cancelled
- From the **Payment status** dropdown list, select the specific payment status to search by, as follows:
  - All
  - Pending
  - Authorized
  - Paid
  - Refunded
  - Partially Refunded
  - Voided
- From the **Shipping status** dropdown list, select the specific shipping status to search by, as follows:
  - All
  - Shipping not required
  - Not yet shipped
  - Partially shipped
  - Shipped
  - Delivered
- From the Store dropdown list, select the specific store in which the order was placed.

- From the vendor dropdown list, select the specific vendor which the products were purchased from.
  - In the **Order GUID** field, enter the required GUID (Global Unique Identifier) or part of the GUID to search by this ID. Alternatively, you can leave this field empty to load all orders in the system.
- 3 Click **Search**. The list of order matching the entered criteria will be displayed, showing information containing a summary of reports at the right bottom corner of the grid (including the profit, tax and the total sum of all the orders found in the current search).

The screenshot shows the 'Orders' management interface. At the top right, there are four buttons: 'Export to XML (all)', 'Export to XML (selected)', 'Export to Excel (all)', and 'Export to Excel (selected)'. Below these are search filters for Start date (5/18/2011), End date, Billing email address, Order status (All), Payment status (All), Shipping status (All), Order GUID, and Go directly to order # (0). A 'Search' button is located below the filters.

The main area displays a table of orders with the following data:

Order ID	Order status	Payment status	Shipping status	Email	Created on	Order total	View
8	Pending	Pending	Not yet shipped	admin@yourStore.com	4/2/2012 12:31:30 PM	\$224.00	<a href="#">View</a>
7	Pending	Pending	Not yet shipped	admin@yourStore.com	4/2/2012 12:30:49 PM	\$224.00	<a href="#">View</a>
6	Pending	Pending	Not yet shipped	admin@yourStore.com	3/30/2012 10:09:10 AM	\$112.00	<a href="#">View</a>
5	Processing	Pending	Partially shipped	admin@yourStore.com	3/28/2012 9:11:25 AM	\$5,788.48	<a href="#">View</a>
4	Pending	Pending	Shipping not required	admin@yourStore.com	3/28/2012 8:14:46 AM	\$2.80	<a href="#">View</a>
3	Processing	Paid	Not yet shipped	admin@yourStore.com	3/28/2012 8:14:32 AM	\$360.00	<a href="#">View</a>
2	Processing	Pending	Shipped	admin@yourStore.com	3/28/2012 8:14:19 AM	\$580.00	<a href="#">View</a>
1	Pending	Pending	Not yet shipped	admin@yourStore.com	3/28/2012 7:50:34 AM	\$1,477.56	<a href="#">View</a>

At the bottom right of the table, there is a summary section:

Summary:  
 Profit: \$8,768.84  
 Tax: \$0.00  
 Total: \$8,768.84

*Note: You can export the order data to an external file by clicking **Export to XML(all)** or **Export to Excel (all)**. You can export selected order data to an external file by clicking **Export to XML(selected)** or **Export to Excel (selected)**.*

- 4 In the **Go directly to order number** field, enter the order number and click **Go** to display the required order. This enables you to go directly to the order by entering its ID.

## Viewing Order Details

The order details page enables the store owner to view the order details, including the order ID, order GUID, customer name, shipping, tax, order total purchase order number, payment method, status and the order date and more. The owner can cancel orders and mark them as paid once payment is completed.

The **Orders details** page contains the following tabs:

- **Order Info**, page 271
- **Billing Info**, page 273
- **Shipping Info**, page 274
- **Products**, page 276
- **Order Notes**, page 277

### Order Info Tab

This tab displays the order details information such as, order ID, Customer email, payment method, payment status and more.

There are six payment statuses available, as follows:

- **Pending**
- **Authorized**
- **Paid (Captured)**
- **Refunded**
- **Partially Refunded**
- **Voided**

Orders can be authorized, captured, voided, or refunded depending on their current payment status. However, not all gateways support them all. If the payment status is **Authorized** the relevant buttons will be available to **Void** and **Capture** the order. **Capture** is used to collect the funds from the customer. **Void** cancels an order that has not been captured. If the payment status is **Paid** a **Refund** button will be available.

► **To view the order information:**

- 1 From the **Orders** page displayed above, click **View** beside the order to view. The **Order Details** page is displayed showing the **Order Info** tab, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Order Details - 2' page with a breadcrumb '(back to order list)' and buttons for 'Invoice (PDF)', 'Print packaging slip', and 'Delete'. The main content area has tabs for 'Info', 'Billing info', 'Shipping info', 'Products', and 'Order notes'. The 'Info' tab is active, displaying the following details:

Order status:	Pending	<a href="#">Cancel order</a>
Order ID:	2	
Order GUID:	cb547cca-e853-450e-a3a2-7953ee7a958a	
Customer:	<a href="#">View</a>	
Customer IP address:	2.94.208.199	
Order subtotal (excl tax):	\$72.00	
Order shipping (excl tax):	\$0.00	
Order tax:	\$0.00	
Order total:	\$72.00	
<a href="#">Edit order totals</a>		
Card type:	Visa	
Card name:	John Smith	
Card number:	4111111111111111	
Card CVV2:	123	
Card expiry month:	1	
Card expiry year:	2015	
<a href="#">Edit credit card</a>		
Payment method:	Credit Card	
Payment status:	Pending	<a href="#">Mark as paid</a>
Created on:	7/22/2011 4:26:32 AM	

*Note: Click [Edit order totals](#) to edit the order totals information. Click [Edit credit card](#) to edit credit card information. This button is visible only when a customer used the **Manual Credit Card** payment method, which enables storing credit card information in the database. If a different payment method is used, this button will not be visible.*

- 2 View the order information that was entered when the customer created an order in the order details page on page 53, as described in the **Purchasing Process** on page 47.
- 3 In the **Order Status** field, the owner can click **Cancel order** to cancel an order. A confirmation message is displayed.

*Note: The **Order status** will be **Completed** only once the payment status is set to **Paid** and the **Shipping status** is set to **Delivered**.*

- 4 Click **OK** to remove the order from the system.
- 5 (Optional) In the **Customer IP address** field, the owner can add the displayed IP to the blacklist.

- 6 In the **Payment status** field, the owner can click **Mark as paid** to indicate a payment has been issued for the order.

*Note: Other payment buttons, such as **Refund**, **Capture** and **Void**, will be displayed if they are supported by the payment method used during checkout. For example, for the **Paid** payment method the **Partial Refund** button is displayed. Clicking this button displays the **Partial Refund** window, enabling owner to refund part of the total order, as follows:*



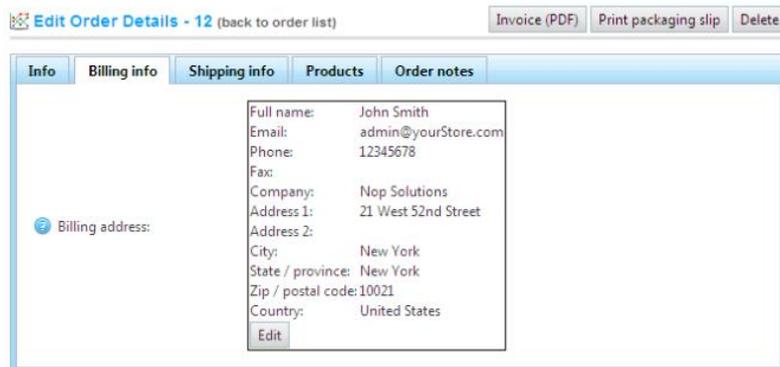
- 7 Click the **Invoice (PDF)** button to generate an invoice of the order in PDF form.
- 8 Click the **Print Packaging Slip** button to print a packaging slip for the selected order.

## Billing Info Tab

This tab displays the billing address of the order.

► **To view the billing information:**

- 1 From the **Order Details** page, select the **Billing info** tab, as follows:



- 2 View the billing address that was entered when the customer created an order in the order details page on page 53, as described in the **Purchasing Process** on page 47.

*Note: Click  to edit the billing address.*

## Shipping Info Tab

This tab displays the shipping information of the order. When the order is shipped, the store owner indicates it has been shipped from this tab. Store owners can create several shipments per order. If you create a shipment but do not ship all products, then the shipping status of an order is **Partially shipped**. Once all the products are shipped, the status changes to **Shipped**. Once all the shipments are delivered, the status changes to **Delivered**.

► **To view the shipping information:**

- 1 From the **Order Details** page, select the **Shipping Info** tab, as follows

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Order Details' page with the 'Shipping Info' tab selected. The page includes a navigation bar with 'Info', 'Billing info', 'Shipping info', 'Products', and 'Order notes'. The 'Shipping Info' section contains a form with the following fields: Full name (John Smith), Email (admin@yourStore.com), Phone (12345678), Fax, Company (Map Solutions), Address 1 (21 West 52nd Street), Address 2, City (New York), State / province (New York), Zip / postal code (10021), and Country (United States). There is an 'Edit' button below the country field and a 'View address on Google Maps' link. The shipping method is 'In-Store Pickup' and the shipping status is 'Partially shipped'. Below this is a table of shipments:

Shipment #	Tracking number	Total weight	Date shipped	Date delivered	View
2	12345678	9.00 [lb(s)]	6/26/2012 12:29:11 PM	Not yet	<a href="#">View</a>

There is an 'Add shipment' button at the bottom left of the shipment table.

*Note: Click **Edit** to edit the shipping address..*

- 2 Click **View** besides any shipment to view its details. The shipment information window containing information about the tracking number, shipped date and delivery date is displayed:

The screenshot shows the 'View Shipment Details' page for shipment 2. It includes a navigation bar with 'View Shipment Details - 2 (back to order details)', 'Print packaging slip', and 'Delete'. The page displays the following information: Tracking number (12345678) with a 'Set tracking number' button, Total weight (9.00 [lb(s)]), Date shipped (6/26/2012 12:29:11 PM), and Date delivered (Not yet) with a 'Set as delivered' button. Below this is a table of products shipped:

Product	SKU	Item weight	Item dimensions	Qty shipped
50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size Size: Small	SKU5	1.00 [lb(s)]	2.00 x 3.00 x 3.00 [inch(es)]	1
Arrow Men's Winkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve		4.00 [lb(s)]	3.00 x 3.00 x 3.00 [inch(es)]	1
Levi's Skinny 511 Jeans		2.00 [lb(s)]	2.00 x 2.00 x 2.00 [inch(es)]	2

*Note: You can click the **Print packaging slip** button to print the packaging slip or save it to your computer.*

- 3 You can view the shipping address and shipping method that were saved when the customer created an order in the order details page on page 53, as described in the **Purchasing Process** on page 47.
- 4 (Optional) You can click the **View address on Google maps** link to locate the required shipping address.
- 5 Click the **Add Shipment** button. The **Add a new shipment to order** window, is displayed. This enables creating several shipments per order and is visible when you have at least one non-shipped product in your order.

*Note: Once a shipment is created, set it to **shipped** and then **delivered**, by clicking the required **Set as shipped** and **Set as delivered** buttons.*

**Add A New Shipment To Order #5** (back to order details)

Tracking number:

Products shipped

Product	SKU	Item weight	Item dimensions	Qty ordered	Qty shipped	Qty to ship
Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve		4.00 [lb(s)]	3.00 x 3.00 x 3.00 [inch(es)]	2	1	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Levi's Skinny 511 Jeans		2.00 [lb(s)]	2.00 x 2.00 x 2.00 [inch(es)]	3	2	<input type="text" value="1"/>
V-Blue Juniors' Cuffed Denim Short with Rhinestones		2.00 [lb(s)]	2.00 x 2.00 x 2.00 [inch(es)]	1	0	<input type="text" value="1"/>

*Note: You can click **Save** instead of **Save and Continue** to return to the **Info** tab.*

- 6 In the **Quantity to ship** column, enter the required quantity of the specific order to ship.
- 7 Click **Save** to save and return to the **Edit Order Details - Info** tab click **Save and Continue Edit** to continue editing.. The window is expanded, as follows:

**View Shipment Details - 2** (back to order details)

Tracking number:

Total weight: 9.00 [lb(s)]

Date shipped: 6/26/2012 12:29:11 PM

Date delivered: Not yet

Products shipped

Product	SKU	Item weight	Item dimensions	Qty shipped
56's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size Size: Small	5605	1.00 [lb(s)]	2.00 x 3.00 x 3.00 [inch(es)]	1
Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve		4.00 [lb(s)]	3.00 x 3.00 x 3.00 [inch(es)]	1
Levi's Skinny 511 Jeans		2.00 [lb(s)]	2.00 x 2.00 x 2.00 [inch(es)]	2

- 8 In the **Tracking number** field, enter the tracking number of the current order and click the **Set tracking number** button. Tracking numbers enables your customers and you to check up on the progress of a shipment via a telephone or online system, operated by your shipping agent (the Post Office, or a private courier service such as FedEx or UPS). When a shipment passes certain points along its route, it is identified by the shipping agents system, and the tracking database is updated with the new location and time information.

## Products Tab

This tab displays the product information. The store owner can view the details of the total order and price from this tab.

- ▶ **To view the product information:**

- 1 From the **Order Details** page, select the **Products** tab, as follows:

Product name	Price	Quantity	Discount	Total	Edit
<b>Build your own computer</b> Processor: 2.5 GHz Intel Pentium Dual-Core E2200 (+\$19.99) RAM: 2 GB HD: 480 GB (+\$100.00) OS: Vista Premium (+\$60.00) Software: Microsoft Office (+\$90.00) Software: Acronis Reader (+\$19.99)	\$1,435.00 excl tax	1	\$0.00 excl tax	\$1,435.00 excl tax	Edit Delete
<b>Steve Allen's Digit Sneaker</b> Size: 9 Color: White/Blue	\$17.56 excl tax	1	\$0.00 excl tax	\$17.56 excl tax	Edit Delete
<b>\$28 Virtual Gift Card</b> For: John Smith From: John Smith Gift cards(s): 1	\$25.00 excl tax	1	\$0.00 excl tax	\$25.00 excl tax	Edit Delete

- 2 View the product information, including the price, quantity and total price that was entered when the customer created an order in the order details page on page 53, as described in the **Purchasing Process** on page 47.
- 3 The owner can click the **Product name** link to view the product detail page or the **Download link** to download a product if it is downloadable alternatively the user can upload a license file to a downloadable product.

- 4 In addition, when the **Download activation type** of a product is set to **Manually** the administrator has the option to click **Activate** to enable downloading the product from the site or **Deactivate** to disable downloading the product from the site, as shown in the example, below:



- 5 Using (optional) **License file**, the store administrator can upload a license file to a downloadable product by searching for the file to upload and clicking **Upload License File**.

*Note: You can click  to edit the product price, quantity and total and click  to remove a product from the system.*

## Adding a Product to an Existing Order

- ▶ To add a product to an existing order:
  - 1 Click the **Add product** button. The Add a New Product to the Order is displayed.
  - 2 Enter the search criteria to search for the required product.
  - 3 Click on the required. The add product window is displayed.
  - 4 Enter the required values and click **Add product**.

## Order Notes Tab

This tab enables the store owner to view notes that were added to each order for information purposes. The store owner can also add new notes or remove notes, as required.

► **To view and add order notes:**

- 1 From the **Order Details** page, select the **Order Notes** tab, as follows:

Created on	Note	Display to customer	Delete
7/8/2011 5:55:51 PM	Order status has been changed to Processing	false	Delete
7/8/2011 5:55:51 PM	Order has been marked as paid	false	Delete
7/8/2011 5:55:18 PM	"Order placed" email (to customer) has been queued. Queued email identifier: 13.	false	Delete
7/8/2011 5:55:18 PM	"Order placed" email (to store owner) has been queued. Queued email identifier: 12.	false	Delete
7/8/2011 5:55:18 PM	Order placed	false	Delete

**Add order note**

Message

Display to customer

Add order note

- 2 View the comments and notes regarding each order.
- 3 In the **New order note** field, the store owner can enter a comment regarding the order for information purposes, whether it has been completed or cancelled and so on
- 4 Select the **Display To customer** checkbox to display the order on the **customer's order** details page in the public store. If this option is unchecked it will not be displayed.
- 5 Click **Add order note** to update the order to include the order note.

*Note: The store owner can click **Delete** to remove a note regarding an order from the system.*

## Viewing Sales Reports

This section describes how to search for and run specific sales reports contain specific information such as the pending orders, the order in process, the complete order and orders that have been canceled and more.

► **To view bestsellers:**

- 1 From the **Sales** menu, select **Bestsellers**. The **Bestsellers** window is displayed.

**Bestsellers**

Start date:

End date:

Order status:

Payment status:

Billing country:

Name	Total quantity	Total amount (incl tax)	View
Build your own computer	1	\$1,420.00 (USD)	<a href="#">View</a>
BlackBerry Bold 9000 Phone, Black (AT&T), recurring product	1	\$245.00 (USD)	<a href="#">View</a>
etries Men's Digit Sneaker	10	\$175.60 (USD)	<a href="#">View</a>
EatingWell in Season	1	\$51.00 (USD)	<a href="#">View</a>
The Best Skillet Recipes	2	\$48.00 (USD)	<a href="#">View</a>
Best Grilling Recipes	1	\$27.00 (USD)	<a href="#">View</a>
Cooking for Two	1	\$19.00 (USD)	<a href="#">View</a>
50's Rockability Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size	1	\$15.00 (USD)	<a href="#">View</a>
\$5 Virtual Gift Card	3	\$15.00 (USD)	<a href="#">View</a>

- 2 Enter one or more of the following information to search for the report:

- From the **Start date** field select the start date for the report search.
- From the **End date** field select the end date for the report search.
- From the **Order status** dropdown list, select the specific order status to search by, as follows:
  - All
  - Pending
  - Processing
  - Complete
  - Cancelled
- From the **Payment status** dropdown list, select the specific payment status to search by, as follows:
  - All
  - Pending
  - Authorized
  - Paid
  - Refunded
  - Partially Refunded
  - Voided
- From the **Billing Country** dropdown list, select the country to enable filtering results per country.

- 3 Click **Run Report**. The reports matching the criteria will be displayed.

► To view product never purchased:

- 1 From the **Sales** menu, select **Products Never Purchased**.

Products Never Purchased

Start date:

End date:

Run report

Name	View
\$5 Virtual Gift Card	<a href="#">View</a>
\$50 Physical Gift Card	<a href="#">View</a>
\$100 Physical Gift Card	<a href="#">View</a>
Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black)	<a href="#">View</a>
adidas Women's Supernova CSH 7 Running Shoe	<a href="#">View</a>
APC Back-UPS RS 800VA - UPS - 800 VA - UPS battery - lead acid (BR800BLK)	<a href="#">View</a>
Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve	<a href="#">View</a>
ASUS Eee PC 1000HA 10-Inch Netbook	<a href="#">View</a>
ASUS Eee PC 900HA 8.9-Inch Netbook Black	<a href="#">View</a>
Best Grilling Recipes	<a href="#">View</a>
Black & White Diamond Heart	<a href="#">View</a>
BlackBerry Bold 9000 Phone, Black (AT&T)	<a href="#">View</a>
Canon Digital Rebel XSi 12.2 MP Digital SLR Camera Black	<a href="#">View</a>
Canon Digital Rebel XSi 12.2 MP Digital SLR Camera Silver	<a href="#">View</a>
Compaq Presario SR1519X Pentium 4 Desktop PC with CDRW	<a href="#">View</a>

- 2 Enter one or more of the following information to search for the report:

- From the **Start date** field select the start date for the report search.
- From the **End date** field select the end date for the report search.
- Click **Run Report**. The reports matching the criteria will be displayed.

*Note: Some other order reports are displayed on the dashboard page of the Administration area*

# Managing Shipments

The shipment details are controlled in the Administration area from the **View Shipment Details** window on the Order details page. This information is the same information described in the **Shipping Info** tab, described on page 274. This window displays all information necessary to fulfill the customer's shipping details (the tracking number, date shipped, date delivered, weight and more).

## Searching for Shipments

Shipments are controlled in the Administration area from the **Shipments** window. The top area of the page enables you to search for your shipment. You can enter specific search criteria and use a variety of filters to find any shipment processed. When any search is performed, the results of the search are displayed on the lower half of the screen.. You can click **View** to view the shipment details.

### ► To search for shipments:

- 1 From the **Sales** menu, select **Shipments**. The **Shipments** window is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Shipments' window with search criteria and a table of results. The search criteria include Start date, End date, and Tracking number. The table displays three items with columns for Shipment #, Order #, Tracking number, Total weight, Date shipped, Date delivered, and View.

Shipment #	Order #	Tracking number	Total weight	Date shipped	Date delivered	View
3	4		18.00 [lb(s)]	Not yet	Not yet	<a href="#">View</a>
2	4	GDFD-234	9.00 [lb(s)]	7/23/2013 7:36:23 AM	7/23/2013 7:36:26 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
1	5		18.00 [lb(s)]	7/23/2013 7:36:01 AM	Not yet	<a href="#">View</a>

- 2 Enter one or more of the following information to search for a shipment:
  - From the **Start date** field, select the start date for the shipment search.
  - From the **End date** field, select the end date for the shipment search.
  - In the **Tracking number** field, enter the tracking number to search for.

- Click **Search**. The list of shipments matching the entered criteria will be displayed, showing the order number, total weight, tracking number and more.)

*Note: You can click **Print Packaging slips (all)** to print all packaging receipts or alternatively, you can select the receipts to print and click **Print packaging slips (selected)**.*

The store owner can view all items of a shipment, by clicking  in the first column of the selected shipment. The shipment items are displayed, as follows:

**Shipments** Print packaging slips (all) Print packaging slips (selected)

Start date:    
 End date:    
 Tracking number:   
 Search

Displaying items 1 - 3 of 3							
<input type="checkbox"/>	Shipment #	Order #	Tracking number	Total weight	Date shipped	Date delivered	View
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	4		18.00 [lb(s)]	Not yet	Not yet	<a href="#">View</a>
<b>Product</b>				<b>Qty shipped</b>	<b>Item weight</b>	<b>Item dimensions</b>	
Vintage Style Three Stone Diamond Engagement Ring				2	2.00 [lb(s)]	2.00 x 2.00 x 2.00 [inch(es)]	
World of Warcraft: Wrath of the Lich King Expansion Pack				2	7.00 [lb(s)]	7.00 x 7.00 x 7.00 [inch(es)]	
	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	4	GFDF-234	9.00 [lb(s)]	7/23/2013 7:36:23 AM	7/23/2013 7:36:26 AM <a href="#">View</a>
	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	5		18.00 [lb(s)]	7/23/2013 7:36:01 AM	Not yet <a href="#">View</a>

**Shipments** Displaying items 1 - 3 of 3

## Viewing Shipment Details

The **View Shipment Details** page, which is displayed when selecting **View** besides the required shipments in the **Shipments** window is shown below.

This enables the store owner to view the shipment details, including the tracking number, total weight, date shipped, date delivered and more. For further details refer to the **Shipping Info** tab, described on page 274.

**View Shipment Details - 2** Print packaging slip Delete

Tracking number:    
 Total weight: 9.00 [lb(s)]  
 Date shipped: 6/26/2012 12:29:11 PM  
 Date delivered: Not yet

Products shipped

Product	SKU	Item weight	Item dimensions	Qty shipped
50's Rockability Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size Size: Small	SKUS	1.00 [lb(s)]	2.00 x 3.00 x 3.00 [inch(es)]	1
Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve		4.00 [lb(s)]	3.00 x 3.00 x 3.00 [inch(es)]	1
Levi's Skinny 511 Jeans		2.00 [lb(s)]	2.00 x 2.00 x 2.00 [inch(es)]	2

*Note: Once a shipment is shipped or delivered a store owner can edit the shipped or delivery dates.*

# Recurring Payments

Enabling recurring payment processing offers benefits to both merchants and consumers. By enabling customers to use the recurring shipment option, they can rely on an automatic renewal of consumable merchandise or subscription services. Merchants can increase customer satisfaction by offering the convenience of automatic delivery, without the need for customers to place additional orders. In this way, merchants can also take advantage of a guaranteed steady source of revenue with subscription and recurring payments.

nopCommerce enables you to create recurring products using the **Recurring product** checkbox in **Adding Products** on page 91.

However, not all payment methods support recurring products. Currently, only the Authorize.NET, manual credit card and PayPal Direct support it.

► **To view recurring payments:**

- 1 From the **Sales** menu, select **Recurring Payments**. The **Recurring Payments** window is displayed.

## Recurring Payments

ID	Customer	Cycle length	Cycle period	Is active	Start date	Next payment date	Total cycles	Cycles remaining	Edit
1	admin@yourStore.com	2	Days	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/20/2012 6:25:32 AM	11/22/2012 6:25:32 AM	6	5	<a href="#">Edit</a>

- 2 Click **Edit** beside the required recurring payment to view. The **Recurring Payment Details** window is displayed showing the **Recurring Payment Info** tab, as follows:

[Edit Recurring Payment Details](#) (back to recurring payment list) Save Save and Continue Edit Delete

**Recurring payment info** **History**

Initial order: [View](#)

Customer: admin@yourStore.com

Cycle length: 7

Cycle period: Days

Total cycles: 2

Cycles remaining: 1

Payment type: Manual

Start date: 6/26/2012 8:37:29 AM

Is active:

- 3 View and edit (if required) the details of the recurring payment.
- 4 Select the **History** tab, as follows:

By default, only one initial payment exists in this window. The number of total payment that will occur in total is the number of **Total Cycles** that was set in the relevant **Recurring Product** fields, in **Adding Products** on page 91.

- 5 (Optional) You can click the **Process next payment (create an order)** to process the next payment and place a new order.

*Note: The **Payment type** field displayed in the **Recurring payment details** tab on the previous page can be set to **Manual** or **Automatic***

*When it set to **Manual**, the store owner has to manually click this **Process next payment (create an order)** button to process the new payment, when the **Payment type** field it is set to **Automatic** new payments will be processed automatically.*

- 6 You can click the **Cancel payment** button at any time to cancel the payment.

To view the recurring payments in the public store go to **My account>Customer Order** tab and view the Recurring payments table at the top, as follows:

Start date	Cycle info	Next payment	Total cycles	Cycles remaining	Initial order	Cancel
3/20/2010 9:10:35 PM	1 Days	3/21/2010 9:10:35 PM	6	5	View order (ID - 12)	Cancel
3/20/2010 9:15:00 PM	1 Weeks	3/27/2010 9:15:00 PM	5	4	View order (ID - 13)	Cancel

Order Number: 13  
 Order Status: Pending  
 Order Date: 3/20/2010 9:15:00 PM  
 Order Total: \$14.00 (USD) [Details]

Order Number: 12  
 Order Status: Pending  
 Order Date: 3/20/2010 9:10:35 PM  
 Order Total: \$32.00 (USD) [Details]

# Gift Cards

In nopCommerce, you can create gift card products, defining the product as a gift card by checking the **Is Gift Card** check box, as described in **Adding Products** on page 91. After adding gift card products to the shopping cart in the public store and completing the purchases, you can then search and view the list of all the purchased gift cards in the **Administration Area** by selecting **Gift Cards** from the **Sales** menu. Gift cards have automatically generated gift card codes, but all of them are disabled by default. The **Is gift card activated** field must be checked in order to use this feature, as described in the procedure below.

*Note: The store owner can also configure the gift card auto activation settings in the **Gift Cards** tab that is displayed by selecting **Settings>Order Settings** from the **Configuration** menu.*

After the gift card is activated and the sender receives a coupon code, he can use it during checkout by entering the serial number. Once applying the serial number a discount is immediately reduced from the total price.

► **To view purchased gift cards:**

- 1 From the **Sales** menu, select **Gift Cards**. The **Gift Cards** window is displayed.

Initial value	Remaining amount	Coupon code	Is gift card activated	Creation date	Edit
\$5.00 (USD)	\$5.00 (USD)	cb604e2b-e59a	No	11/20/2012 2:14:51 PM	Edit
\$5.00 (USD)	\$5.00 (USD)	fe1985b9-55b3	No	11/20/2012 2:14:51 PM	Edit
\$5.00 (USD)	\$5.00 (USD)	4c1a8168-c89c	No	11/20/2012 2:14:51 PM	Edit

- 2 Enter the required search criteria, as follows:

- From the **Activated** dropdown list, select the required activity type to search by, as follows:
  - **All**: Displays all gift cards no matter whether the **Activated** property value is selected
  - **Activated**
  - **Deactivated**
- In the **Gift card coupon code** field, enter the required coupon code to search by.

- Click **Search**. The **Gift Cards** type window displays a list of the gift cards that were purchased according to the search criteria, as follows:

Initial value	Remaining amount	Coupon code	Is gift card activated	Creation date	Edit
\$50.00	\$0.00	41a3a039-cdc4	true	7/8/2011 5:54:15 PM	Edit

- Click **Edit** beside the required gift card. The **Edit Gift Card Details** window is displayed, showing the **Gift Card Info** tab.

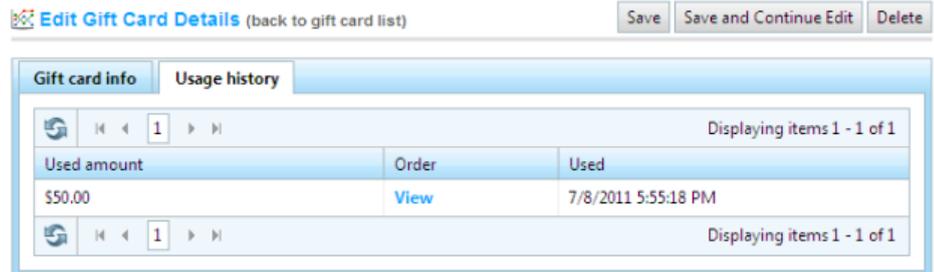
- View and edit the gift card information, as follows:
  - From the Gift Card Type select the required option, as follows:
    - Virtual**
    - Physical**
  - Beside **Order** field click View to view the order by which the gift card was purchased.
  - In the **Initial value** field, edit the initial value of the card.
  - Select the **Is Gift card activated** checkbox. This checkbox is disabled by default.
  - In the **Coupon code** field, click **Generate code** to create a coupon code to use during checkout.
  - If required, edit the recipients and senders name and email in the relevant fields.

*Note: The sender and recipient emails will not be visible for physical gift cards. These mails are visible only for virtual gift cards*

- Enter an optional message in the **Message** area.
- Click **Notify Recipient**. An email containing the gift card details will be sent to the recipient's email.

*Note: The **Notify Recipient** button is relevant only for virtual gifts card and not physical gift cards.*

- 6 Select the **Usage History** tab, as follows:



- 7 In the **Order** column, click **View** to display the **Order Details** page for the gift card coupon used for. After the gift card is activated and the sender received a coupon code, he can use it during checkout.

This is performed in the public store by entering the serial number in the box on the shopping cart page, as shown below:



- 8 Click **Add gift card** to see the discount amount at the bottom of the page (total), as follows:

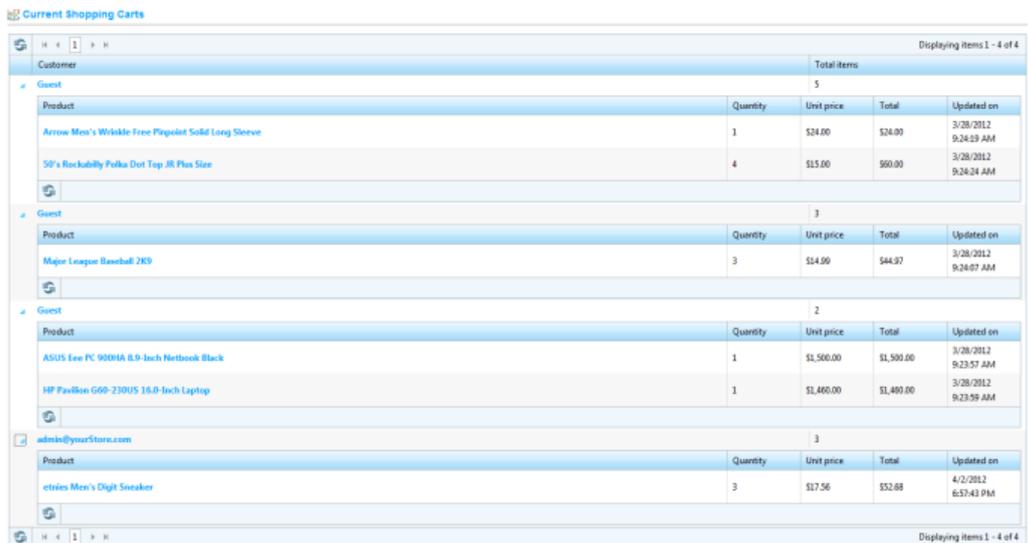
<b>Sub-Total:</b>	\$25.00 (USD)
<b>Discount:</b>	(\$5.00) (USD)
<b>Gift Card (5a028439-8064):</b>	(\$20.00) (USD)
	\$5.00 (USD) remaining
<b>Shipping:</b>	Not required
<b>Tax:</b>	\$0.00 (USD)
<b>Total:</b>	\$0.00 (USD)

# Current Shopping Cart

The **Current Shopping Carts** window enables the store owner view all the existing shopping carts of all the customers on one page. This window is accessed in the **Administration Area** and is displayed by selecting **Current Shopping Carts** from the **Sales** menu.

► **To view all current shopping carts:**

- 1 From the **Administration Area**, select **Current Shopping Carts** from the **Sales** menu. The **Current Shopping Carts** window is displayed, as follows:



The screenshot displays the 'Current Shopping Carts' window with the following data:

Customer	Total items			
Guest	5			
Product	Quantity	Unit price	Total	Updated on
Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pleated Solid Long Sleeve	1	\$24.00	\$24.00	3/28/2012 9:24:19 AM
50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size	4	\$15.00	\$60.00	3/28/2012 9:24:24 AM
Guest	3			
Product	Quantity	Unit price	Total	Updated on
Major League Baseball 2K9	3	\$14.99	\$44.97	3/28/2012 9:24:07 AM
Guest	2			
Product	Quantity	Unit price	Total	Updated on
ASUS Eee PC 900HA 8.9-Inch Netbook Black	1	\$1,500.00	\$1,500.00	3/28/2012 9:23:57 AM
HP Pavilion G60-230US 16.0-Inch Laptop	1	\$1,480.00	\$1,480.00	3/28/2012 9:23:59 AM
admin@yourStore.com	3			
Product	Quantity	Unit price	Total	Updated on
etries Men's Digi Sneaker	3	\$17.56	\$52.68	4/2/2012 6:57:43 PM

- 2 (Optional) Click on the required product to display the **Edit Product** window, and edit the product (if required).
- 3 (Optional) From the **Current Shopping Carts** window, click on the customer link to display the **Edit Customer Details** window and edit the customer information.

# Current Wishlists

The **Current Wishlists** window enables the store owner view all the existing wishlists of all the customers on one page. This window is accessed in the **Administration Area** and is displayed by selecting **Current Wishlists** from the **Sales** menu.

► **To view all current wishlists:**

- 1 From the **Administration Area**, select **Current Wishlists** from the **Sales** menu. The **Current Wishlists** window is displayed, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Current Wishlists' interface. It features a table with columns for Customer, Product, Quantity, Unit price, Total, and Updated on. The table is divided into two sections: one for a 'Guest' and one for 'admin@yourStore.com'. Each section contains a table of items in the customer's wishlist.

Customer	Total items			
Guest	1			
Product	Quantity	Unit price	Total	Updated on
Medal of Honor - Limited Edition (Xbox 360)	1	\$37.00	\$37.00	3/28/2012 9:23:52 AM
admin@yourStore.com	2			
Product	Quantity	Unit price	Total	Updated on
Medal of Honor - Limited Edition (Xbox 360)	1	\$37.00	\$37.00	3/28/2012 9:23:42 AM
Major League Baseball 2K9	1	\$14.99	\$14.99	3/28/2012 9:23:45 AM

- 2 (Optional) Click on the required product to display the **Edit Product** window, and edit the product (if required).
- 3 (Optional) From the **Current Wishlists** window, click on the customer link to display the **Edit Customer Details** window and edit the customer information.

# Return Requests

The **Return Request** feature in nopCommerce enables your customers to request a return on items previously purchased. These requests are also known as RMA requests. Return requests are configured in the **Administration Area** by selecting **Settings>Order Settings** to display the **Order Settings** page and then selecting the **Return Request** tab, as described on page 148.

This option is only available for completed orders. When this option is enabled, a **Return item(s)** button is displayed on the order details page in the public store for completed orders only, as shown in the procedure below.

► **To request a return on an item:**

- 1 In the public store, select **My Account** and then select the **Orders option**, as follows:

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

**MY ACCOUNT**

- › Customer info
- › Addresses
- › Orders
- › Return requests
- › Downloadable products
- › Back in stock subscriptions
- › Change password

**My account - Orders**

**Order Number: 3**  
Order status: Pending  
Order Date: 12/30/2012 8:02:45 AM  
Order Total: \$6.00 [Details](#)

**Order Number: 2**  
Order status: Complete  
Order Date: 12/30/2012 8:02:08 AM  
Order Total: \$1,512.24 [Return Item\(s\)](#) [Details](#)

- 2 Click the **Return Item(s)** button beside the complete order that you want to receive a return for. The **Return Item from Order #** is displayed, as shown in the following example:

Home page New products Search My account Blog Contact us

Return item(s) from order #2

Which items do you want to return?

Product	Unit price	Qty. to return
ethies Men's Digit Sneaker Size: 9 Color: White/Blue	\$17.56	0
Best Grilling Recipes	\$27.00	0
Build your own computer Processor: 2.5 GHz Intel Pentium Dual-Core E2200 (+\$15.00) RAM: 2 GB HDD: 400 GB (+\$100.00) OS: Vista Home (+\$50.00) Software: Microsoft Office (+\$50.00)	\$1,415.00	0

Why are you returning these items?

Return reason: Received Wrong Product

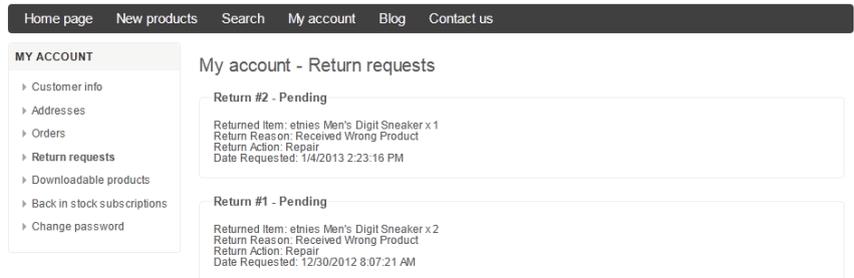
Return action: Repair

Comments:

Submit return request

- 3 From the list of products **Qty. to return** dropdown list select the number of items of the product you want to return.
- 4 From the **Return Reason** dropdown list, select the reason for requesting a return. For example, wrong product ordered, wrong product received and more. These reasons, are defined by the store owner in the **Administration Area** by selecting **Settings>Order Settings** to display the **Order Settings** page and then selecting the **Return Request Settings** tab, as described on page 148.
- 5 From the **Return Action** dropdown list, select the required return action to take. For example, repair product, replace product, issue credit and so on. These actions are defined by the store owner in the **Administration Area** by selecting **Settings>Order Settings** to display the **Order Settings** page and then selecting the **Return Request Settings** tab, as described on page 148.
- 6 In the **Comment** field, enter an optional comment for information purposes.

- 7 Click **Submit return request**. A confirmation message is displayed informing you the request has been submitted successfully. After using the Return Request feature, the customer can manage his requests from **My Account** page in the public store. You can then click the **Return Requests** enabling the customer to view requests and statuses, as shown in the example below:



The store owner can now view this return request in the **Administration Area**, as described in the following procedure.

► **To view and edit return requests**

- 1 From the **Administration Area**, select **Return Requests** from the **Sales** menu. The **Return Requests** window is displayed, as follows:

Return Requests

Displaying items 1 - 2 of 2

ID	Product	Quantity	Customer	Order	Date	Return request status	Edit
2	The Battle Of Los Angeles	1	<a href="#">View</a>	<a href="#">View</a>	7/8/2011 6:05:40 PM	Pending	<a href="#">Edit</a>
1	Poker Face	1	<a href="#">View</a>	<a href="#">View</a>	7/8/2011 6:05:40 PM	Pending	<a href="#">Edit</a>

Displaying items 1 - 2 of 2

- 2 Click **Edit** beside the return request to edit. The **Edit Return Request** window is displayed.

**Edit Return Request Details** (back to return request list) Notify customer about status change Save Save and Continue Edit Delete

ID: 2  
Product: [The Battle Of Los Angeles](#)  
Quantity: 1  
Order: [View](#)  
Customer: [View](#)  
Return request status: Pending  
Reason for return: Repair  
Requested action: Received Wrong Product  
Customer comments: some comment here...  
Staff notes:  
Date: 7/8/2011 10:05:40 AM

*Note:* Click Notify customer about status change to send an email to the customer informing him of the return request change in status.

- 3 Click on the **Order** link in order to view the associated order details page.
- 4 Click on the email link beside the **Customer** field in order view the customer details page.
- 5 From the **Status** dropdown list, select the required request status:
  - Pending
  - Received
  - Return Authorized
  - Item(s) Repaired
  - Item(s) Refunded
  - Request rejected
  - Cancelled

- 6 In the **Reason for Return** field, edit the reason for return, as required.
- 7 In the **Requested Action** field, edit the requested action, as required.
- 8 In the **Customer Comments** field, edit the comment entered by the customer, as required.
- 9 In the **Staff Notes** field, enter an optional note for information purposes.
- 10 Click **Save**.

*Note: The **Request ID**, **Product** and **Date** fields are read-only and cannot be edited.*

## 8 Managing Customer Generated Content

This section describes how to manage the nopCommerce content generated from the customers. It includes the following:

- **Product Reviews**, below
- **News Comments**, page 298
- **Blog Comments**, page 298
- **Forums**, page 298

### Product Reviews

Reviews are displayed on the product details page. Customers can write reviews for different products, as described in **Ratings and Reviews** on page 26. After a review has been written and approved by store owner, other customers can define whether they were helpful or not by clicking **Yes** or **No** in the public store.

By default, reviews must be approved by the store administrator before it appears in the public store.

*Note: However, this behavior can be overridden, meaning the store owner can decide that reviews do not have to be approved by the administrator if required. From the **Administration Area** select **Settings > Catalog Settings** from the **Configuration** menu, and then uncheck the **Product reviews must be approved** option.*

For further details on creating reviews, refer to page 26.

► **To manage product reviews:**

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products > Product Reviews**. The **Product Reviews** window is displayed.

**Product Reviews** Approve selected Disapprove selected

Created from:

Created to:

Message:

Product Reviews								
Displaying items 1 - 15 of 39								
<input type="checkbox"/>	Product	Customer	Title	Review text	Rating	Is approved	Created on	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$5 Virtual Gift Card	admin@yourStore.com	Some sample review	This sample review is for the \$5 Virtual Gift Card. I've been waiting for this product to be available. It is priced just right.	4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7/23/2013 3:18:03 PM	<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$25 Virtual Gift Card	admin@yourStore.com	Some sample review	This sample review is for the \$25 Virtual Gift Card. I've been waiting for this product to be available. It is priced just right.	5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7/23/2013 3:18:03 PM	<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$50 Physical Gift Card	admin@yourStore.com	Some sample review	This sample review is for the \$50 Physical Gift Card. I've been waiting for this product to be available. It is priced just right.	4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7/23/2013 3:18:03 PM	<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size	admin@yourStore.com	Some sample review	This sample review is for the 50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size. I've been waiting for this product to be available. It is priced just right.	5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7/23/2013 3:18:03 PM	<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black)	admin@yourStore.com	Some sample review	This sample review is for the Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black). I've been waiting for this product to be	5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7/23/2013 3:18:03 PM	<a href="#">Edit</a>

- 2 In the **Created From** and **Created to** fields, enter the date range for your search. Alternatively, you can click on the dropdown calendar and select the required date ranges. Use this option to search by date range.
- 3 In the **Message** field, enter the title or review text to search for.
- 4 Click **Search** to search by the selected criteria.
- 5 Select the **Approved selected** button to approve the selected review or click the **Disapprove selected** button, if you do not want to approve the review.

► **To edit the product review:**

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products > Product Reviews**. The **Product Reviews** window is displayed.

Product Reviews Approve selected Disapprove selected

Created from:

Created to:

Message:

Search

<input type="checkbox"/>	Product	Customer	Title	Review text	Rating	Is approved	Created on	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$5 Virtual Gift Card	admin@yourStore.com	Some sample review	This sample review is for the \$5 Virtual Gift Card. I've been waiting for this product to be available. It is priced just right.	4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7/23/2013 3:18:03 PM	<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$25 Virtual Gift Card	admin@yourStore.com	Some sample review	This sample review is for the \$25 Virtual Gift Card. I've been waiting for this product to be available. It is priced just right.	5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7/23/2013 3:18:03 PM	<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	\$50 Physical Gift Card	admin@yourStore.com	Some sample review	This sample review is for the \$50 Physical Gift Card. I've been waiting for this product to be available. It is priced just right.	4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7/23/2013 3:18:03 PM	<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size	admin@yourStore.com	Some sample review	This sample review is for the 50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size. I've been waiting for this product to be available. It is priced just right.	5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7/23/2013 3:18:03 PM	<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black)	admin@yourStore.com	Some sample review	This sample review is for the Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black). I've been waiting for this product to be	5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7/23/2013 3:18:03 PM	<a href="#">Edit</a>

- 2 Click **Edit**. The **Edit product review** window is displayed, as follows:

Edit Product Review Details (back to product review list) Save Save and Continue Edit Delete

Product: [ebries Men's Digit Sneaker](#)

Customer: [View](#)

IP Address: 78.106.107.51

Title:

Review text:

Rating: 4

Is approved:

Created on: 7/8/2011 3:36:00 AM

- 3 In the **Product** field, click the email link to display the **Edit Product details** window and edit the details, as described on page 91.
- 4 In the **Customer** field, click the **Edit** link to display the **Edit customer details** window and edit the details, as described on page 263.
- 5 The **IP Address** field displays the IP address of the customer that added the review.
- 6 In the **Title** field, edit the title text.
- 7 In the **Review Text** field, edit the review text entered.

- 8 In the **Rating** field, view the customers rating displayed (cannot be edited).
- 9 Check the **Is approved** checkbox to approve the review.
- 10 In the **Create On** field, view the date and time the review was created.
- 11 Click **Save**.

## News Comments

The News Comments feature is used by the customers that want to comment on certain news items in the nopCommerce store. For example, regarding the features of the new release, and so on. For further details on how to add these comments, refer to page 206.

## Blog Comments

The News Comments feature is used by the customers that want to comment on certain blog items in the nopCommerce store. For example, provide feedback on a certain problem in or feature in nopCommerce and more. For further details on how to add these blog comments, refer to page 209.

## Forums

Forum content is managed from the public store by users who are forum moderators. For further details on forums, forums settings and how to manage them, refer to page, refer to page 211. Customers can only create posts and reply to them after forums have been enabled by the store owner.

The store owner must enable the use of forums in the Administration area, from the **Configuration** menu, by selecting **Settings>Forum settings**. After selecting the **Forums enabled** checkbox in the **Forums settings** window. The store must then create at least one forum group and one forum under the forum group. After this is set the customer can then view and add new posts in the forums window by clicking **Forums** menu in the public store. These posts and topics that were added by the customers can be edited, moved and deleted only by the store moderators, as described below.

*Note: Only customers with the **Forum moderators** role can manage forum topics and posts.*

- ▶ **To edit forum topic and posts (moderators):**
  - 1 From the public store, click the **Forums** menu item.
  - 2 The **Forums** window is displayed, as follows:

Home page New products Search My account Blog Forums Contact us

**Forums**

Put your welcome message here. You can edit this in the admin site.

Friday, January 04, 2013 2:26:40 PM Search forums  Search  
Advanced search

General

Forum	Topics	Posts	Latest Post
<b>New Products</b> Discuss new products and industry trends	5	5	5 days ago In: Sample topic 5 By: admin@yourStore.com
<b>Mobile Devices Forum</b> Discuss the mobile phone market	0	0	No Posts
<b>Packaging &amp; Shipping</b> Discuss packaging & shipping	0	0	No Posts

Active discussions [View all]

Topic Title	Replies	Views	Latest Post
<b>Sample topic 5</b> Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
<b>Sample topic 4</b> Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
<b>Sample topic 3</b> Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
<b>Sample topic 2</b> Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
<b>Sample topic 1</b> Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com

- 3 From the **General** area, double click on a forum group and then click on the required topic to edit. The edit topic window is displayed, as follows:

Home page New products Search My account Blog Forums Contact us

HOME / FORUMS / GENERAL / NEW PRODUCTS / SAMPLE TOPIC 5 Search forums  Search  
Advanced search

**Sample topic 5** Edit Topic Delete Topic Move Topic

[Reply](#) [Watch Topic](#)

[Edit Post](#) [Delete Post](#) Posted: 5 days ago

admin@yourStore.com  
Status: Moderator  
Total Posts: 5

sample topic post #5 Quote

[Reply](#) [Watch Topic](#)

- 4 Edit the topic by selecting the required option, as follows (for store moderator use only):
    - **Edit Post:** Click to display the Edit post window, enabling the store moderator to edit the text of the selected post, as required.
    - **Delete Post:** Click to remove the post from the forum
    - **Edit Topic:** Click to display the Edit topic window, enabling the store moderator to edit the text of the selected topic, as required.
      - **Priority:** From the Priority dropdown list, select the Normal, Announcement or Sticky priority.
      - **Options:** Check the **Watch topic** checkbox to enable the customer to track topic posts.
    - **Delete Topic:** Click to remove the topic from the forum.
    - **Move Topic:** Click to move the topic to another forum. From the dropdown list, select the forum that you want to move the topic to.
- **Using forums (customers):**
- 1 From the public store, click the **Forums** menu item.
  - 2 The **Forums** window is displayed, as follows:

The screenshot shows a forum interface with a dark navigation bar at the top containing links for Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, Forums, and Contact us. Below the navigation bar, there is a section for 'Forums' with a welcome message and a search bar. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'General' and 'Active discussions'. The 'General' section contains a table with columns for Forum, Topics, Posts, and Latest Post. The 'Active discussions' section contains a table with columns for Topic Title, Replies, Views, and Latest Post.

Forum	Topics	Posts	Latest Post
New Products Discuss new products and industry trends	5	5	5 days ago In: Sample topic 5 By: admin@yourStore.com
Mobile Devices Forum Discuss the mobile phone market	0	0	No Posts
Packaging & Shipping Discuss packaging & shipping	0	0	No Posts

Topic Title	Replies	Views	Latest Post
Sample topic 5 Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
Sample topic 4 Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
Sample topic 3 Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
Sample topic 2 Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
Sample topic 1 Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com

- 3 (Optional) From the **Search** area, you can enter a keyword to search for. The topics found will be displayed, as follows:

The screenshot shows the top navigation bar with links: Home page, New products, Search, My account, Blog, Forums, Contact us. Below the navigation is the breadcrumb 'HOME / FORUMS' and the heading 'Search Forums'. A search input field contains the text 'topic' and has a 'Search' button to its right. Below the input field is an unchecked checkbox labeled 'Advanced search'. A table displays search results with columns: Topic Title, Replies, Views, and Latest Post. The table contains five rows of sample topics.

Topic Title	Replies	Views	Latest Post
Sample topic 5 Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	2	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
Sample topic 4 Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
Sample topic 3 Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
Sample topic 2 Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com
Sample topic 1 Author: admin@yourStore.com	0	1	5 days ago By: admin@yourStore.com

- 4 Check the **Advanced search** checkbox. The window is expanded, as follows:

The screenshot shows the same search interface as above, but with the 'Advanced search' checkbox checked. Below the search input field, there are three dropdown menus: 'Search in forum:' set to 'All forums', 'Search within:' set to 'Topic titles and posttext', and 'Limit results to previous:' set to 'All results'. The search results table is identical to the previous screenshot.

- 5 Define the search criteria using one or more of the following:
- From the **Search in forum** dropdown list, select the required forum to search by.
  - From the **Search within** dropdown list, select the required option, as follows:
    - Topic titles and post text
    - Topic title only
    - Post Text only
  - From the limit results to previous dropdown list, select the required option.
- 6 Click **Search** to display the products matching the search criteria.

- 7 Click on the topic to view it, as follows:



- 8 Reply to a post by clicking the **Reply** button. The **New post** window is displayed, enabling you to create a new post.
- 9 Enter the required text and click **Submit**. The new post is displayed in the forum.
- 10 (Optional) Customers can toggle the **WatchTopic/Unwatch Topic** button to track posts.

# 9 Security

The section describes the security mechanism that nopCommerce uses to protect their customer transactions. These mechanisms include:

- **Access Control List**, below
- **Activity Log**, page 305
- **Maintenance**, page 307

## Access Control List

This section describes how to add an access control list (ACL) which is a list of permissions attached to an object. This list specifies the access rights of users to objects. This list is managed by administrators. Therefore, the user must have administrator rights to access it. The access list contains the following characteristics:

- Access control list is role-based (such as, Content Managers, Global Administrators and more). This list can be managed in the **Administration Area** in the **Customers Roles** window by selecting **Customers >Customer Roles**.
- Access control list appears in the Administration area. Ensure the user is an administrator in order to access it.
- Predefined administrator actions exist. These include Manage Orders or Manage Customers and much more.

► To manage an access control list:

- 1 From the **Configuration** menu, select **Access Control List**. The Access control list window is displayed, as follows:

Access Control List Save

Permission name	Administrators	Forum Moderators	Guests	Registered
Access admin area	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage ACL	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Activity Log	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Affiliates	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Blog	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Campaigns	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Catalog	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Countries	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Currencies	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Customer Roles	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Customers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Discounts	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Email Accounts	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage External Authentication Methods	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Forums	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Gift Cards	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Languages	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Maintenance	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Measures	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Message Queue	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Message Templates	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage News	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Newsletter Subscribers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Orders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Payment Methods	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Plugins	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Polls	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Promotion Feeds	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Return Requests	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin area: Manage Settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 2 Select the required role beside the **Customer action** item.

- Administrators
- Forum Moderators
- Guests
- Registered

*Note: These customer roles are not hard-coded and can be configured in the Administration area, by selecting Customer Roles from the Customers menu.*

- 3 Click **Save**.

*Note: The selected roles will have access to the selected actions accordingly*

# Activity Log

This section describes how to enable or disable the activity types in nopCommerce. In addition, it describes how to define the search criteria to display the log of activities performed.

## Enabling/Disabling Activity Types

By default, all the Activity Types are enabled in nopCommerce. You can disable them by un-checking the relevant checkbox. Most of the activity types described here are for the administrator only, used in the Administration Area. However, some are for the user (such as, add to cart, add to wishlist, place order and more).

► **To enable/disable activity types:**

- 1 From the Configuration menu, select Activity Log > Activity Types. The Activity Types window is displayed.

Name	Is Enabled <input type="checkbox"/>
Add a new category	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a new checkout attribute	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a new customer	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a new customer role	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a new discount	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a new gift card	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a new manufacturer	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a new product	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a new product attribute	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a new product variant	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a new setting	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a new specification attribute	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Delete a checkout attribute	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Delete a customer	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Delete a customer role	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Delete a discount	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Delete a gift card	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Delete a manufacturer	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Delete a product	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Delete a product attribute	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Delete a product variant	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

- 2 Check the **Is Enabled** column beside the activity that you want to be *enabled*.
- 3 Uncheck the **Is Enabled** column beside the activity that you want to be *disabled*.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## Searching for Activity Types

This section describes how to search for activity types based on the search criteria entered. A log of activities is then displayed. You can clear this log of activities at any time by clicking the **Clear All** button.

► **To display a log of activities:**

- 1 From the Configuration menu, select Activity Log > Activity Log. The Activity Log window is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Activity Log' window. At the top right is a 'Clear' button. Below it are three search filters: 'Created from:' (text input), 'Created to:' (text input with a calendar icon), and 'Activity Log Type:' (dropdown menu set to 'All'). A 'Search' button is located below the filters. The main area contains a table with the following data:

Activity Log Type	Customer	Message	Created On	
Edit setting(s)	admin@yourStore.com	Edited settings	6/30/2012 6:47:42 AM	Delete
Edit a product variant	admin@yourStore.com	Edited a product variant ('Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black)')	6/29/2012 2:35:49 PM	Delete
Edit a product variant	admin@yourStore.com	Edited a product variant ('50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size')	6/29/2012 2:35:09 PM	Delete
Edit a product variant	admin@yourStore.com	Edited a product variant ('50's Rockabilly Polka Dot Top JR Plus Size')	6/26/2012 8:29:39 PM	Delete
Edit setting(s)	admin@yourStore.com	Edited settings	6/26/2012 4:44:29 PM	Delete
Edit setting(s)	admin@yourStore.com	Edited settings	6/26/2012 4:42:33 PM	Delete
Edit a product variant	admin@yourStore.com	Edited a product variant ('BlackBerry Bold 9000 Phone, Black (AT&T)')	6/26/2012 4:35:58 PM	Delete
Edit setting(s)	admin@yourStore.com	Edited settings	6/26/2012 4:32:38 PM	Delete
Edit setting(s)	admin@yourStore.com	Edited settings	6/26/2012 4:31:55 PM	Delete

At the bottom of the table, there is a pagination bar showing '1' of 9 items and a 'Displaying items 1 - 9 of 9' indicator.

- 2 Define the search criteria, using one or more of the following:
  - In the **Created From and Created to** fields, enter the date range for your search. Alternatively, you can click on the dropdown calendar and select the required date ranges. Use this option to search by date range.
  - From the **Activity Log Type** dropdown list, select the required activity type to search by.

- Click **Search**. The View Activity Log type window is expanded to include a log of the relevant data, as shown in the example below.

The screenshot shows the 'Activity Log' window with a search filter set to 'All'. Below the filter is a table with the following data:

Activity Log Type	Customer	Message	Created On	
Edit setting(s)	admin@yourStore.com	Edited settings	6/30/2012 6:47:42 AM	Delete
Edit a product variant	admin@yourStore.com	Edited a product variant ('Acer Aspire One 8.9" Mini-Notebook Case - (Black)')	6/29/2012 2:35:49 PM	Delete
Edit a product variant	admin@yourStore.com	Edited a product variant ('50" Rockability Polka Dot Top IR Plus Size')	6/29/2012 2:35:09 PM	Delete
Edit a product variant	admin@yourStore.com	Edited a product variant ('50" Rockability Polka Dot Top IR Plus Size')	6/26/2012 8:29:39 PM	Delete
Edit setting(s)	admin@yourStore.com	Edited settings	6/26/2012 4:44:29 PM	Delete
Edit setting(s)	admin@yourStore.com	Edited settings	6/26/2012 4:42:33 PM	Delete
Edit a product variant	admin@yourStore.com	Edited a product variant ('BlackBerry Bold 9000 Phone, Black (AT&T)')	6/26/2012 4:35:58 PM	Delete
Edit setting(s)	admin@yourStore.com	Edited settings	6/26/2012 4:32:38 PM	Delete
Edit setting(s)	admin@yourStore.com	Edited settings	6/26/2012 4:31:55 PM	Delete

## Maintenance

This section includes following maintenance procedures:

- **Deleting Old Exported Files**, page 308
- **Deleting Abandoned Shopping carts**, 309
- **Deleting Guests**, page 310
- **Viewing Store Warnings**, page 311
- **Viewing System Information**, page 312

# Deleting Old Exported Files

The following procedure describes how to delete old exported files.

► **To delete old exported files:**

- 1 From the **System** menu, select **Maintenance**. The **Maintenance** window is displayed, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Maintenance' window with three sections for deleting data:

- Deleting guest customers:** Includes fields for 'Start date' (empty), 'End date' (6/23/2012), and a checked checkbox for 'Only without shopping cart'. A 'Delete' button is below.
- Deleting abandoned shopping carts:** Includes a field for 'Created before' (12/31/2011) and a 'Delete' button.
- Deleting old exported files:** Includes empty fields for 'Start date' and 'End date', and a 'Delete' button.

- 2 From the **Deleting old exported files** area, click the **Delete** button. All the exported and generated files (such as, PDF and Excel files for example) will be deleted and removed from the database.

# Deleting Abandoned Shopping Carts

The following procedure describes how to delete abandoned shopping carts and wishlists.

► **To delete abandoned shopping carts and wishlists:**

- 1 From the **System** menu, select **Maintenance**. The **Maintenance** window is displayed, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Maintenance' window with three sections:

- Deleting guest customers:** Includes fields for 'Start date' (empty), 'End date' (6/23/2012), and a checked checkbox for 'Only without shopping cart'. A 'Delete' button is at the bottom.
- Deleting abandoned shopping carts:** Includes a field for 'Created before' (12/31/2011) and a 'Delete' button.
- Deleting old exported files:** Includes empty fields for 'Start date' and 'End date', and a 'Delete' button.

- 2 From the **Deleting abandoned shopping carts** area, click the  button. All shopping cart items created before the specified date will be deleted.

# Deleting Guests

The following procedure describes how to enable store owner to easily delete guest customer records.

► **To delete guest customer records:**

- 1 From the **System** menu, select **Maintenance**. The **Maintenance** window is displayed, as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Maintenance' window with three sections:

- Deleting guest customers:** Includes fields for 'Start date' (empty), 'End date' (6/23/2012), and 'Only without shopping cart.' (checked). A 'Delete' button is below.
- Deleting abandoned shopping carts:** Includes a field for 'Created before:' (12/31/2011). A 'Delete' button is below.
- Deleting old exported files:** Includes fields for 'Start date' (empty) and 'End date' (empty). A 'Delete' button is below.

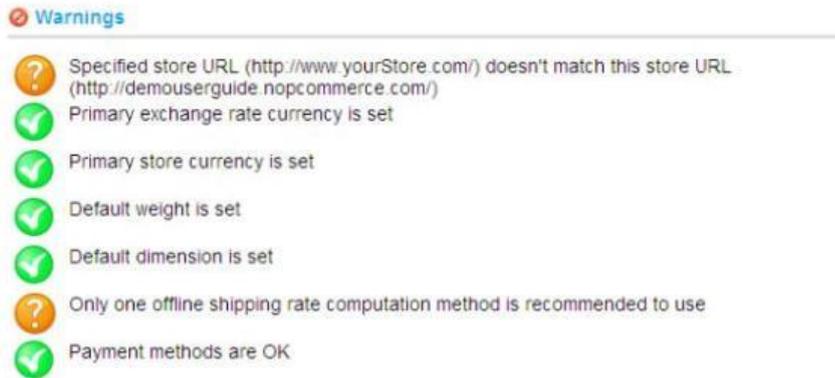
- 2 From the **Deleting guest customers**, click the **Delete** button. This option enables you to delete customer records created for guest visitors.

*Note: Only guests without orders or written customer content (such as product reviews or news comments) will be deleted*

## Viewing Store Warnings

The following procedure describes how to view any current warnings that current exist in the public store.

- ▶ **To view store warnings:**
  - From the **System** menu, select **Warnings**. The **Warnings** window is displayed, as follows:



## Viewing System Information

The following procedure describes how to view the system information of the store and system server.

- ▶ **To system information:**
  - From the **System** menu, select **System Information**. The **System Information** window is displayed, as follows:

### System Information

---

 nopCommerce version:	2.60
 Operating system:	Microsoft Windows NT 6.1.7601 Service Pack 1
 ASP.NET info:	v4.0.30319
 Is full trust level:	True
 Server time zone:	Central Standard Time
 Server local time:	Saturday, June 30, 2012 6:29:39 AM
 Greenwich Mean Time (GMT/UTC):	Saturday, June 30, 2012 11:29:39 AM
 Loaded assemblies:	<a href="#">Show</a>

# 10 Improving your Store

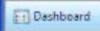
nopCommerce enables you to view various reports to enable you to improve your store and service. These include:

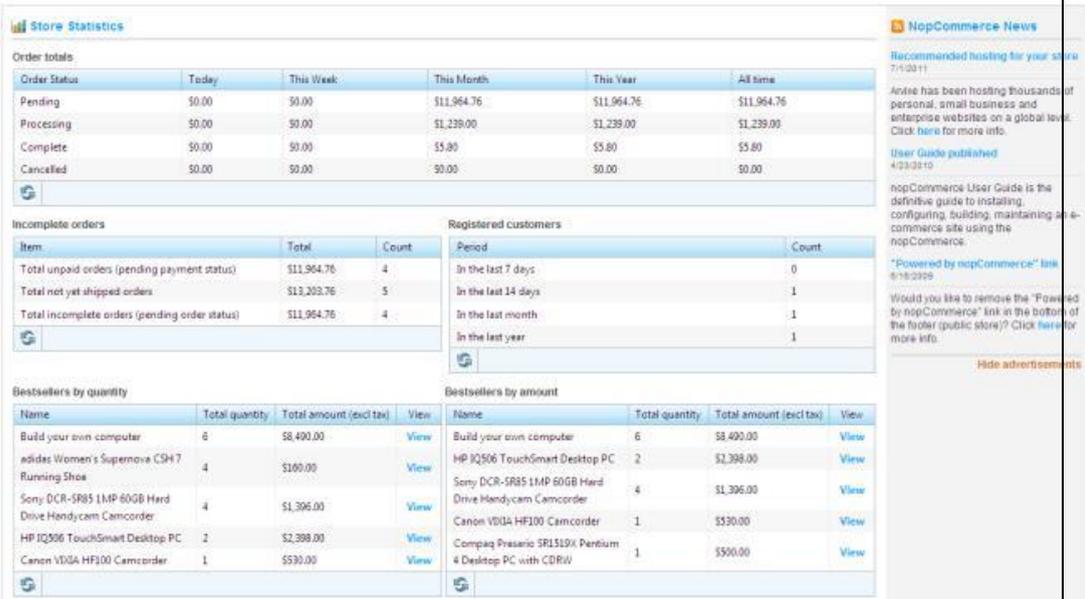
- **Dashboards reports**, below
- **Low Stock Reports**, page 314
- **Customer Statistics**, page 314
- **Logs**, page 318
- **Schedule Tasks**, page 320
- **Message Queue**, page 320
- **Search Engine Friendly Page Name**, page 323

## Dashboard Reports

The dashboard enables you to view your store statistics, this includes, the total number of orders that were processes over the last, year, month, week and more. This includes the number of incomplete orders that are still pending as well as the number of customers that have signed up in the last year, week, or month. On the dashboard, you can also view the most popular products in your store.

► To view the dashboard reports:

- 1 Click the **Dashboard**  icon on the **Toolbar**. The store statistics are displayed, as follows.



**Store Statistics**

Order totals

Order Status	Today	This Week	This Month	This Year	All time
Pending	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$11,964.76	\$11,964.76	\$11,964.76
Processing	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1,239.00	\$1,239.00	\$1,239.00
Complete	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$5.80	\$5.80	\$5.80
Cancelled	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00

Incomplete orders

Item	Total	Count
Total unpaid orders (pending payment status)	\$11,964.76	4
Total not yet shipped orders	\$13,203.76	5
Total incomplete orders (pending order status)	\$11,964.76	4

Registered customers

Period	Count
In the last 7 days	0
In the last 14 days	1
In the last month	1
In the last year	1

Bestsellers by quantity

Name	Total quantity	Total amount (exc tax)	View
Build your own computer	6	\$8,400.00	<a href="#">View</a>
adidas Women's Supernova CSH7 Running Shoe	4	\$160.00	<a href="#">View</a>
Sony DCR-SR85 1MP 60GB Hard Drive Handycam Camcorder	4	\$1,396.00	<a href="#">View</a>
HP IQ506 TouchSmart Desktop PC	2	\$2,398.00	<a href="#">View</a>
Canon VIXIA HF100 Camcorder	1	\$530.00	<a href="#">View</a>

Bestsellers by amount

Name	Total quantity	Total amount (exc tax)	View
Build your own computer	6	\$8,400.00	<a href="#">View</a>
HP IQ506 TouchSmart Desktop PC	2	\$2,398.00	<a href="#">View</a>
Sony DCR-SR85 1MP 60GB Hard Drive Handycam Camcorder	4	\$1,396.00	<a href="#">View</a>
Canon VIXIA HF100 Camcorder	1	\$530.00	<a href="#">View</a>
Compaq Presario SR1510X Pentium 4 Desktop PC with CD/DVD	1	\$590.00	<a href="#">View</a>

**NopCommerce News**

Recommended hosting for your store  
7/1/2011  
Anise has been hosting thousands of personal, small business and enterprise websites on a global level. [Click here](#) for more info.

User Guide published  
4/23/2010  
nopCommerce User Guide is the definitive guide to installing, configuring, building, maintaining an e-commerce site using the nopCommerce.

"Powered by nopCommerce" link  
6/18/2009  
Would you like to remove the "Powered by nopCommerce" link in the bottom of the footer (public store)? [Click here](#) for more info.

Hide advertisements

The store statistics includes the following:

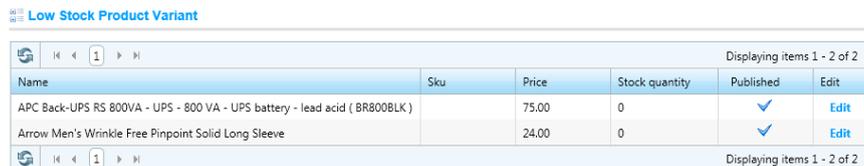
- **Order totals:** It enables you to know the number of order that were processed in the last day, week, month, year and the order total.
- **Incomplete orders:** Enables you to know the number of orders that are currently pending.
- **Registered customers:** Enables you to know how many customers registered in the last, 7 days, 14 days, month and year.
- **Best Sellers:** Enables you to know the best product sellers.

## Low Stock Reports

The low stock report contains a list of products that are currently under stock. In the example shown below, the min stock quantity was set to **20** and the stock quantity is **0**, therefore a low stock report is generated for this product. For further info on defining these settings refer to, **Adding Products** as described on page 126.

► **To view low stock reports:**

- 1 From the **Catalog** menu, select **Products>Low Stock Report**. The **Product Low Stock** report window is displayed.



Name	Sku	Price	Stock quantity	Published	Edit
APC Back-UPS RS 800VA - UPS - 800 VA - UPS battery - lead acid ( BR800BLK)		75.00	0	✓	Edit
Arrow Men's Wrinkle Free Pinpoint Solid Long Sleeve		24.00	0	✓	Edit

- 2 Click **Edit** to view the **Product info** tab, where these settings stock can settings can be changed.

## Customer Statistics

This section describes how to generate and view reports describing information regarding customer language, location gender and more.

# Customers by Order Total

This section describes how to generate a report displaying the top 20 customers based on the total amount spent.

► **To generate the customer by order total report:**

- 1 From the **Customers**, select **Customer Reports**. The **Customer Reports** window is displayed, showing the **Top 20 customer by order total** tab, as follows:

Customer	Order total	Number of orders	View
John Smith	\$13,209.56	6	View

- 2 Enter one or more of the following information to search for the customer by order total report:
  - From the **Start date** field select the start date for the search.
  - From the **End date** field select the end date for the search.
  - From the **Order Status** dropdown list, select the order status to search by, as follows:
    - All
    - Pending
    - Processing
    - Complete
    - Cancelled
  - From the **Payment Status** dropdown list, select the payment status to search by, as follows:
    - All
    - Pending
    - Authorized
    - Paid
    - Refunded
    - Partially Refunded
    - Voided

- From the **Shipping Status** dropdown list, select the shipping status to search by, as follows:
  - All
  - Shipping not Required
  - Not Yet Shipped
  - Partially shipped
  - Shipped
  - Delivered

## Customers by Number of Orders

This section describes how to generate a report displaying the top 20 customers based on the total number of orders issued.

► **To generate the customer by number of orders report:**

- 1 From the **Customers**, select **Customer Statistics**. The **Customer Statistics** window is displayed, showing the **Top 20 customer by order total** tab, as shown on page 315.
- 2 Select the **Top 20 customers by number of orders** tab, as follows:

Customer	Order total	Number of orders	View
John Smith	\$13,200.50	6	View

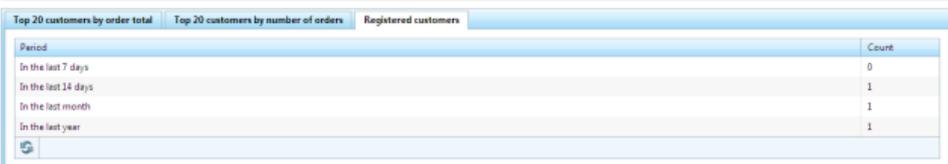
- 3 Enter one or more of the following information to search for the customer by order total report:
  - From the **Start date** field select the start date for the search.
  - From the **End date** field select the end date for the search.
  - From the **Order Status** dropdown list, select the order status to search by, as follows:
    - All
    - Pending
    - Processing
    - Complete
    - Cancelled

- 4 From the **Payment Status** dropdown list, select the payment status to search by, as follows:
  - All
  - Pending
  - Authorized
  - Paid
  - Refunded
  - Partially Refunded
  - Voided
- From the **Shipping Status** dropdown list, select the shipping status to search by, as follows:
  - All
  - Shipping not Required
  - Not Yet Shipped
  - Partially shipped
  - Shipped
  - Delivered

## Registered Customers

This report shows the number of registered customers for a certain period. You can generate a report displaying the number of registered users from the last, week, two weeks, month and year. If required you can also view the full list of the registered users from the selected time period by clicking the **View** button and reverting back to the **Manage Customers** window.

- ▶ **To generate the registered customers report:**
  - 1 From the **Customers**, select **Customer Reports**. The **Customer Reports** window is displayed, showing the **Top 20 customer by order total** tab, as shown on page 315.
  - 2 Select the **Registered customers** tab, as follows:



The screenshot shows the 'Customer Reports' window with three tabs: 'Top 20 customers by order total', 'Top 20 customers by number of orders', and 'Registered customers'. The 'Registered customers' tab is active, displaying a table with the following data:

Period	Count
In the last 7 days	0
In the last 14 days	1
In the last month	1
In the last year	1

The period of time for which to display the number of registered customers is displayed, as follows:

- 7 days
- 14 days
- Month
- Year

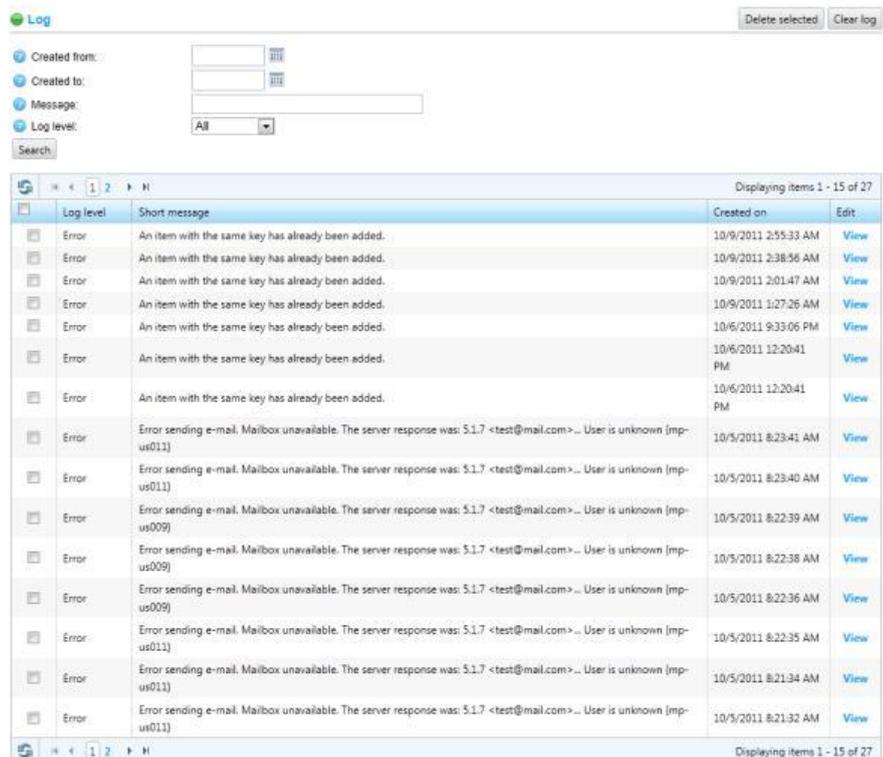
The number of register customers for the selected period is displayed in the **Count** column.

## Logs

The system log report displays a list of all the errors that were created in the system. This information includes, the log type the customer that created the error, the date, and the description of the error. Clicking **View**, displays additional details of the error that occurred. You can click **Delete** to remove a log from the system if required.

► **To view system log information:**

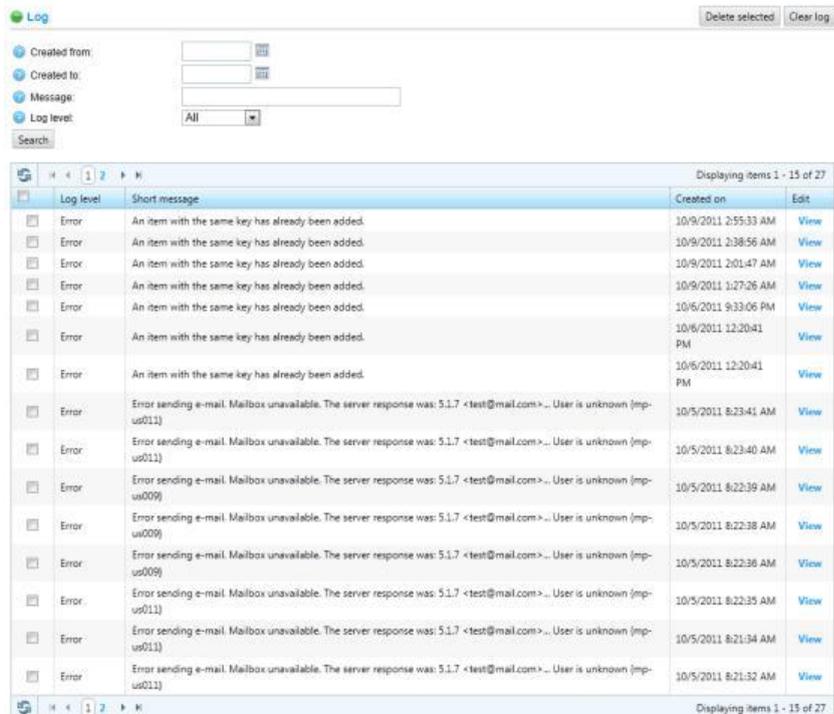
- 1 From the **System** menu, select **Log**. The **System Log** window is displayed.



The screenshot shows the 'Log' window with search filters and a table of log entries. The search filters include 'Created from', 'Created to', 'Message', and 'Log level' (set to 'All'). The table displays the following data:

Log level	Short message	Created on	Edit
Error	An item with the same key has already been added.	10/9/2011 2:55:33 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	An item with the same key has already been added.	10/9/2011 2:38:56 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	An item with the same key has already been added.	10/9/2011 2:01:47 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	An item with the same key has already been added.	10/9/2011 1:27:26 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	An item with the same key has already been added.	10/6/2011 9:33:06 PM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	An item with the same key has already been added.	10/6/2011 12:20:41 PM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	An item with the same key has already been added.	10/6/2011 12:20:41 PM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	Error sending e-mail. Mailbox unavailable. The server response was: 5.1.7 <test@mail.com>... User is unknown [mp-us011]	10/5/2011 8:23:41 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	Error sending e-mail. Mailbox unavailable. The server response was: 5.1.7 <test@mail.com>... User is unknown [mp-us011]	10/5/2011 8:23:40 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	Error sending e-mail. Mailbox unavailable. The server response was: 5.1.7 <test@mail.com>... User is unknown [mp-us009]	10/5/2011 8:22:39 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	Error sending e-mail. Mailbox unavailable. The server response was: 5.1.7 <test@mail.com>... User is unknown [mp-us009]	10/5/2011 8:22:38 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	Error sending e-mail. Mailbox unavailable. The server response was: 5.1.7 <test@mail.com>... User is unknown [mp-us009]	10/5/2011 8:22:36 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	Error sending e-mail. Mailbox unavailable. The server response was: 5.1.7 <test@mail.com>... User is unknown [mp-us011]	10/5/2011 8:22:35 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	Error sending e-mail. Mailbox unavailable. The server response was: 5.1.7 <test@mail.com>... User is unknown [mp-us011]	10/5/2011 8:21:34 AM	<a href="#">View</a>
Error	Error sending e-mail. Mailbox unavailable. The server response was: 5.1.7 <test@mail.com>... User is unknown [mp-us011]	10/5/2011 8:21:32 AM	<a href="#">View</a>

- 2 Enter one or more of the following information to search for the system log information:
  - From the **Created from** field, select the start date for the search.
  - From the **Created to** field, select the end date for the search.
  - In the **Message** field, select the message or part of the message to search by.
  - From the **Log level** dropdown list, select the type of log information to display, as follows:
    - All
    - Debug
    - Information
    - Warning
    - Error
    - Fatal
- 3 Click **Search**. The log system window is displayed based on the search criteria, as follows:



*Note:* You can click the **Clear log** button at any time to remove all log entries from the system.

#### 4 Click **View** to view additional details of the specific log, as follows:

[View Log Entry Details](#) (back to system log) Delete

Log level: Error

Short message: An item with the same key has already been added.

Full message: System.ArgumentException: An item with the same key has already been added. at System.ThrowHelper.ThrowArgumentException (ExceptionResource resource) at System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary`2.Insert(TKey key, TValue value, Boolean add) at System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary`2.Add(TKey key, TValue value) at Telerik.Web.Mvc.SiteMapDictionary.Register(TSiteMap)String name, Action`1 configure) at ASP\_Page\_Administration\_VIEWS\_Shared\_Menu\_cshhtml.Execute() in c:\inetpub\wwwroot\demoserguide.nopcommerce.com\httpdocs\Administration\Views\Shared\Menu.cshtml:line 6 at System.Web.WebPages.WebPageBase.ExecutePageHierarchy() at System.Web.Mvc.WebViewPage.ExecutePageHierarchy() at System.Web.WebPages.WebPageBase.ExecutePageHierarchy(WebPageContext pageContext, TextWriter writer, WebPageRenderingBase startPage) at System.Web.Mvc.RazorView.RenderView(ViewContext viewContext, TextWriter writer, Object instance) at System.Web.Mvc.BuildManagerCompiledView.Render(ViewContext viewContext, TextWriter writer) at System.Web.Mvc.HtmlHelper.RenderPartialInternal(String partialViewName, ViewDataDictionary viewData, Object model, TextWriter writer, ViewEngineCollection viewEngineCollection) at System.Web.Mvc.Html.PartialExtensions.Partial(HtmlHelper htmlHelper, String partialViewName, Object model, ViewDataDictionary viewData) at System.Web.Mvc.Html.PartialExtensions.Partial(HtmlHelper htmlHelper, String partialViewName) at ASP\_Page\_Administration\_VIEWS\_Shared\_AdminLayout\_cshhtml.Execute() in c:\inetpub\wwwroot\demoserguide.nopcommerce.com\httpdocs\Administration\Views\Shared\AdminLayout.cshtml:line 78 at System.Web.WebPages.WebPageBase.ExecutePageHierarchy() at System.Web.Mvc.WebViewPage.ExecutePageHierarchy() at System.Web.WebPages.WebPageBase.ExecutePageHierarchy(WebPageContext pageContext, TextWriter writer, WebPageRenderingBase startPage) at System.Web.WebPages.WebPageBase.ExecutePageHierarchy(WebPageContext pageContext, TextWriter writer, WebPageRenderingBase startPage) at System.Web.WebPages.WebPageBase.RenderSurrounding(String partialViewName, Action`1 body) at System.Web.WebPages.WebPageBase.PopContext() at System.Web.WebPages.WebPageBase.ExecutePageHierarchy(WebPageContext pageContext, TextWriter writer, WebPageRenderingBase startPage) at System.Web.Mvc.RazorView.RenderView(ViewContext viewContext, TextWriter writer, Object instance) at System.Web.Mvc.BuildManagerCompiledView.Render(ViewContext viewContext, TextWriter writer) at System.Web.Mvc.ViewResultBase.ExecuteResult(ControllerContext context) at System.Web.Mvc.ControllerActionInvoker.InvokeActionResult (ControllerContext controllerContext, ActionResult actionResult) at System.Web.Mvc.ControllerActionInvoker.<>c\_\_DisplayClass1c.<InvokeActionResultWithFilters>b\_\_19() at System.Web.Mvc.ControllerActionInvoker.InvokeActionResultFilter(IResultFilter filter, ResultExecutingContext preContext, Func`1 continuation) at System.Web.Mvc.ControllerActionInvoker.<>c\_\_DisplayClass1c.<>c\_\_DisplayClass1e.<InvokeActionResultWithFilters>b\_\_1b() at System.Web.Mvc.ControllerActionInvoker.InvokeActionResultWithFilters(ControllerContext controllerContext, IList`1 filters, ActionResult actionResult) at System.Web.Mvc.ControllerActionInvoker.InvokeAction(ControllerContext controllerContext, String actionName)

IP address: 205.177.185.112

Customer: [John Smith \(View\)](#)

Page URL: http://demoserguide.nopcommerce.com/admin/order/bestsellersreport

Referrer URL: http://demoserguide.nopcommerce.com/Admin/Order/Edit/12

Created on: 7/19/2011 7:58:32 AM

## Schedule Tasks

The scheduled tasks window enables the store owner to schedule a task to run during certain periods in the background and to view useful information regarding the task and whether it was completed successfully. For example, nopCommerce sends queued emails periodically. The tasks run on a separate thread coming from the ASP.NET thread pool.

### ► To schedule tasks:

- 1 From the **System** menu, select **Schedule Tasks**. The **Schedule Tasks** window is displayed.

#### Schedule Tasks

Restart application

Name	Seconds (run period)	Enabled	Stop on error	Last start date	Last end date	Last success date	Edit
Froogle static file generation	3600	✘	✘				<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Update currency exchange rates	900	✔	✘	11/27/2012 2:13:46 PM	11/27/2012 2:13:46 PM	11/27/2012 2:13:46 PM	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Delete guests	600	✔	✘	11/27/2012 2:08:47 PM	11/27/2012 2:08:47 PM	11/27/2012 2:08:47 PM	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Clear cache	600	✘	✘				<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Keep alive	300	✔	✘	11/27/2012 2:14:11 PM	11/27/2012 2:14:11 PM	11/27/2012 2:14:11 PM	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Send emails	60	✔	✘	11/27/2012 2:13:56 PM	11/27/2012 2:13:56 PM	11/27/2012 2:13:56 PM	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

- 2 Click the **Edit** button besides the task to edit. The window is expanded, as follows:

 **Schedule Tasks**

Restart application

Name	Seconds (run period)	Enabled	Stop on error	Last start date	Last end date	Last success date	Edit
Froogle st	3,600	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>				<input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>
Update currency exchange rates	900	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/27/2012 2:13:46 PM	11/27/2012 2:13:46 PM	11/27/2012 2:13:46 PM	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Delete guests	600	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/27/2012 2:08:47 PM	11/27/2012 2:08:47 PM	11/27/2012 2:08:47 PM	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Clear cache	600	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Keep alive	300	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/27/2012 2:14:11 PM	11/27/2012 2:14:11 PM	11/27/2012 2:14:11 PM	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Send emails	60	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/27/2012 2:13:56 PM	11/27/2012 2:13:56 PM	11/27/2012 2:13:56 PM	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>



- 3 Select the required checkboxes, as follows:
  - **Enabled:** Select to enable the task.
  - **Stop on Error:** Select to stop the task when an error occurs.
- 4 Click **Update** to save your revisions.

# Message Queue

Emails are not sent immediately in nopCommerce. They are queued. Message queue contains all emails that are already sent or not yet sent.

► **To load message queues:**

- 1 From the **System** menu, select **Message queue**. The **Message Queue** window is displayed.

Message Queue
Delete selected

Start date:

End date:

From address:

To address:

Load not sent emails only:

Maximum send attempts:

Go directly to email #:

Displaying items 1 - 15 of 15								
<input type="checkbox"/>	Queued email ID	Subject	Message Priority	From	From name	Created on	Sent on	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	15	Your store name. New return request.	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 6:05:40 PM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	14	Your store name. New return request.	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 6:05:40 PM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	Order receipt from Your store name.	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 5:55:18 PM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	Your store name. Purchase Receipt for Order #12	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 5:55:18 PM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	Order receipt from Your store name.	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 5:42:50 PM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	Your store name. Purchase Receipt for Order #9	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 5:42:50 PM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	Your store name. Your order completed	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 11:58:52 AM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	Order receipt from Your store name.	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 11:58:23 AM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	Your store name. Purchase Receipt for Order #8	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 11:58:23 AM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	Order receipt from Your store name.	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 11:57:23 AM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	Your store name. Purchase Receipt for Order #6	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 11:57:23 AM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	Order receipt from Your store name.	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 11:56:45 AM		<a href="#">Edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	Your store name. Purchase Receipt for Order #4	5	test@mail.com	General contact	7/8/2011 11:56:45 AM		<a href="#">Edit</a>

- 2 Enter one or more of the following information to search for the message queue:
  - From the **Start date** field select the start date for the message queue.
  - From the **End date** field select the end date for the message queue.
  - In the **From address** field enter the source address of the message queue.
  - In the **To address** field enter the target address of the message queue.
  - Select the **Load not sent emails only** checkbox to only load emails into the queue that have not yet been sent.
  - In the **Maximum send attempts** field, enter the maximum number of attempts to send a message.
  - In the **Go directly to email** field, enter the email and click Go to display the required email.
- 3 Click **Load** to load the message queues matching the criteria.

*Note: You can click the **Delete selected** button to delete selected message queues from the grid.*

## Search Engine Friendly Page Names

This window is intended for advanced users only and contains a list of all search engine friendly page names (categories, manufactures, products, news, and blog posts).

- ▶ **To remove search engine friendly page names:**
  - 1 From the **System** menu, select **Search Engine Friendly Page Names**. The **Search Engine Friendly Page Names** window is displayed
  - 2 In the **Name** field enter the name of the search engine friendly page name to remove and click **Search**. (you can use wildcards if you do not have the entire name).
  - 3 Select the required page name and click **Delete selected**. The page will be removed from the list.

# 11 Getting Help

The nopCommerce forums provide you with an opportunity to discuss nopCommerce related issues with other community members. The forums are available at <http://www.nopCommerce.com/boards/>

- ▶ **To display the nopCommerce site:**
  - From the **Help menu**, select **Help topics**. The nopCommerce site is displayed.
- ▶ **To visit the nopCommerce forums:**
  - 1 From the **Help menu**, select **Community Forums**. The nopCommerce forums window is displayed.

The screenshot shows the nopCommerce forums interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for Register, Log in, and Shopping Cart (0). Below that, a menu bar contains Product, Services, Support, Downloads, Partners, Company, and My Account. The main heading is 'nopCommerce forums'. A search bar is present with the text 'Search forums' and a 'Search' button. The page is divided into sections: 'News and Announcements' and 'General'. The 'General' section contains a table of forum topics.

Forum	Topics	Posts	Latest Post
<b>News and Announcements</b> nopCommerce news and announcements.	38	591	May 29, 2010 8:17 PM In nopCommerce 1.6 roadmap. Left discuss. By ricardo
<b>General</b>			
<b>Installation and Configuration</b> Discussions on installing and configuring nopCommerce.	1102	4947	May 29, 2010 3:42 PM In Problems configuring shipping By stevelex
<b>nopCommerce Upgrades</b> Discuss nopCommerce upgrade issues here.	47	259	May 29, 2010 8:10 AM In Categorie: download \$3200 bad rar By juanmanueljaraquaviera
<b>General Support</b> General discussions relating to nopCommerce.	1831	6931	May 30, 2010 1:57 AM In Error when trying to navigate to Shipping and... By 7Spikes
<b>Next Steps / Optimizations / Marketing</b> Discussions on what to do once your store is up and running.	76	319	May 27, 2010 4:19 AM In Good ideas to enable store name prefix? By ad_lazar
<b>HTML, XHTML, CSS, Design Questions</b> Use this forum to post any design and/or layout questions.	205	817	May 29, 2010 11:12 PM In How to change amount of indent on category menu... By zaeb
<b>Development</b> Discussions regarding the core framework of the next project release.	569	2202	May 28, 2010 11:55 PM In Server Timeout when uploading .XML local files By andreas
<b>Bug Reports</b> If you have a bug to report, post it here.	86	215	May 27, 2010 11:10 PM In K81 price doesn't update until checkout By nopCommerce team   a.m.
<b>Security</b> Report and discuss any security issues here.	9	28	May 18, 2010 11:55 PM In SSL not forced in Admin By nopCommerce team   a.m.
<b>Community Contributed Add-Ons</b>	30	136	May 29, 2010 1:59 PM In Show right mouse button click event

- 2 Navigate through the forums as required.

# 12 Index

## A

Access  
    Backend, 64  
    Control Lists, 303  
Account Pages  
    Customer, 35  
Activity  
    Log, 305  
Affiliates, 254  
Attributes  
    Managing, 84  
Authentication Methods  
    External, 241

## B

Backend  
    Accessing, 64  
    Admin Area, 2  
    Introducing, 63  
    Overview, 63  
Blacklists, 304, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312  
Blog, 57  
    Comments, 298

## C

Campaigns, 245  
Categories, 18  
    Managing, 65  
Comparing  
    Products, 30  
Current  
    Shopping Cart, 288  
    Wishlists, 289  
Customer  
    Account Pages, 35  
    Managing, 257, 258  
    Online, 267  
    Roles, 266  
    Statistics, 314

## D

Dashboard  
    Reports, 313  
Discounts, 249  
Downloading  
    nopCommerce, 4

## E

Email  
    A Friend, 28  
    Accounts, 170  
External  
    Authentication Methods, 241

## F

File Permissions, 11  
Filtering  
    by Price, 21  
    by Specification, 21  
Forums, 58  
    Managing, 298  
Frontend  
    Categories, 18  
    Introduction, 16  
    Manufacturers, 18  
    Overview, 17  
    Public Store, 2

## G

Getting Started, 3  
Gift Cards, 285

## I

Introducing  
    Backend, 63  
    Frontend, 16

## L

Launching  
  nopCommerce, 5  
Location, 224  
Login, 34  
Logs, 318  
  Activity, 305  
Low Stock Report, 314

## M

Maintenance, 307  
Managing  
  Attributes, 84  
  Blog Comments, 298  
  Categories, 65  
  Content, 203  
  Customer Generated Content, 295  
  Customers, 257, 258  
  Forums, 298  
  Manufacturers, 75  
  News Comments, 298  
  Orders, 257, 268  
  Product Reviews, 295  
  Products, 91  
Manufacturers  
  Managing, 75  
Measures, 236  
Message Queue, 322

## N

News, 55  
  Comments, 298  
Newsletter Subscribers, 248  
nopCommerce  
  Downloading, 4  
  Introducing, 1  
  License, 1  
  Technology and System Requirements, 3  
  What it is, 1

## O

Online  
  Customers, 267

Orders  
  Details Page, 54  
  Managing, 257, 268  
  Recurring, 283

## P

Payment  
  Methods, 195  
Plugins, 243  
Polls, 58  
Preparing for Selling, 126  
Private Messaging, 59  
Products  
  Comparing, 30  
  Managing, 91  
  Pages, 25  
  Recently Viewed, 32  
Promotion, 245  
  Feeds, 253  
Purchasing Process, 48

## R

Ratings, 26  
Recently Viewed  
  Products, 32  
Recurring  
  Orders, 283  
Registration, 33  
Reports  
  Dashboard, 313  
  Logs, 318  
  Low Stock, 314  
Return Requets, 290  
Reviews, 26  
Roles  
  Customer, 266

## S

Searching  
  Product Descriptions, 23  
Security, 303  
  Blacklists, 304, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312  
Settings, 127

Shipping, 176  
Shopping Cart, 43  
    Current, 288  
SMS Providers, 239

**T**

Taxes, 171

**U**

Uploading  
    nopCommerce, 5

**W**

Wishlist, 45  
    Current, 289